The verb in Nyakyusa

A focus on tense, aspect and modality

Bastian Persohn
Contemporary African Linguistics

Editors: Akinbiyi Akinlabi, Laura J. Downing

In this series:


2. Persohn, Bastian. The verb in Nyakyusa: A focus on tense, aspect and modality.

ISSN: 2511-7726
The verb in Nyakyusa
A focus on tense, aspect and modality

Bastian Persohn
Contents

Acknowledgments ix

Abbreviations and symbols xi

1 Introduction and Background 1
   1.1 Introductory remarks ............................................. 1
   1.2 The Nyakyusa language and its speakers ......................... 1
       1.2.1 Geography and demography .................................. 1
       1.2.2 On the name Nyakyusa ...................................... 2
       1.2.3 Previous linguistic research .................................. 3
       1.2.4 Nyakyusa within Bantu ....................................... 6
       1.2.5 Dialects and variety described .............................. 8
   1.3 Data collection .................................................... 11
   1.4 Theoretical framework ............................................ 13
       1.4.1 Overview ..................................................... 13
       1.4.2 Tense and grammatical aspect ................................. 14
       1.4.3 Inherent temporal structure of the verb .................... 19
       1.4.4 Tense and grammatical aspect in discourse .................. 22

2 Grammatical sketch 29
   2.1 Typological overview ............................................ 29
   2.2 Basic phonology ................................................... 30
       2.2.1 Vowels and syllables ........................................ 30
       2.2.2 Consonants .................................................... 35
       2.2.3 Suprasegmentals .............................................. 38
   2.3 Nouns and noun phrase ........................................... 39
       2.3.1 Noun classes .................................................. 39
       2.3.2 Nominal morphology ......................................... 43
       2.3.3 Demonstratives and pronominals .............................. 45
   2.4 Basic syntax ....................................................... 47
## Contents

### 3 Structure of the verb

3.1 Introduction .............................................. 51
3.2 Phonological structure of verbal morphemes ............... 51
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb ......... 52
  3.3.1 The pre-initial slot .................................. 53
  3.3.2 The initial slot ....................................... 54
  3.3.3 The post-initial slot .................................. 59
  3.3.4 The pre-radical slot ................................... 60
  3.3.5 The radical slot ....................................... 65
  3.3.6 The pre-final slot ..................................... 65
  3.3.7 The final slot .......................................... 65
  3.3.8 The post-final slot ..................................... 66
3.4 Root, base and stem ...................................... 77

### 4 Verbal Derivation

4.1 Introduction .............................................. 79
4.2 Verbal extensions ........................................ 80
  4.2.1 Morphophonology of verbal extensions ............... 80
  4.2.2 Causative 1 .......................................... 85
  4.2.3 Causative 2 .......................................... 86
  4.2.4 The relationship between the two causatives ......... 87
  4.2.5 Reciprocal/Associative .............................. 89
  4.2.6 Applicative .......................................... 92
  4.2.7 Productive Passive ................................... 94
  4.2.8 Fossilized Passive ................................... 97
  4.2.9 Neuter .............................................. 99
  4.2.10 Intensive ........................................... 100
  4.2.11 Separative .......................................... 101
  4.2.12 Tentive ............................................ 102
  4.2.13 Positional .......................................... 103
  4.2.14 Impositive .......................................... 104
  4.2.15 Extensive .......................................... 105
4.3 Combinations of verbal extensions ......................... 106
  4.3.1 Morpheme order ...................................... 106
  4.3.2 Complex derivations: pluractional ................. 108
  4.3.3 Applicativized causatives .......................... 109
4.4 Denominal verbs ........................................ 110
4.5 Partial reduplication .................................... 111
### Contents

5 Verb categorization

5.1 Introduction ................................................. 113
5.2 Diagnostic criteria ....................................... 115
5.3 Verb classes ............................................... 118

5.3.1 Activities ............................................... 118
5.3.2 Simple accomplishments ............................... 122
5.3.3 Transitional accomplishments ....................... 125
5.3.4 Transitional achievements ............................. 128
5.3.5 Resultative achievements .............................. 131
5.3.6 Other achievement classes ......................... 137

6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense 141

6.1 Introduction ................................................. 141
6.2 Overview of tense aspect in Nyakyusa ................ 141
6.3 Negation in Nyakyusa ................................... 142
6.4 Morphophonology of common TMA suffixes .......... 144

6.4.1 Alternations of imperfective -aga .................. 144
6.4.2 Perfective -ile and its variants ................... 144

6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions ............. 152

6.5.1 Simple present .......................................... 152
6.5.2 Negative present ....................................... 156
6.5.3 Present perfective ...................................... 157
6.5.4 Negative present perfective ......................... 165
6.5.5 Past perfective ......................................... 166
6.5.6 Negative past perfective ............................. 179
6.5.7 Past imperfective ....................................... 180
6.5.8 Negative past imperfective ......................... 183

6.6 Periphrastic present and past constructions .......... 184

6.6.1 Progressive ............................................. 185
6.6.2 Persistive ................................................ 186
6.6.3 Minor constructions .................................... 190

6.7 The present as non-past .................................. 192

6.7.1 Narrative present ....................................... 193
6.7.2 Present tense in subordinate clauses ................ 195

7 Tense and aspect constructions 2: narrative markers 209

7.1 Introduction ................................................. 209
7.2 The two narrative markers: a comparison .............. 209

7.2.1 On typologies of narrative markers ................... 210
Contents

7.2.2 Licensing and dependency ........................................... 211
7.2.3 Distribution in narrative discourse ................................. 214
7.2.4 Quantitative distribution ........................................... 219
7.2.5 Functional differences ............................................. 221
7.3 Narrative tense .......................................................... 221
  7.3.1 Formal makeup ....................................................... 221
  7.3.2 Temporal and aspectual semantics ............................... 222
  7.3.3 Sequentiality of events ........................................... 229
  7.3.4 Summary ............................................................ 232
7.4 Subsecutive .............................................................. 233
  7.4.1 Formal makeup ....................................................... 233
  7.4.2 Restrictions on use ................................................ 234
  7.4.3 Semantics and basic textual function ........................... 234
  7.4.4 Common occurrences ............................................. 237
  7.4.5 Tokens without strict temporal progression .................... 243
  7.4.6 Summary ............................................................ 246

8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates ......................... 249
  8.1 Introduction ............................................................ 249
  8.2 Proclitic $aa=$ .......................................................... 250
  8.3 Proclitic $(i)sa=$ ....................................................... 255
  8.4 Proclitic $naa=$ ......................................................... 257
  8.5 Prospective/movement $kwa$ INF .................................... 258
  8.6 Indefinite future ....................................................... 260
    8.6.1 Formal makeup ................................................... 260
    8.6.2 Meaning and use ................................................ 261
    8.6.3 A diachronic perspective ...................................... 264
  8.7 Prospective/Inceptive $ja$ pa-INF .................................. 265

9 Mood and modal categories ............................................. 267
  9.1 Introduction ............................................................ 267
  9.2 Imperative .............................................................. 267
  9.3 Subjunctive .............................................................. 270
    9.3.1 Uses of the subjunctive ........................................ 271
    9.3.2 Complex constructions involving the subjunctive .......... 279
    9.3.3 Distal/itive $ka$- ............................................... 282
    9.3.4 Negative Subjunctive .......................................... 284
  9.4 Desiderative ............................................................ 288
  9.5 Modal future ........................................................... 292
## Contents

9.6 Conditional *ngali* ................................................. 299

### 10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams  ................................................. 303
  10.1 Introduction ................................................ 303
  10.2 The copulae .................................................. 303
    - 10.2.1 Copula verbs ................................................. 303
    - 10.2.2 Copula use ................................................ 305
    - 10.2.3 Existential construction .................................... 308
    - 10.2.4 Expression of predicative possession .................... 310
  10.3 *tɛ* ‘say; think; do like’ ........................................... 311
  10.4 Movement grams ................................................ 317
    - 10.4.1 *(j)a* ‘go’ .................................................. 317
    - 10.4.2 *isa* ‘come’ ............................................... 320

### 11 Verbal nouns (infinitives) .................................................. 323
  11.1 Introduction .................................................. 323
  11.2 Structure and characteristics of verbal nouns .................... 323
  11.3 Verbal nouns and negation ........................................ 324
  11.4 Functions of verbal nouns ....................................... 326
    - 11.4.1 Arguments of auxiliaries, modal and motion verbs ....... 326
    - 11.4.2 Uses as converbs and related functions .................. 328

Appendix A: Overview of core TMA constructions  ................................................. 333

Appendix B: Texts .......................................................... 339
  - B.1 Narrative: Crocodile and Monkey .................................. 339
  - B.2 Narrative: Hare and Skunk ........................................ 343
  - B.3 Expository: The custom of dancing ................................ 352

References .............................................................. 357

Index ................................................................. 375
  - Name index .......................................................... 375
  - Language index .................................................... 379
  - Subject index ...................................................... 381
Acknowledgments

An academic monograph, such as this one, may have a single author, but is really a project dependent on the support of many more people.

First of all, I wish to thank my three PhD supervisors: Gerrit Dimmendaal for all the time he has dedicated to mentoring my work, for the cordial reception at the Institute for African Studies and Egyptology and for believing in my abilities from the very first moment on; Martin Becker for hours of discussion and answering tons of e-mails on the mind-twisting issues of tense, aspect and modality; and Silvia Kutscher for motivating me to pursue a doctorate and for channelling my work.

I am further indebted to Dan King and Helen Eaton of SIL International for access to their data and for lengthy discussions of Nyakyusa, to Dörte Borchers for encouraging me to continue working on this language and to Robert Botne, Thera Crane, Tiffany Kershner, Axel Fleisch and Frank Seidel for debating all things tense and aspect.

My trips to Lwangwa would not have been possible without the accommodation offered by Kai and Susanne Hoffmann. Further thanks go to Marcelo and Melanie Reimer and to Heinke Schimanowski for their help in times of need.

Nancy Winters and Martin Werner helped me a great deal with my first steps in the village and have provided great companionship far from home. My first contacts in the Nyakyusa community were established with the help of Astol Benson and Anthon Mwangake. Martin Mwakaje has been a great help in finding further speakers for text collecting.

Descriptive linguistic research greatly relies on the cooperation of native speakers. I am thankful to all my language assistants, especially Elisha Mwakyoma, who has been so patient from my first steps in empirical linguistics on, and Herbert Zabron “The Professor” Mwaikema, who has been a dedicated language teacher.

The Institute for African Studies and Egyptology with all of its members has been a welcoming and supportive environment. Further thanks go to Monica Feinen, who has provided the map used in this study.

---

1 The work presented in this book is based on my doctoral dissertation, which was accepted by the University of Cologne’s Faculty of Arts and Humanities in 2016.
Acknowledgments

I also wish to express my gratitude towards a.r.t.e.s. Graduate School for the Humanities Cologne for the great working conditions and for awarding me a generous scholarship that made this research possible.

Further thanks go to Lee Bickmore and Sebastian Nordhoff for providing helpful feedback and for guiding me through the publication process. This book has also benefited greatly from the comments of the two anonymous reviewers. I wish to thank Mary Chambers and the Language Science Press community proofreaders for improving my non-native English.

Last but not least, I wish to thank all my friends, who lifted my spirits when writing or fieldwork strained my nerves, especially Alexandra, Anne, Benjamin, Eka, Hares, Jens and Willi.
Abbreviations and symbols

Morphemes throughout this study are glossed using the Leipzig Glossing Rules, with some minor additions to fit the needs of Nyakyusa morphology.

- segmentable morpheme boundary
= clitic boundary
<> infix boundary; graphemic representation
. syllable boundary
* ungrammatical form; reconstructed form
# contextually inadequate
? questionable or only marginally acceptable
< source language
// phonological representation
[] phonetic form
~ reduplication; variation between forms
’ marked rise in pitch
, syllabicity of nasal segment

1...18 noun classes
1PL first person plural
1SG first person singular
2PL second person plural
2SG second person singular
ADJ deverbal adjective
AGNR agent nominalizer
APPL applicative
ASSOC associative
AUG augment
AUX auxiliary verb
C consonant segment;
coda phase
CAUS causative
COM comitative (‘with’/’and’) 
COMP complementizer 
CMPR comparative
COND conditional
COP copula
DE German
DEM demonstrative
DESDTV desiderative
DIST distal demonstrative
EN English
[ET] example from elicitation
FUT future
# Abbreviations and symbols

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FV</td>
<td>final vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>glide segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HORT</td>
<td>hortative particle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMP</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INDEF.FUT</td>
<td>indefinite future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INF</td>
<td>infinitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTENS</td>
<td>intensifier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTS</td>
<td>intensive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intr.</td>
<td>intransitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERJ</td>
<td>interjection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPFV</td>
<td>imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITV</td>
<td>itive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MOD.FUT</td>
<td>modal future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>nasal segment; nucleus phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NARR</td>
<td>narrative tense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NCL</td>
<td>noun class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEUT</td>
<td>neuter (derivation)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NPX</td>
<td>nominal prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>onset phase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OM</td>
<td>object marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART</td>
<td>partitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PASS</td>
<td>passive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PST</td>
<td>past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PB</td>
<td>Proto-Bantu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p.c.</td>
<td>personal communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCU</td>
<td>perception, cognition, utterance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PERS</td>
<td>persistive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PPFV</td>
<td>perfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>plural</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POSS</td>
<td>possessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS</td>
<td>present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>progressive aspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROH</td>
<td>prohibitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PXP</td>
<td>pronominal prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROX</td>
<td>proximal demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Q</td>
<td>question marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECP</td>
<td>reciprocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REDUPL</td>
<td>reduplication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REF</td>
<td>referential demonstrative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>time of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM</td>
<td>subject marker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBJ</td>
<td>subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBSEC</td>
<td>subsecutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SWA</td>
<td>Swahili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TMA</td>
<td>tense, mood, aspect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tr.</td>
<td>transitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>vowel segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VB</td>
<td>verb base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WH</td>
<td>wh-question word</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1 Introduction and Background

1.1 Introductory remarks

This monograph deals with the verb in Nyakyusa, a Bantu language of south-western Tanzania. As Nurse (2008: 21) puts it, “Bantu languages are ‘verby’, that is, they are morphologically agglutinating languages, expressing by verbal inflection what other languages may express lexically or syntactically.” Grammatical categories marked on the verb include subject, object, negation, a number of derivational categories and tense, mood and aspect (TMA).

Perhaps one of the most striking features of verbs in Bantu are the highly nuanced systems of marking tense and aspect distinctions. Dahl (1985: 185) even speaks of “the most complex TMA systems in general”. While most descriptive accounts of individual languages deal with formal aspects of these systems, their meaning and usage are commonly disregarded. Typically, the authors confine themselves to giving a label for each construction and presenting a few examples with approximate translations. Recent and noteworthy exceptions include Fleisch (2000), Kershner (2002), Botne et al. (2006), Botne (2008), and Crane (2011). Given this lacuna, the following description puts a special focus on TMA constructions, encompassing both their sentence-level meaning as well as their patterns of employment in discourse. The description is synchronically orientated and aims at scholars of comparative Bantu studies as well as the general linguistic audience.

In the following sections, the language and its speakers are presented (§1.2), followed by an exposition of the methods of data collection used (§1.3). Lastly, the theoretical framework is described (§1.4).

1.2 The Nyakyusa language and its speakers

1.2.1 Geography and demography

Nyakyusa is a Bantu language spoken in the Mbeya region of south-western Tanzania, in the coastal plains of lake Nyassa (Lake Malawi) and the hills extending
1 Introduction and Background

to the north of it (e.g. M. Wilson 1963: 1), with the biggest urban centres being Tukuyu and Kyela. Its homeland forms part of the so-called Nyasa-Tanganyika Corridor (henceforth: the Corridor; see §1.2.4) and is characterized by heavy rainfalls and fertile ground. In the updated version of Guthrie’s referential system Nyakyusa has the code M31 (Maho 2009).¹

The Ethnologue estimates 1,080,000 speakers in Tanzania (Simons & Fenning 2017), while Muzale & Rugemalira (2008) give a number of 732,990. Nyakyusa is vigorously used by all generations and also learned by local non-native speakers (Lewis 2009). Most speakers are bilingual in Swahili. Nyakyusa is surrounded by other Bantu languages, among them Kinga (G65) to the east, Kisi (G67) to the southeast, and Safwa (M25) and Wanji (G66) in the north. Its closest relatives are Ngonde (M31d), spoken further south in Malawi and Ndali (M301). Nyakyusa and Ngonde are typically treated as one language. However, the limited data available on Malawian Ngonde points towards major structural divergences, as will be pointed out at various points throughout this study.

The linguistic and cultural closeness of Nyakyusa and Ndali (also see §1.2.4) is reflected in a shared myth of origin. According to this myth, Nyakyusa and Ndali were part of one ethnic group originating in Mahenge, half way between their current homelands and the coast. The Ndali people took the longer path, thus the name Ndali ‘long (class 9)’ (Konter-Katani 1989: 39). A different myth, however, sees a common origin with the Kinga, a group with whom an important cult is shared (Weber 1998: ch. 7).

1.2.2 On the name Nyakyusa

Over the course of time, the names used to refer to the Nyakyusa people and their language have changed and caused some confusion in the literature. Therefore, a short excursion into the history of research on them, with a focus on glossonyms, seems to be appropriate before turning to the linguistic research itself.

The first Europeans to at the area around the north shore of Lake Nyasa on the Zambezi-Shire-Nyasa water way in the 1870s, landed in the Ngonde kingdom of present-day Malawi. Hence they called the local groups, among them those that later came to be known as Nyakyusa, by the name Konde (Prein 1995: 36–40; M. Wilson 1963: 1–5). This is reflected in the first descriptions of and notes on the Nyakyusa language (Meinhof 1966; Schumann 1899; Cleve 1904). A wordlist

¹The referential system devised by Malcolm Guthrie, which refers to Bantu languages by a combination of a letter (zone) and digits (group and language) is to be understood as purely geographical, with no direct reference to phylogenetic or areal relationships; see Maho (2003).
by Merensky (1894), however, features “Iki Nyakyusa” in its subtitle, which is presumably the first scholarly mention of the language by that name.

A turning point in the linguistic treatment of Nyakyusa is Endemann’s (1914) grammatical sketch “Erste Übungen im Nyakyusa”. The anglophone tradition, however, takes a different path: until the 1930s reference is made to the local varieties dealt with (Bain 1891; Hodson 1934), with Johnston (1977: 208 et passim) somewhere in-between, using “Ikinyi-kiusa (Nkonde)” and listing a number of dialects. Berger (1933; 1938), and Stolz’s (1934) posthumously published wordlist edited by Berger, however, still speak of “Konde”, as does Busse in 1942, although he later on (1949; 1957; n.d.) adopts the denomination Nyakyusa. This term had in the meantime been established in the ethnological literature by Geoffrey and Monica Wilson (1936; 1937 amongst others), mainly to differentiate between the divergent political systems on either side of the Songwe river, i.e. scattered chiefdoms to the north vs. the Ngonde kingdom to the south. Originally, Nyakyusa designated a local chiefdom, and was extended to name all of the peoples living north of the Konde and their closely related mutually intelligible language varieties. The name Nyakyusa relates to a legendary chief Mwakyusa, whose name again is a matronym ‘son of Kyusa’ (Labroussi 1998: 42f; Weber 1998: 91–95). The prefix nya-designates group, clan or family membership and is a widespread Bantu element (Meeussen 1967). From that period onwards all linguistic publications dealing with Tanzanian varieties speak of Nyakyusa (see e.g. Guthrie 1967; Mwangoka & Voorhoeve 1960c; von Essen & Kähler-Meyer 1969).\(^2\)

1.2.3 Previous linguistic research

In comparison to other, mostly un(der)described, Corridor languages, there has been a relatively high number of publications on Nyakyusa. Description nevertheless remains very sketchy.

The only more or less comprehensive grammatical sketches, with around 90 pages each, are Schumann (1899) and, partly based on that work, Endemann (1900), the former being the oldest monograph on any of the Corridor languages.\(^3\) In the mid-20th century another short grammatical sketch was produced at the University of Leiden (Mwangoka & Voorhoeve 1960c), accompanied by a prac-

\(^2\)For a valuable discussion of linguistic work in the colonial period, although somewhat coloured by the Moravian perspective, see Kröger (2011).

\(^3\)Another shorter, typewritten and unpublished grammatical sketch of unknown authorship was found in possession of Reverend Mwasamwaja of Lwangwa. This work, which has gone unnoticed so far, is said to be the product of Scandinavian missionaries and seems to be heavily based on Schumann’s and Endemann’s grammars.
1 Introduction and Background

tical language guide by the same authors (Mwangoka & Voorhoeve 1960a). An even shorter grammatical sketch of just eight pages is Nurse (1979). The domain of tense, mood and aspect in particular is only rudimentarily dealt with in all of these; they limit themselves mainly to labelling certain constructions and providing a few translations of sample sentences into German or English.

A number of publications deal with more specific aspects of Nyakyusa grammatical structure.4 Meinhof (1966) is the first approximation to an account of Nyakyusa phonology, Meyer (1919) an unpublished proposal for developing an official orthography. Endemann (1900) is an attempt at explaining the morphophonology of applicativized causatives (see §4.3.3). Labroussi (1998; 1999), apart from genetic classification, discusses some aspects of phonology and morphology, and von Essen & Kähler-Meyer (1969) deal with the prosody of nouns (including verbal nouns) in isolation. Method’s (2008) master’s thesis presents a generative approach to aspects of phonology in a dialect of Nyakyusa. Konter-Katani (1989) discusses the reflexes of Proto-Bantu plosives in Nyakyusa and Ndali, a topic seemingly also dealt with by Mulinda (1997). Some aspects of reduplication are analyzed in Lusekelo (2009a). Berger (1938) is a first attempt to describe regularities in the formation of perfective stems (§6.4.2).

Concerning morphosyntax we find a manuscript by Duranti (1977) and a description of the linear structure of the noun phrase by Lusekelo (2009b). Lusekelo also published several papers dealing with aspects of motion verbs (Lusekelo 2008b) and adverbials (Lusekelo 2010). Object marking and some aspects of verbal derivation are dealt with in his PhD dissertation (Lusekelo 2012), parts of which were published as a paper beforehand (Lusekelo 2008a). A master’s thesis by Hawkinson (1976) deals, according to its title, with aspects of cross-reference marking. Persohn (2017b) discusses postfinal clitics (§3.3.8). Lusekelo’s (2007) master’s thesis, which has been published in a slightly modified version (Lusekelo 2013), deals with tense and aspect categories. See i.a. p. 115 for a critical discussion. Lusekelo (2016) discusses some aspects of conditional sentences in Nyakyusa. Persohn (2016) discusses the semantic shifts that have lead to the present-day narrative tense (§7.3) and modal future (§9.5) constructions. Persohn & Bernander (2016) give an overview of present tense markers in the Corridor and several languages of Guthrie’s zones G and N and discuss their grammaticalization.

Concerning lexicography, the first known wordlist is Bain (1891), further lists of varying lengths and reliability are found in Johnston (1897; 1977), Nurse (1979),

---

4The following studies were inaccessible to the author: Anonymous (1939), Busse (n.d.), Duranti (1977), Hawkinson (1976), Konter-Katani (1988), Lusekelo (2010), Meyer (1919) and Mulinda (1997).
1.2 The Nyakyusa language and its speakers

Schumann (1899), Merensky (1894) and Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960b). Stolz (1934) deals with botanical vocabulary, while Greenway (1947) lists veterinary lexemes in several languages, one of which is Nyakyusa. There are further unpublished word lists and dictionaries (Anonymous 1939; Busse n.d. Konter-Katani 1988). Some scattered words can be found in Werner (1919) and M. Wilson (1958). The only published and extensive lexicographic work is Felberg (1996). The latter has been of immense help for the creation of the present monograph, although it has deficits and inconsistencies in the transcription of vowel length as well as of the vowel quality of the two pairs of high vowels.5

Social aspects of language use are specifically dealt with by Hodson (1934) on name giving, Walsh (1982) on greetings and Kolbusa (2000) on the avoidance register ingamwana. The latter also contains an extensive discussion of previous notes on onomastics. A short note by Cleve (1904) is the first known mention of ingamwana. Mwakasaka (1975; 1978) deals with oral literature, although without presenting any original texts. Some narratives, written down by native speakers and without translation, can be found at Felberg’s web page (Felberg 2010) and Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960d). There is also a number of edited narratives with German translations: Berger (1933), Busse (1942; 1949) and also in the appendix of Schumann (1899). Busse (1957) is a collection of riddles including translation into German. An overview of educational and religious materials can be found in Kröger (2011) and Felberg (2010).

Unfortunately, some of the more recent publications on Nyakyusa either transcribe Nyakyusa with orthography of Swahili, which has only 5 vowels and no vowel length distinctions, or, when attempting to transcribe the 7x2 vowel system, are very inconsistent, even to the point of self-contradiction. This impedes any meaningful analysis not only of TMA constructions, but also of morphological processes applying within the verb stem (e.g. §4.2.1.1–4.2.1.2, 6.4.2).

Several further papers include some discussion of Nyakyusa data, among them Hyman (1999) on vowel harmony, Hyman (2003) on the emergence of morphophonological patterns, Bostoen (2008) on spirantization, Eaton (2013) on narrative markers in the Corridor and Persohn & Bernander (2016) on the grammaticalization of present tenses in southern Tanzanian Bantu languages. Furthermore, SIL International is working on a standardized orthography and a re-translation of the Bible, but not planning any linguistic publications (Helen Eaton, p.c.; Daniel King., p.c.). For an overview of ethnological work on the Nyakyusa and Ngonde people as well as religious material see Mwalilino (1995).

5Knut Felberg (p.c.) himself recognizes these shortcomings.
1 Introduction and Background

1.2.4 Nyakyusa within Bantu

Attempts at an internal classification of the Bantu languages have, apart from smaller subgroups such as Guthrie’s zone S, so far not yielded any comprehensive or broadly accepted results. This can be attributed to the high number of languages, the very limited documentation of most of these and the difficult task of disentangling inherited innovations from geographical diffusion of structural and lexical traits. For an overview of different attempts of classification as well as a discussion of some methodological problems, the reader is referred to Möhlig (1981: 102–114) and Nurse & Philippson (2003c).

The Nyakyusa language area forms part of the Nyasa-Tanganyika Corridor, a geographical stretch that was named by social anthropologist Monica M. Wilson (1958) after the two lakes defining it to the south and north. The area’s cultural and linguistic coherence has been noted from early on (see e.g. Fülleborn 1906; Johnston 1977). Even on this smaller scale, linguistic classification proves a difficult task, with the specific problems of most languages being underdescribed and the data available, until recently, being heavily biased towards Tanzania (Nurse 1988).

Concerning Nyakyusa, there is broad agreement that its closest relative, apart from Ngonde, is Ndali. This has led some scholars to consider at least the aforementioned two tongues, or even all three of them, as dialects of one and the same language (see M. Wilson 1958: 9). Especially on the lexical level this group is very unlike its neighbours. Says Nurse (1988: 72f), “moving from the three eastern groups to Nyakyusa-Ndali one has the impression of entering a different lexical world”. Some of these uncommon lexemes are suggested by Nurse (1988) and Ehret (1973) to be of South Cushitic and Central Sudanic origin. On the structural level however, Nyakyusa proves to be quite divergent from Ndali and Ngonde as described by Botne (2008), Labrousse (1998) and Kishindo (1999) (see also Nurse 1988: 55).

In the following paragraphs the various proposed classifications of Nyakyusa and the neighbouring tongues are briefly summarized and discussed. The names of different varieties are adapted to NUCL (Maho 2009) and may not conform to the original sources. As the reader will notice, the various attempts at classification differ not only with regards to their results, but also to the languages examined, rendering the results only partially comparable.

Bernd Heine, in his often-cited (1972) work, presents a lexicostatistic classification of Bantu that is supposed to reflect diachronic reality. In his study of

---

6 The Sukwa language of Malawi (see Kershner 2002) is usually subsumed under Ndali.
1.2 The Nyakyusa language and its speakers

137 languages, he considers Nyakyusa together with Fipa and Nyika to be part of a Fipa-Konde branch of Eastern Highland (*Osthochland*), which again represents a sub-branch of his Congo branch (*Kongozweig*), the most numerous of 11 postulated primary Bantu branches.

Derek Nurse, together with his colleagues Gérard Phillipson and George Park, has presented various classifications of the Corridor languages over the years. In an early lexicostatistically-based classification (Nurse 1979) he proposes that Nyakyusa should be grouped with Ndali and Lambya, without proposing a higher level grouping. A decade later this idea changed: in Nurse (1988), on the basis of lexicostatistics and phonological innovations, a Corridor group consisting of three subgroups, one of them Nyakyusa/Ndali, is proposed, although in Nurse & Park (1988) this subgroup is separated from the other Corridor languages, a position maintained in Nurse (1999). Nurse & Philipppson (2003c) keep the basic grouping of the Corridor languages (Figure 1.1), expressing doubts as to whether Nyakyusa/Ndali should be included.

![Diagram](Figure 1.1: Nurse & Phillipson’s (2003c) classification of the Corridor languages)

Catherine Labroussi’s (1998, 1999) work is a valuable contribution to our understanding of the Corridor languages: apart from phonological traits and lexicostatistic calculations, it examines patterns of diffusion and also discusses social factors, mostly retrieved by archaeology and oral history. As for the classification of the Corridor languages, it fundamentally reflects Nurse’s position concerning Nyakyusa.

Historian Christopher Ehret (1973) proposed a Corridor-group (“Mambwe-Fipa-Nyiha”) which excludes Nyakyusa. What distinguishes his proposal is that
he postulates that Corridor and Nyakyusa may belong to different branches of eastern Bantu. This position is revised in Ehret (2001: 36f, 55), where the Corridor languages are split into two major groups, Rungwe (Nyakyusa, Ndali, Safwa, Nyika, Wandia) and Mwika (Pimbwe, Fipa, Mambwe, Namwanga). Ehret qualifies this insofar as he admits that this synchronic grouping need not reflect linguistic genealogy.

Ehret’s student Catherine Fourshey, however, has returned to Ehret’s earlier views (Fourshey 2002). In an attempt to reconstruct the pre-colonial history of the Corridor based mainly on linguistic data, she proposes a genetic unit comprising the Corridor languages, the internal structure of the unit in essence reflecting Nurse’s classification. Fourshey arrives at this assumption primarily on the basis of lexicostatistics supplemented and refined by an examination of the distribution of certain cultural lexemes. Unfortunately Fourshey did not have access to the linguistically more fine-grained analysis of Labroussi (1998).

To conclude, it seems safe to assert at this point – as stated more or less explicitly in Nurse (1988), Labroussi (1998), Nurse & Philippson (2003c) – that the languages of the Corridor might best be understood not as a genetically uniform unit, but as forming an area of long-term linguistic convergence. In this context, Nyakyusa can be understood as the special case, being more strongly isolated from its geolinguistic environment. Although it shares a number of lexical and structural features with its neighbouring languages, especially Ngonde and Ndali/Sukwa, it seems to have been rather resistant to external influences, and in the development and spreading of innovations it seems to have played the role of donor rather than that of recipient.

1.2.5 Dialects and variety described

The dialectal geography of the Corridor as a whole, as well as for the specific case of Nyakyusa, remains relatively unknown (Walsh & Swilla 2002: 4, 25). However, a number of topolectal divisions can be stated. Some first observations concerning subgroups and varieties of Nyakyusa were made by Johnston (1977: 61), with subsequent refinements by M. Wilson (1963: 2). The following notes are based on the latter, as well as on Walsh & Swilla’s (2002) comments upon it. These sources have been supplemented by consultation with a number of native speaker informants as well as by an unpublished survey by SIL International.7 The following

---

7 Kindly made available to the author by Helen Eaton.
list gives the identifiable subgroups within Nyakyusa, together with their respective Guthrie codes according to Maho (2009):\(^8\)

- Nyakyusa of the lake-shore plains. This variety is often referred to as *MuNgonde* by speakers of northern varieties, although speakers from the area do not use this name themselves. It is considered clearly distinct from Malawian Ngonde (*IkyaNgonde*).
- Central Nyakyusa, around Masoko. The Nyakyusa variety of this area, seat of chief Mwaipopo, is considered the variety with the highest prestige. In Maho (2009) this variety is grouped with that of the lake-shore plains as *Nyakyusa proper* (M31A).
- Northern Nyakyusa (M31B), also called *Kukwe* or *Ngumba* (‘innermost plateau’).
- Nyakyusa of the mountains (M31C), also referred to as *Mwamba* (‘Mountains’), *Lugulu* (name of an aboriginal group) or *Sokelo* (‘East’), in the area around Mwakaleli.
- Selya (M31E), at the foot of the Livingstone Mountains. Wilson distinguishes this from another eastern subgroup named Saku.

The denominations for the various groups and varieties within Nyakyusa are used differently by speakers from different areas. As Monica Wilson states:

> AbaMwamba means by derivation ‘the hill people’, but is generally used for ‘the people of the north’. The Ngonde of Karonga call those on the plain around Mwaya BaMwamba, the men of Mwaya apply the name not to themselves, but to the people of Selya, while the people of Selya apply it to those in the hills to the north of them. (M. Wilson 1963: 2 FN2)

Two further varieties of unclear status might be added to the list above. M. Wilson (1958: 9) observed that the group of Penja M302, as well speakers of the eastern variety of Nyika M23, were being absorbed by the Nyakyusa. While the case of Penja remains unsolved (Walsh & Swilla 2002: 26), a recent sociolinguistic survey provides further indications of a language shift of the Eastern Nyika people, suggesting an additional Nyakyusa topolect (Lindfors et al. 2009).

Although diatopic variation within Nyakyusa exists and speakers readily identify the speech varieties of different regions, intercomprehension is not affected. Given the high number of speakers, Nyakyusa can be considered relatively uniform in comparison to many of the other, smaller Corridor languages (see La-

\(^8\)It has to be kept in mind that ethnic or group identity and linguistic varieties need not overlap.
1 Introduction and Background

broussi 1998: 204). Most speakers consulted stress that the main dividing line lies between the variety of the lake-shore plains (Kyela district) on the one side and the varieties of the more mountainous terrains on the other.

The focus of this study lies on the Selya and Mwamba/Lugulu varieties. The Germany-based language assistants are originaly from Ikama (Mwamba/Lugulu) and Itete (Selya). In Mbeya city, preliminary work was performed with speakers from Itete. The main part of the fieldwork (§1.3) took place in the village of Lwangwa, which is said to be at the transition between the Mwamba/Lugulu and Selya varieties. The map in Figure 1.2 shows the position of the three villages.

Figure 1.2: Field base and origin of language assistants. Map courtesy of Monika Feinen
1.3 Data collection

The main data for this study was collected during three research trips to Tanzania. The first trip took place in November and December 2013, during which time research was carried out with speakers living in the city of Mbeya. On the second trip, in November and December of 2014, as well as on the third trip, from late September to early December of 2015, Lwangwa village in Busekelo district was chosen as the field base. Further intensive work, mainly guided elicitation, was carried out with two language assistants living in Germany between 2012 and 2016.

All language assistants that participated in this study are native speakers of Nyakyusa, fluent in Swahili and between 25 years and 78 years of age during the period of research. The expatriate speakers have been living in Germany since 2009 and 2005 respectively. Since that time they have returned periodically to the language area and continue to converse with family members on a regular basis in their native language. The contact language used in research has mainly been English, plus some Swahili (in Tanzania) and German (in Germany).

The main practices of data collection were one-on-one elicitation and text collection, predominantly of folk narratives. Elicitation is here to be understood not as a mere production task, but in a broad and interactive sense, in line with Mous (2007: 2), who states that “elicitation is guided conversation about language data”. See Cover (2015: 245–256) for a recent discussion of elicitation with a focus on semantic fieldwork.

The collection of lexical items, apart from basic approaches such as the elicitation of semantic fields and sound-substitution (Crowley 2007: 104–111), was greatly aided by previous work on Nyakyusa, especially Felberg’s (1996) dictionary. Although a great number of entries had to be checked for accuracy, it served as a valuable starting point for enlarging the lexical corpus. All lexical items were entered into a database using Fieldworks Language Explorer (FLEx) software. In the course of research this was supplemented and double-checked with usage in texts and spontaneous speech. FLEx software was also used for morphological segmentation and creating lexical cross-references. Given the problematic representation of Nyakyusa in several recent publications (see §1.2.3), a great amount of time and scrutiny was dedicated to checking and re-checking all transcriptions.

With regard to the semantics of TMA, elicitation encompassed a variety of tasks. One of them was translation from the contact language, mostly together with a discourse context. Here Dahl’s (1985; 2000a) tense and aspect question-
naries served as valuable points of departure. In other cases, the compatibility of a given construction with specific adverbials or lexical items was checked through grammaticality judgements, or possible contexts of use for constructed sentences were narrowed down through dialogue with the language assistants. The more research advanced, the more elicitation on TMA became intertwined with the analysis of texts and naturally observed data. Specific utterances were checked for their applicability and/or meaning in other contexts, and examples were manipulated in a targeted way, again checking for acceptability, changes in meaning, and possible contexts of use.

The texts used in this study came from two main sources. First, oral monologues, mostly folk narratives plus a few expository texts, were recorded with single speakers and later transcribed by the researcher. The transcription was then checked and the texts were translated into English with the help of a language assistant. Apart from minor exceptions, these were not the recorded speakers themselves. Additionally, two retellings of the Pear Story (Chafe 1980) were recorded and one oral rendering of a traditional narrative was made available by Knut Felberg. Furthermore, a number of written texts were made available by SIL International’s Mbeya office. These stem from literacy workshops and are mostly fictitious narratives but also include a few expository and procedural and one behavioural text. Five of these came edited and with translations into English, the others were translated with the language assistants. One additional written expository text was provided by one of the main language assistants. All written texts were double-checked for pronunciation. The composition of the text corpus is given in Table 1.1. A few additional examples were taken from a current draft of a Bible translation by SIL International (kindly made available by Helen Eaton), HIV prevention materials produced by the same organization and older text collections (Berger 1933; Busse 1942; 1949).

The focus on discourse is due to a number of reasons. The first reason is the availability of texts and the comparatively easy segmentation of narrative texts, given the time limits imposed upon this study. The second reason is the need for an adequate description of the dedicated narrative markers (§7). Third, though monological in their form, narratives often contain language of other communicative situations, for instance episodes in dialogue form or embedded expository or behavioural discourse. The use of certain grammatical devices, especially TMA, in everyday discourse constitutes an area that is open for further research.

---

9 Scripture quotations from The Authorized (King James) Version. Rights in the Authorized Version in the United Kingdom are vested in the Crown. Reproduced by permission of the Crown’s patentee, Cambridge University Press.
### 1.4 Theoretical framework

#### 1.4.1 Overview

For most parts of this grammar, no particular framework has been adopted. Instead, the description is based on well-known descriptive and typological concepts. In those parts dealing with phonological, morphological and syntactic aspects, the description is guided by structural considerations, whereas in the discussion of the meaning and use of TMA categories, functional considerations are in the foreground.

However, to gain a more profound understanding of the organization of tense and aspect, the cognitive framework developed by Botne & Kershner (2008) has been adopted in this study.

#### Table 1.1: Composition of the text corpus

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genre</th>
<th>Medium</th>
<th>Source</th>
<th>N of texts</th>
<th>Avg. N of words</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Own fieldwork</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>324</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Knut Felberg</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>856</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative</td>
<td>Written</td>
<td>SIL</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retelling</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Own fieldwork</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposition</td>
<td>Oral</td>
<td>Own fieldwork</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exposition</td>
<td>Written</td>
<td>Own fieldwork</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Behavioural</td>
<td>Written</td>
<td>SIL</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Procedural</td>
<td>Written</td>
<td>SIL</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Apart from elicitation and text collection, a great deal of everyday life in the field was carried out using Nyakyusa. This allowed for the observation of language use in a more natural environment and proved a fruitful source for contextualized examples, which served as jumping-off points for further elicitation. Lastly, Proto-Bantu reconstructions stem from the Bantu lexical reconstructions 3 database (Bastin et al. 2002).

Throughout this study, examples from elicitation sessions are marked with the abbreviation “[ET]”. Textual data is marked with a short version of the text’s name, often the title of the narrative, such as “[Crocodile and Monkey]”. Examples from participant observation or conversation are marked as “[overheard]”. 
been adopted, although an attempt was made to give a broad and dense description so as to facilitate translation into other frameworks. Botne & Kershner’s framework will be outlined in §1.4.2–1.4.3.

Further, to approach the uses of TMA categories in Nyakyusa narrative texts, the analytic tools developed by Labov & Waletzky (1967 and subsequent works) were applied and augmented by a number of concepts stemming from the works of Fleischman (esp. 1990) and Longacre (esp. 1990), as well as some insights into activation status by Prince (1981; 1992). These are described in §1.4.4.2. Lastly, while the approaches mentioned so far are synchronically oriented, in various cases it was found that applying a diachronic perspective helped the understanding of the present-day situation. Therefore, findings from grammaticalization theory (e.g. Heine et al. 1991; Bybee et al. 1994) were included, particularly with regard to identifying the sources of a given construction, delimiting newer and older readings and disentangling the interplay between the various constructions available within an area of grammar.

**1.4.2 Tense and grammatical aspect**

**1.4.2.1 Tense**

Tense is a deictic category that localizes a described state-of-affairs in time (see Comrie 1985 among others). According to the most commonly expressed view, the linguistic construal of time is best described in terms of an abstract timeline. Thus Comrie (1985: 2), in his reference work on tense, declares that “such a diagrammatic representation of time is adequate for an account of tense in human language.” Figure 1.3 illustrates this conception. Throughout this study, in the illustration of temporal relations, S stands for ‘time of speech’.

![Figure 1.3: Linear conception of time](image)

Bantu languages are well known for their complex TMA systems which include various degrees of remoteness in time, especially in the past (Dahl 1985: 185; Nurse 2008: 21f). Following the common conception of tense, these are usually described in terms of distance on a mono-dimensional timeline, as illustrated in Figure 1.4. The subscript digits indicate the degree of remoteness.
1.4 Theoretical framework

Such a representation, however, fails in many cases to explain patterns of morphological marking, as well as the systematic employment of these constructions. For example, the Malawian Bantu language Sukwa M301, as discussed by Kershner (2002: 93f), possesses four non-imperfective paradigms with past time reference. At first glance, their meanings seem to represent a progression from immediate past to to remote past. Figure 1.5 illustrates these paradigms together with their morphological composition on the traditional timeline.

The linear approach to tense fails to give a motivated explanation for the morphological composition of these constructions, e.g., why there is a zero-prefix in past$_2$, whereas past$_1$ and past$_3$ have $aa$-, or why past$_3$ combines the prefix of past$_1$ with the suffix of past$_2$. Further, it does not allow us to adequately describe their patterns of employment, which are described at length by Kershner (2002).

To address such cases, Botne & Kershner (2008) develop a cognitive model of tense and aspect, which is based on the tenet that there are two basic conceptualizations of time. One conceptualization has Ego, the conceptualizer, moving along a stationary timeline (*time is a path*); see Evans & Green (2006: 84f) on the concept of Ego. In the other, time itself is construed as moving (*time is a stream*), which allows for two perspectives. Either the metaphorical stream of time moves Ego along, passing eventualities as they take place, or time floats eventualities past a stationary Ego. Figure 1.6 depicts the two basic construals.

These two distinct conceptualizations of time are not mutually exclusive. A language may rather encode different aspects of both in different verbal paradigms. Botne & Kershner go on to decompose Reichenbach’s (1947) concept of reference time into two separate concepts: reference frame (“temporal domain” in Botne
& Kershner’s terms) and reference anchor. The first is said to be “comparable, but not identical” (Botne & Kershner 2008: 152) to Klein’s (1994) concept of topic time. Tense is then understood as the relationship between time of speech as the deictic locus and a reference frame. When the time span of the reference frame includes the deictic locus, this “denot[es] a primary, prevailing experiential past and future perspective” (Botne & Kershner 2008: 153). In cases where the deictic locus is not included in the time span of the reference frame (domain), they speak of a dissociated past or future. Exclusion corresponds to the conceptualization of time is a path.

The split between reference frame and reference anchor allows Botne & Kershner to further account for temporal relations within a reference frame, which correspond to the conceptualization of time is a stream.

Figure 1.7 illustrates these two types of temporal relationships, with the reference frames (domains) as rectangular plains. Figure 1.8a depicts a past tense, such as the English simple past. With the reference frame excluding the time of speech, the conceptualizer is instructed to move to a different cognitive domain, where the eventuality takes place. Figure 1.8b illustrates an associated past (“tenor” in Botne & Kershner’s terminology), which situates an eventuality prior to the time of speech but within the same reference frame.

In the case of Sukwa addressed above, constructions with past time reference can now be described on a compositional basis (Kershner 2002). The suffix -ite denotes completive aspect.10 The prefix aa- situates the described state-of-affairs in a preceding time unit within the same reference frame. In out-of-the-blue utterances this is understood as being shortly before the time of speech, but depending on the discursive environment, it can also refer to units such as the preceding day, month, season, etc. The sense of heightened remoteness of the configuration aa-vb-ite then derives from viewing an event as already completed within a pre-

---

10 See §1.4.2.2, 6.5.3.2 on grammatical aspect and the notion of completion respectively.
1.4 Theoretical framework

![Figure 1.7: Dissociative and associative pasts](image1.png)

(a) Dissociative past  
(b) Associative past

Figure 1.7: Dissociative and associative pasts

ceeding time unit. Lastly, *ka-* is a true tense in that it situates the state-of-affairs in a past reference frame. Figure 1.9 illustrates the pasts of Sukwa. See Botne & Kershner (2008) for a discussion of a number of such cases across Bantu.

![Figure 1.9: Organization of the past in Sukwa. Adapted from Kershner (2002: 113).](image2.png)

Figure 1.9: Organization of the past in Sukwa. Adapted from Kershner (2002: 113).

Apart from Botne & Kershner’s own work (among others Botne 2003b; 2006; 2008; Botne & Kershner 2000; 2008; Kershner 2002) their framework has proven fruitful in Seidel’s (2008) grammar of Yeyi R41, Crane’s (2011) treatise of tense and aspect in Totela K41 as well as Dom & Bostoen’s (2015) work on the Kikongo cluster of Bantu languages. As will be seen in Chapters 6–8, the core assumption of two linguistic perspectives on time will also guide our understanding of the organization of the Nyakyusa tense and aspect system.

1.4.2.2 Grammatical aspect

While tense, as defined in §1.4.2.1, is a deictic category, aspect is not. According to the most common and widely agreed-upon definition, “aspects are different ways of viewing the internal temporal constituency of a situation” (Comrie 1976: 3).
As has been pointed out variously in the theoretical literature on aspectuality, it is essential to distinguish aspect as a grammatical device from the aspectual potential encoded in the lexical verb or verb phrase. Sasse (2002) speaks of “bidimensional approaches” to aspectuality. Within these bidimensional approaches, a prominent position is taken by those approaches which Sasse (2002), adopting a term first introduced by Bickel (1997), calls “radical selection theories”. In these theories, aspect as a morphosyntactic device and the lexical dimension of aspect are understood as standing in a strict correspondence relationship: grammatical aspect serves as a phase-selector that selects matching temporal phases from the lexical dimension (the concept of phase will be developed in §1.4.3). As Sasse points out, other prominent bi-dimensional approaches to aspectuality, such as the one put forward by Smith (1997) are conceptually closely related to radical selection theories or might even constitute only a notional variant of them.

The need to distinguish two dimensions of aspectuality also holds for an adequate description of Nyakyusa. As will become clear in Chapters 5–8, grammatical aspect in Nyakyusa is sensitive to the aspectual potential in the lexical (and verb phrase) dimension and hence the choice of an inflectional paradigm greatly depends upon the latter. A central distinction here is that which falls between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs; see §1.4.3.1. In compliance with the tenets of radical selection theories, Botne & Kershner define grammatical aspect as follows:

[Grammatical, BP] [a]спект denotes the particular temporal view of time in the narrated event. More precisely, a specific aspect denotes a particular temporal phase of the narrated event as the focal frame for viewing the event. This focal frame depicts the status of the event in relation to the vantage point determined by Ego, by default typically the moment of speaking. (Botne & Kershner 2008: 171)

It is not entirely clear how far the idea of a temporal phase as the “focal frame” serves our understanding of grammatical aspect in Nyakyusa. Rather, it seems, especially in the case of perfective aspect (§6.5.3.2), that Ego’s vantage point may be construed in relation to a particular phase without necessarily being contained in the eventuality itself. Throughout this study, grammatical aspect will therefore be understood in a slightly simplified version of Botne & Kershner’s definition as denoting a particular temporal view of an eventuality by relating Ego’s vantage point to a particular temporal phase of it.

As can be gathered from the preceding discussion, Botne & Kershner’s approach to tense and grammatical aspect is a compositional one. Concerning
Nyakyusa, this has proven especially fruitful for the analysis of the past tense paradigms (see Chapter 6), the function of the future enclitic $aa= (§8.2)$ and the analysis of the present perfective (§6.5.3) vis-à-vis the past perfective (§6.5.5). In a few other cases, such as the narrative tense (§7.3) and the modal future (§9.5), the meanings and uses of the paradigms in question can, however, only be taken as a function of the entire construction. This situation can, in turn, be explained by taking into account the diachronic axis.

1.4.3 Inherent temporal structure of the verb

Grammatical aspect, as defined in the previous subsection, relates Ego’s vantage point to a particular temporal phase of an eventuality. The key to the interpretation of any particular verbal expression in Nyakyusa is thus the interaction between grammatical aspect and the temporal structure inherently encoded in the verb. In spite of its central role, this facet of grammar hardly receives any attention in descriptive work on Bantu languages. It is common in Bantu studies, however, to recognize that a number of verbs tend to show a particular behaviour, appearing mainly in certain inflectional paradigms and encoding a state. This class of verbs is commonly labeled “inchoative verbs” (e.g. Cole 1955: 55–60); this class of verbs will be dealt with in more detail below. A brief theoretical digression will lay out the concepts and analytical tools central to understanding the interaction between the lexical and the inflectional dimension in Nyakyusa.

1.4.3.1 Aristotelian aspect (‘lexical aspect’)

Aristotelian aspect, also named ‘lexical aspect’ or ‘verb aspect’ by some scholars, refers to the obligatory classification of the aspectual potential encoded in the lexical (and phrasal) dimension in terms of abstract temporal phases. Sasse (2002) speaks of ‘aspect$^2$’. The present study follows Binnick’s terminology, as Aristotle is generally credited with discovering these distinctions (Binnick 1991: 171f).

The most familiar categorization of verbal expressions in the linguistic literature are the categories postulated by the philosopher Vendler (1957) and developed to explain the behaviour of different verbal expressions in English. Vendler distinguishes four types of expressions based on temporal criteria and their behaviour or compatibility in particular syntactic frames: states, activities, achievements and accomplishments. A major split between these categories is along the lines of telicity (delimitedness): achievements and accomplishments are understood as telic, whereas states and activities are understood as atelic. The latter two again differ in dynamicity, while accomplishments and achievements differ
in regards to their duration (see below). Vendler’s categories have been accepted by a great number of scholars as being valid for all natural languages, as they are supposed to be based on universals of logic and are therefore understood not to be subject to cross-linguistic variation (see e.g. Tatevosov 2002: 322); for critical evaluations of this assumption see Filip (2011) and Bar-el (2015). The broad acceptance of Vendler’s categorization is not challenged by certain tweaks proposed by different scholars: for instance Verkuyl (1972) and Kenny (1969) conflate achievements and accomplishments, while Smith (1997) adds semelfactives as a further category. A number of tests to determine the category of different expressions have been developed in the literature, the most cited test being one for telicity, by checking for compatibility with adverbials of the type “in X time” and “for X time”. For an overview of tests put forward by a number of scholars, see Binnick (1991: 173–197).

For the study of Bantu languages Vendler’s categories are hardly applicable. As Crane puts it:

Rather than having a basic telic-atelic distinction, Bantu languages in general appear to divide verbs differently. This is due to a distinction between non-inchoative verbs (roughly corresponding to Vendler’s states, activities, and accomplishments) and inchoative verbs, which encompass many of Vendler’s achievements and other verbs. (Crane 2011: 34)

Crane hints at two closely related points of central importance. First, one essentially problematic category in Vendler’s classification is that of achievement verbs. In a Vendlerian understanding, as echoed by Binnick (1991: 195), “an achievement is all culmination; although the achievement is possibly preceded by some activity [...] the verb refers only to the achievement phase, not to the preceding activity”. Persohn (2017a), by drawing on the Nyakyusa data presented in Chapter 5 and incorporating data from Sukwa (Kershner 2002) and Ndali (Botne 2008), shows that the morphosemantic behaviour of numerous verbal lexemes and verb phrases in these languages can only be explained by assuming the lexicalization of transitional patterns that consist of a state or process of origin, a change-of-state and a resultant state; similar assumptions have so far been mostly implicit in recent studies of aspectuality in Bantu languages. This leads to the second point: Crane picks up the notion of inchoative verbs, which has come to be used as an umbrella term for those classes of verbal lexemes that encode a resultant state as part of their aspectual potential. As will become more explicit in Chapters 5–6, this notion of inchoativity plays a central role in the choice of grammatical aspect in Nyakyusa.
1.4 Theoretical framework

Within radical selection theories of aspectuality (§1.4.2.2), certain modifications of the Vendlerian categories have been stipulated. To give an example, Breu and Sasse (e.g. Breu 1984; Sasse 1991) understand grammatical aspect as making reference to boundaries of situations, the basic assumption being that the lexical or verb phrase dimension can potentially encode one situation, a left boundary that represents the ingression into the situation and a right boundary, that is, the egression out of the situation. This yields five potential types of verbs. Other radical selection theories, such as Bickel (1997) or Johanson (1996; 2000) offer comparable classifications; see Croft (2012: 48–52) for an overview. What these approaches share is the basic assumption that the lexical or verb phrase dimension may encode only one situation (or ‘middle phase’), which by definition excludes any lexicalizations of a transition from a state or process of origin into a resultant state; see Persohn (2017a) for more extensive discussion.

For the description of aspectuality in Nyakyusa the present study thus draws on a framework developed by Botne and Kershner (see Botne 1983; Kershner 2002; Botne & Kershner 2008 among others; see also §1.4.2), which has its origin in Botne’s study of aspectuality in Ruanda JD61 and has been extended by Kershner’s study of Sukwa M301. Botne and Kershner’s categorization of verbs is based on Freed (1979), a study of English phasal verbs (‘aspectualizers’) and their interaction with verbal semantics and the syntax of the verbal complement, in which Freed provides a formalization of Vendler’s categories. In analogy with syllable phonology Freed proposes that the underlying temporal structure of verbs can be understood as a combination of three phases (“segments” in her terminology). The Onset constitutes a preliminary or preparatory phase, while the Nucleus corresponds to the characteristic act encoded in the verb. The Coda constitutes a culminative phase following the characteristic act. In doing so, Freed subscribes to Vendler’s understanding of achievements as pure transitions. Botne and Kershner, in their works, adopt Freed’s understanding of phases; their central modification is to allow for more combinations of phases. Thus achievement verbs, apart from a punctual Nucleus, may further encode an extended Onset (state of origin) and/or an extended Coda (resultant state), yielding four types of achievements. Likewise, accomplishments may either contain a punctual or extended Coda phase. In both cases, the presence or absence of an extended Coda phase is equivalent to the distinction between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs. Activities, in Botne & Kershner’s understanding, comprise an extended Nucleus, whereas a state does not possess any internal structure. Throughout this study, in illustration of aspectual classes the three possible constituent phases will be abbreviated as O, N and C respectively. Note that the choice of Botne & Kersh-
1 Introduction and Background

Vendler’s model is to be understood as a useful descriptive tool; see Persohn (2017a) for a critical evaluation.

What must be emphasized in this context is the essential need to distinguish between the ontology of a real world state-of-affairs on the one hand and the linguistic construction (lexicalization) on the other which need not be congruent (Botne 1981: 77–100; Bickel 1997). Stated differently, cross-linguistic differences can arise when different phases of a situation are included in the lexical semantics of a verb. This is illustrated by Botne (2003b), a case study on ‘to die’ verbs, traditionally understood as a primary example of an achievement in Vendler’s sense. Furthermore, the alleged polysemy of many inchoative verbs in Bantu (‘to become X’; ‘to be X’) can thus be understood as a result of an inadequate meta-language translation, rather than an as inherent ambiguity (cf. Seidel 2008: 269, FN 249).

1.4.3.2 Aktionsart

Having broached the issues of grammatical aspect and Aristotelian (lexical) aspect, a further analytical distinction is to be made between Aristotelian aspect and Aktionsart. While Aristotelian aspect classifies the phasal structure of the verb in a wider sense, Aktionsart is “rather a classification of (expressions for) phases of situations and subsituations” (Binnick 1991: 170), which is optional and best described in more specific terms such as inceptive or resumptive (Binnick 1991: ibid). Formally, Aktionsart in Nyakyusa is expressed by verbal derivation (Chapter 4) and phasal verbs (Chapter 5).

To give an example, in the single-event reading of (1) the phasal verb leka ‘cease, stop’ refers to a cessation of the Nucleus phase of the lexical verb moga ‘dance’:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{(1)} & \quad a-lek-ile & \quad u-k\text{-k}\text{-mog-a} \\
& \quad 1\text{-cease-PFV AUG-15(INF)-dance-FV} \\
& \quad \text{‘S/he has stopped dancing.’}
\end{align*}
\]

1.4.4 Tense and grammatical aspect in discourse

1.4.4.1 Remarks on textual analysis and grammaticography

In the following description of tense and aspect categories, apart from their use in a sentence-level frame, an attempt is made to further include their use in dis-
1.4 Theoretical framework

course. A number of factors speak in favour of this approach. The ‘traditional’ perspective on tense and aspect is most clearly expressed by Comrie:

[T]he investigation of the use of a grammatical category in discourse should not be confused with the meaning of that category; instead, the discourse function should ultimately be accounted for in terms of the interaction of meaning and context. (Comrie 1985: 29)

Among the well-known feature of Bantu languages, however, are constructions whose main function lies in the structuring of narrative discourse (Nurse 2008: 24), typically labelled narrative tense and/or consecutive tense; see Chapter 7 for such constructions in Nyakyusa. Thus Comrie’s perspective seems problematic with regard to descriptive adequacy. A similar argument is put forward by Güldemann (1996) in his discussion of Doke’s grammar of Lamba M54 (translated from the original German, BP):

In the otherwise extensive and precise grammatical analysis by Doke one hardly encounters useful indications concerning the construction’s functional classification [...] The author only describes the verbal paradigm within the limits of sentence semantics [...] Within such an approach the result of the analysis can only produce a relatively vague term such as tempus historicum, which semantically speaking seems the more vacuous as the paradigms characterized by it are not the only ones that can denote historical events. (Güldemann 1996: 208)

Furthermore, as Levinson (1983: 77ff) notes, in most languages there is no one-to-one correspondence between temporal reference, in the physical sense, and linguistic categories. It is a common feature of natural languages to employ the latter for a broader variety of meanings. Assuming these notions surface especially in discourse contexts, an analysis limiting itself to the sentence-level misses many defining characteristics.

The opposite pole to a position such as Comrie’s is prominently represented by Weinreich (1964) and Hopper (1982), who consider temporal and aspectual categories to be of discourse origin and sentence-level meanings to be but mere correlates of discourse functions. Hopper says:

[M]orphological and local-syntactic accounts of aspect are either incomplete, or, to the extent that they are valid, essentially show the sentence-level correlates of discourse structures [...] Our understanding of aspect should be rooted in the last resort in discourse. (Hopper 1982: 16)
1 Introduction and Background

An intermediate position is taken by Suzanne Fleischman, who considers discursive uses of tense and grammatical aspect as “motivated extensions that [...] may ultimately contribute to a reshaping of the basic meanings” (Fleischman 1990: 23). In other words, she sees a certain dialectic relationship between meaning and use, although with a primacy of meaning.

Further intermediary positions can be found in the field of cognitive linguistics, with approaches considered to be holistic. Mental space theory (Fauconnier 1994) deals with the construction of discursive worlds through the use of TMA markers among other features. To a certain extent Botne & Kershner’s principle of inclusion and exclusion (§1.4.2.1) can also be understood as holistic, although no direct reference to discourse is made. What both approaches and further cognitive frameworks have in common is that, in their understanding, temporal and aspectual interpretations of these inflectional categories represent just the special case of a more general notion of cognitive distance and accessibility.

Independently of which one of these intermediary positions is taken, this short excursion has shown that it is necessary to include sentence-level as well as discursive data, whether they permit us to draw conclusions as to the “basic” meanings of the categories in question, which might be in the process of being reshaped by discursive use, which again is culture- and language-specific, or because sentence-level semantics and discourse uses are understood as two sides of one abstract conceptualization.

1.4.4.2 Tools and concepts of narrative analysis

The key concepts used in this study to approach the use of tense and grammatical aspect in discourse stem from Labov & Waletzky (1967 and subsequent works). These authors propose a classification of independent clauses within narratives, based on whether and to what degree they can be displaced without changing the temporal and sequential interpretation:

- **Narrative clauses** cannot be displaced without changing the inferred sequence of eventualities.
- **Restricted clauses** can be displaced throughout a determined part of a narrative.
- **Co-ordinate clauses** can be interchanged only with each other.
- **Free clauses** can range throughout the whole narrative.

By moving each clause to the beginning of its respective displacement set and coalescing coordinate clauses into a single unit, the “primary sequence” of events is obtained. Labov & Waletzky further put forward a structural outline of a typical narrative text (Table 1.2).
A minimal narrative, according to Labov & Waletzky (1967), consists of a sequence of clauses of which at least two are temporarily ordered. Thus a minimal narrative may consist of only the complicating action, although Labov & Waletzky emphasize that such a narrative would be pointless. As Fleischman (1990: 136) observes, there is a close relationship between narrative structure and TMA categories. The abstract and coda relate to the now of the speaker, thus one can expect the corresponding verbal categories to be used, whereas the orientation section, the complicating action and the resolution relate to the story-now and thus demand the use of different categories.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 1.2: Narrative structure according to Labov &amp; Waletzky (1967)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Abstract</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Orientation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Complicating action</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Evaluation</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Resolution</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coda</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Labov & Waletzky’s analytic tools were originally designed for analysing “oral versions of personal experience” (Labov & Waletzky 1967: 12), which, according to the authors, exhibit the most simple and fundamental narrative structures. They were later successfully applied to more complex narrative texts, perhaps most prominently in the works of Suzanne Fleischman. Thus Fleischman (1990) is an extensive treatment of tense and grammatical aspect in narrative discourse. Her analyses over a variety of languages, historical stages and genres is guided
by the distinction of four separate but interdependent functional components on which tense and grammatical aspect operate:

- **The so-called referential component** encompasses truth-conditional relations and what Fleischman takes to be the basic functions of TMA categories. As the term referential is often associated with so-called referential theories of meaning (e.g. Ogden & Richards 1923), this component will be referred to as *semantics* in the narrow sense throughout this study.

- **The textual component** deals with grounding (the construction of relative salience within the text), with marking textual boundaries and with controlling the flow of information.

- **The expressive component** provides social and attitudinal meanings, including evaluations and points of view.

- **The metalinguistic component** characterizes the discourse as such, by signalling specific styles, genres, registers and types of discourse.

The assumption of a textual component of meaning will prove fruitful in the analysis of the employment of the past tense categories in narrative discourse (§6.5.5.3), while the expressive component plays a role for the narrative present (§6.7.1) and the employment of tense in relative clauses (§6.7.2.3). Lastly, a metalinguistic component must be assumed, at least for the dedicated narrative markers (Chapter 7).

From Longacre (1996) the concept of narrative peak has been adopted. Longacre puts forth a structural outline of narratives comparable to the one proposed by Labov & Waletzky. Unlike the latter authors, however, he distinguishes between two tiers: a notional structure and a surface structure. Peak is then understood as the surface realization of the notional elements of climax (“everything comes to a head [...] contradictions, [...] all sorts of tangles until confrontation is inevitable”; Longacre 1996: 35) and/or denouement (“a crucial event happens which makes resolution possible”; Longacre 1996: 35). Considering the grammatical and pragmatic devices used, peak is characterized as “a zone of turbulence in regard to the flow of the discourse in its preceding and following parts” (Longacre 1996: 38). Common strategies of peak-marking include a shift in tense and grammatical aspect, rhetorical underlining such as repetitions and paraphrases, the concentration of participants as if on a crowded stage, over-specification of referents, or a shift in vantage point, to name just a few.

Lastly, in the analysis of tense usage in relative clauses (§6.7.2.3), Prince’s (1992) classification of information status has proven helpful. Prince introduces two binary distinctions, depending on whether information is new or old to the hearer (hearer-new/hearer-old) and new or old to the discourse (discourse-
new/discourse-old). In an older taxonomy (Prince 1981), discourse-new/hearer-
new information is labelled “brand new information”. As information that is
new to the hearer is likewise new to the discourse, these distinctions yield three
logical combinations: discourse-new/hearer-new, discourse-new/hearer-old, and
discourse-old/hearer-old. As a separate category, Prince proposes inferable in-
formation: a discourse may contain information that is technically discourse-
new/hearer-new but can be inferred from schemata, general beliefs or context.
For Prince, information means referents in discourse. In the analysis of tense-use
in relative clauses this study follows Levinsohn (2007) in applying the classifica-
tion of activation status not only to referents, but to whole propositions, too. This
combined approach to relative clauses has been adapted from Karels (2014).
2 Grammatical sketch

2.1 Typological overview

Nyakyusa classifies as a typical Narrow Bantu language, while also showing some unique characteristics. This section will provide a summary of these characteristics, giving examples of a number of commonly mentioned defining features (Möhlig 1981; Nurse & Philippson 2003a). It will then provide a short grammatical sketch that will serve as a point of departure for a more detailed description of the verb.

The phonology of Nyakyusa proves to be typical for Narrow Bantu in terms of its symmetrical inventory of seven vowel qualities and its phonotactics, although it can be considered innovative with regard to the loss of tone (§2.2.3) and also shows a rather particular variation from typical Narrow Bantu vowel harmony and related processes (§4.2.1).

Concerning morphology, Nyakyusa is a highly agglutinative language, with a productive system of verbal derivation. As will be described in §6.3, it features various verbal negations, the functional distribution of which is uncommon from a pan-Bantu perspective. Nyakyusa further has an elaborate system of tense, aspect and mood categories. An outstanding feature of Nyakyusa in this regard are the great number of futurate constructions (Chapter 8) in comparison to past tense forms, and the existence of two different narrative markers (Chapter 7). Bantu morphology, especially derivational morphology, has been described as showing a strong tendency towards templatic structures (Hyman 2002). Nyakyusa shows some intriguing cases of templatic requirements in the phonological realisation of certain affixes and affix combinations (see §4.3.3, 6.4.2) that are noteworthy even within the broader Bantu context.

When it comes to syntax, the Nyakyusa “basic” word order is SVO. The language has compound verbs, that is auxiliaries taking an inflected verb as a complement (see §6.6.2, 6.6.3). The language further has a well developed system of noun classes and both subject- and object-marking on the verb.
2 Grammatical sketch

2.2 Basic phonology

2.2.1 Vowels and syllables

2.2.1.1 Syllable structure

Syllables in Nyakyusa can have any of the following structures:

(1)  V  `i.ki.ko.ta  ‘chair’
    VV `ii.si.ko  ‘day’
    CV `w.n.jwe.go  ‘noise’
    CVV `a.kaa.ja  ‘homestead’
    CGV `i.kya.lo  ‘field’
    N `w.m.pe nga  ‘rice’
    NCV `w.mu.nda  ‘person’
    NCVV `w.lu.te.ngaa.no  ‘peace’
    NCGV `i.ngwe.go  ‘spear’

The possible syllable structures are subject to several distributional constraints: Syllables featuring an initial NC-cluster are not permitted following a syllabic nasal and syllabic nasals do not occur in word-final position. V and VV only occur in the initial position of a word or clitic group. Word-final vowels as a general rule are short, although there are several exceptions: the negated copula (optional, see §10.2.1), some cases of the associative marker -a, some interjections such as ee ‘yes’ and a number of ideophones.

2.2.1.2 Vowel inventory

Nyakyusa has a system of seven phonemic vowel qualities, as has also been reconstructed for Proto-Bantu (Schadeberg 2003b: 147). Phonetically, the mid-vowels are realized as open-mid vowels [ɛ, ɔ]. All seven vowel qualities occur as short and long. Following Bantuist conventions, long vowels are represented by a sequence of two identical vowels.\(^1\) Figure 2.1 illustrates the vowel inventory.

2.2.1.3 Vowel length

Nyakyusa has both short and long vowels. They can be lexically specified or can arise through morphophonemic processes such as contact between heteromorphemic vowels (§2.2.1.4) or as a compensation for the deletion of word-internal

\(^1\)This stands in contrast to Ndali, which has a reduced inventory of five phonemic vowel qualities, maintaining the inherited length opposition (Labroussi 1998; Botne 2008), and Ngonde, which has further lost the opposition in quantity (Labroussi 1998; Kishindo 1999).
2.2 Basic phonology

non-syllabic nasals (see p. 61 in §3.3.4.1). It is these contexts in which vowel length is distinctive. The minimal pairs in (2) exemplify the distinctive lexical function of vowel length, while those in (3) show that vowel length is grammatically distinctive.

(2)  
\begin{align*}
\text{oKoTima} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to rain\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKoTiima} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to herd\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKulila} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to cry\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKulila} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to eat with/for/at\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKoMmeta} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft cut (esp. hair)\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKoMmeta} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft bleat, cry like a goat\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKuSaLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft choose; pick\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKuSaLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft be(come) happy\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKuBoLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft rot, go bad\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKuBoLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft cut; slaughter\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKuToLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft err, make a mistake\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKuToLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft take from the head\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKoFuLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft castrate\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKoFuLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft undress; open knots\textquoteright}
\end{align*}

(3)  
\begin{align*}
\text{aJenjile} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft s/he has built\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. aAjenjile} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft s/he built\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKuMnya} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to know\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKuMnya} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to know me\textquoteright} \\
\text{oKuSaLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to choose; pick\textquoteright} & \quad \text{vs. oKuSaLa} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft to choose me\textquoteright}
\end{align*}

A number of Bantu languages, including some of the neighbouring Corridor languages, restrict the occurrence of long vowels. For instance in Malila M24, a long vowel cannot surpass the fourth mora reckoned from the word end (Kutsch Lojenga 2007). Nyakyusa, however, does not know such a constraint as the following examples illustrate.

(4)  
\begin{align*}
\text{ja}a\text{katala} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft (then) it (class 9) got angry\textquoteright} \\
\text{aa}la\text{aalo}u\text{si}i\text{ye} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft s/he asked\textquoteright} \\
\text{baalbo}\text{oki} & \quad \text{\textquoteleft oranges\textquoteright}
\end{align*}

Long vowels can further be the result of compensatory lengthening before prenasalized plosives (see §2.2.2.3). Vowels following glides (§2.2.2.2) are also realized with a slightly increased duration. As vowel length in these two environments is predictable, it is not given in the orthographic representation. Generally speaking, vowels in a syllable bearing primary stress tend to be realized
2 Grammatical sketch

with a longer phonetic duration, especially in the penultimate syllable of a phrase. Nevertheless, the phonemic length distinction is still discernible in stressed syllables. The only exception to the regular lengthening before prenasalized plosives is in imperatives (§9.2).

The opposite of compensatory lengthening is triggered by syllabic nasals (see §2.2.2.4). Any vowel preceding a syllabic nasal surfaces as short. The examples in (5) illustrate the opposition between prenasalized plosives and syllabic nasals. In the practical orthography employed throughout this work, syllabic nasals are marked <ŋ, m> preceding <b, d, g>, thus differentiating them from the voiced prenasalized plosives. As a nasal preceding a voiceless plosive or another nasal is always syllabic in Nyakyusa – see §2.2.2.4, 2.2.2.3 – syllabicity is not overtly indicated in these cases. Examples in (6) show that a short vowel is pronounced where the outcome of morphophonology would otherwise be a long or lengthened vowel.

(5) [aŋɡaˈniɾɛ] ‘s/he loves him/her vs. [aːˈgaˈniɾɛ] ‘s/he loves me’
(6)  a. Long vowel (triggered by 1sg prefix) shortened:
   [naŋkʰɔˈmaɰa] (°n-a-mu-kom-aga) ‘I was beating him/her’
   b. Long vowel (outcome of vowel coalescence) shortened:
   [baŋkʰɔˈmaɰa] (°ba-a-mu-kom-aga) ‘they were beating him/her’
   c. Vowel shortening overrides compensatory lengthening:
   [tʷaŋkʰɔˈmaɰa] (°tʊ-a-mu-kom-aga) ‘we were beating him/her’

2.2.1.4 Vowel coalescence and glide formation

When heteromorphic vowels within a word are juxtaposed, vowel coalescence and glide formation take place. The regularities differ slightly to the left and to the right of the root. (7–11) illustrate the outcome to the left of the stem, using the combination of subject prefix and verb stem. In the case of /u/-initial stems, the examples are nouns. Note that the outcome of vowel contact is independent of syllable count.

---

2 The acoustical study by von Essen & Kähler-Meyer (1969) notes the same for nouns produced in citation form, hence a phonological phrase. Such cases of phonetic penultimate lengthening have been reported for a number of Bantu languages; see Hyman (2013: 313) and references therein.

3 The same effect is triggered by the object marker of noun class 1; see p. 63 in §3.3.4.2.

4 No verb stems beginning with /u/ are attested and no prefix contains the mid-vowels /e, o/; see §3.2.
2.2 Basic phonology

(7) i + i → ii siisile (°si-is-ile) ‘they (class 10) have come’
i + ɪ → ɪɪ symile (°si-im-ile) ‘they (class 10) have stopped’
i + e → ye syegile (°si-eg-ile) ‘they (class 10) have taken’
i + a → ya syagile (°si-ag-ile) ‘they (class 10) have found’
i + o → yo syogile (°si-og-ile) ‘they (class 10) have bathed’
i +ʊ → ʊʊ symile (°si-ʊm-ile) ‘they (class 10) have dried’
i + u → yu ifyuga (°i-fi-uga) ‘hoofs’

(8) ɪ + i → ii liisile (°lɪ-is-ile) ‘it (class 5) has come’
ɪ + ɪ → ɪɪ lyɪmile (°lɪ-ɪm-ile) ‘it (class 5) has stopped’
ɪ + e → ye lyegile (°lɪ-eg-ile) ‘it (class 5) has taken’
ɪ + a → ya lyagile (°lɪ-ag-ile) ‘it (class 5) has found’
ɪ + o → yo lyogile (°lɪ-og-ile) ‘it (class 5) has bathed’
ɪ +ʊ → ʊʊ lyɪmile (°lɪ-ʊm-ile) ‘it (class 5) has dried’
ɪ + u → yu ɪfyuga (°ɪ-fi-uga) ‘hoof’

(9) a + i → ii biisile (°ba-is-ile) ‘they have come’
a + ɪ → ɪɪ bɪɪmile (°ba-ɪm-ile) ‘they have stopped’
a + e → ee beegile (°ba-eg-ile) ‘they have taken’
a + a → aa baagile (°ba-ag-ile) ‘they have found’
a + o → oo boogile (°ba-og-ile) ‘they have bathed’
a +ʊ → ʊʊ bʊʊmile (°ba-ʊm-ile) ‘they have dried’
a + u → uu amungu (°a-ma-ungu) ‘mushrooms’

(10) ʊ + i → wi twisile (°tʊ-is-ile) ‘we have come’
ʊ + ɪ → wi twɪmile (°tʊ-ɪm-ile) ‘we have stopped’
ʊ + e → we twegile (°tʊ-eg-ile) ‘we have taken’
ʊ + a → wa twagile (°tʊ-ag-ile) ‘we have found’
ʊ + o → oo toogile (°tʊ-og-ile) ‘we have bathed’
ʊ +ʊ → ʊʊ txʊmile (°tʊ-ʊm-ile) ‘we have dried’
ʊ + u → uu ʊtʊnungu (°ʊ-tʊ-unyu) ‘little mushrooms’

(11) u + i → wi mwisile (°mu-is-ile) ‘you (pl.) have come’
u + ɪ → wi mwɪmile (°mu-im-ile) ‘you (pl.) have stopped’
u + e → we mwegile (°mu-eg-ile) ‘you (pl.) have taken’
u + a → wa mwagile (°mu-ag-ile) ‘you (pl.) have found’
u + o → oo moogile (°mu-og-ile) ‘you (pl.) have bathed’
u +ʊ → ʊʊ mwʊmile (°mu-ʊm-ile) ‘you (pl.) have dried’
u + u → uu ʊmuunyu (°ʊ-mu-unu) ‘salt’

The table in (12) summarizes the outcome of left-of-the-stem (prefixing) vowel contact.
2 Grammatical sketch

(12) Adjacent vowels (left of the stem):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>V1</th>
<th>V2</th>
<th>i</th>
<th>iı</th>
<th>yı</th>
<th>ye</th>
<th>ya</th>
<th>yo</th>
<th>yʊ</th>
<th>yu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>i</td>
<td>ii</td>
<td>yı</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>ya</td>
<td>yo</td>
<td>yʊ</td>
<td>yu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a</td>
<td>ii</td>
<td>eı</td>
<td>ee</td>
<td>aa</td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>uu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>u</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>wi</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>wa</td>
<td>oo</td>
<td>uu</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Noun class 9 prefix jı- is exceptional. Its vowel assimilates to any following vowel (one may alternatively analyse this as vowel deletion with subsequent compensatory lengthening). (13) illustrates this for the subject prefix.

(13) jiisile (‘jı-is-ile) ‘it (class 9) has come’
    jıımile (‘jı-im-ile) ‘it (class 9) has stopped’
    jeegile (‘jı-eg-ile) ‘it (class 9) has taken’
    jaagile (‘jı-ag-ile) ‘it (class 9) has found’
    jıoogile (‘jı-og-ile) ‘it (class 9) has bathed’
    jıısımile (‘jı-ʊm-ile) ‘it (class 9) has dried’

Juxtaposition of heteromorphemic vowels to the right of the root (suffixation and infixation) occurs productively only in a limited number of cases, one of which is derivational suffixes attached to monosyllabic verbs. This yields slightly idiosyncratic results; see §4.2.1.1. The other two are the suffixing of inflectional affixes to monosyllabic verbs and a process of infixing referred to as imbrication (§6.4.2). Unlike with prefixes, the low vowel /a/ followed by a front vowel yields /ee/.

(14) i + i  →  ii  inamiike (‘inami<i>k-e) ‘bend (tr).PFV’
    pıliike (‘pılı<i>k-e) ‘hear; feel.PFV’
    kemiile (‘keme<i>l-e) ‘bark at.PFV’
(15) a + i  →  ee  peegwa (‘pa-іgwa-a) ‘be given’
    egeeme (‘ega<i>m-e) ‘lean.PFV’
    paella (‘pa-ıl-a) ‘give away’
(16) o + e  →  we  bwene (‘bo<e>n-e) ‘see.PFV’
    o + i  →  wi  kosomwile (‘kosomo<i>l-e) ‘cough.PFV’
    wi + i  →  alwike (‘aIʊ<i>k-e) ‘stand up.PFV’
    u + i  →  wi  afwile (‘afu<i>l-e) ‘crawl.PFV’
2.2 Basic phonology

2.2.2 Consonants

2.2.2.1 Consonant inventory

Table 2.1 shows the 16 phonemic consonants of Nyakyusa as they are spelt in this study. Where the phonetic value differs from the graphic representation it is given in square brackets.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Bilabial</th>
<th>Lab. dent</th>
<th>Alveolar</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
<th>Glottal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plosive</td>
<td>p</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>Ʉ &lt;j&gt;</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nasal</td>
<td>m</td>
<td>n</td>
<td>ɲ &lt;ny&gt;</td>
<td>ƞ &lt;ng’&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricative</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>s</td>
<td>h</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approx.</td>
<td>β &lt;b&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ɰ &lt;g&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lat. Appr.</td>
<td></td>
<td>l</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glide</td>
<td></td>
<td>(j) &lt;y&gt;</td>
<td>(w)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The glottal fricative is very rare. In most cases it can be regularly traced back to loans from Kinga and Kisi (Labroussi 1998: 218). Nurse (1979) even considers it to be so marginal as to make its phonemic status dubious. The velar nasal is frequent phonetically, but rare in its occurrence underlyingly. The approximants are realized as plosives when following a nasal and as approximants elsewhere. Lateral /l/ is optionally realized as [ɾ~ɹ] after a front vowel in unstressed syllables, unless it is followed by a glide. The palatal plosive is typically realized as an affricate [dʒ] when following a nasal. Voiceless plosives tend to be aspirated. The fricative /f/ in native material can regularly be traced back to a diachronic or synchronic process of spirantization; see Bostoen (2008) on Bantu spirantization. Morphophonemic processes can, however, obscure this relationship, detaching the fricative from the triggering vowel (see §4.3.1, 4.3.3). Nasals preceding another consonant are generally homorganic and will be written as <m> before a labial and as <n> elsewhere. Consonants in loans from Swahili that are not adapted to the phoneme inventory of Nyakyusa will be written with their respective phonetic symbols.

5Note also the verb stem fifa ‘hide (intr.)’ (variant fisa) < PB *píc, a clear case of historical assimilation.
2 Grammatical sketch

2.2.2.2 Glides

Glides can be synchronically or diachronically traced back to the desyllabification of a vowel, although the quality of the underlying vowel is not synchronically discernible in all cases. The palatalized alveolar nasal is clearly distinct from the palatal nasal. In monitored speech it is realized as [nj]. The palatalized alveolar nasal will be written as <ni> throughout this study in order to distinguish it from the palatal nasal /ɲ/, represented by the digraph <ny>. Glides normally do not appear before rounded back vowels, although some lexicalized exceptions occur. Vowels following glides are slightly lengthened (§2.2.1.3).

2.2.2.3 Prenasalized plosives

Prenasalization in Nyakyusa is limited to plosives (see Table 2.2).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prenasalized Consonants</th>
<th>Bilabial</th>
<th>Alveolar</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mb &lt;mb&gt;</td>
<td>nd &lt;nd&gt;</td>
<td>nj &lt;nj&gt;</td>
<td>ng &lt;ng&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Prenasalized plosives are always voiced and homorganic.Voiceless plosives turn into their voiced counterparts when preceded by a non-syllabic nasal, and the approximants /β̞, l, ɰ/ into their plosive counterparts. (17) shows that preceding vowels the prefix of noun class 9/10 surfaces as ny- (note that any vowel preceding or following this prefix surfaces as long; see §2.3.2) and (18) illustrates how this prefix induces prenasalization. (19) illustrates prenasalization with the subject prefix of the first person singular.

(17) unyiifi (‘1-ny-if) ‘chameleons’
unyimbo (‘1-ny-imbo) ‘songs’
unyendo (‘1-ny-endo) ‘journeys’
unyala (‘1-ny-ala) ‘grindstones’
unyoobe (‘1-ny-obe) ‘fingers’
unyoobo (‘1-ny-ubo) ‘big knives’

---

6 This voicing rule distinguishes Nyakyusa from the Ngonde variety described by Labroussi (1998: 278), although it does apply in the variety described by Kishindo (1999).

7 Before certain object prefixes, the 1sg subject prefix turns into a syllabic nasal; see §3.3.2.1.
2.2 Basic phonology

Prenasalized consonants are not considered phonemic for a number of reasons. First, when they occur across morpheme boundaries, as in the above examples, they can clearly be analysed as the result of a nasal segment followed by a plosive or approximant. Second, the nasals involved are also found as single phonemes and the voiced plosives are regular allophones of /β̞, l, ɰ/ in a post-nasal context, as can also be seen with the syllabic nasals (§2.2.2.4). Further, their stem-internal distribution is very limited, the majority of cases being the second consonant of the stem. Last, they are rarely found in affixes. All of this speaks in favour of assuming syllable structures of the type /NC…/ rather than an additional set of phonemes. Note that prenasalization triggers lengthening of a preceding vowel, as discussed in §2.2.1.3.

2.2.2.4 Syllabic nasals

Syllabic nasals in the great majority of cases are the result of a series of morphophonemic processes affecting noun class affixes. The most frequently applying of these processes is deletion of the underlying high back vowel of the prefixes of noun classes 1, 3, and 18 in most pre-consonantal environments and subsequent syllabification of the nasal segment. Other sources include the first person singular subject prefix in determined phonemic and morphological contexts (see §3.3.2.1).

Syllabic nasals hardly ever appear morpheme-internally. Exceptions include mma ['m̩.ma] ‘no’ and related forms such as soma ['sɔ.ˈm̩.ma] ‘don’t!’, as well as nnoono ['n̩.ˈnɔː.nɔ] ‘so much’ and nsyisyr ['n̩.s’y½ː.r.s’i] ‘skunk’ (pl. bansyisyr). In con-
2 Grammatical sketch

Contrast to prenasalized plosives, syllabic nasals do not trigger voicing. Thus, in the graphic representation, the syllability of nasals is ambiguous only in sequences involving a voiced plosive, and will be marked <m, n> in this context. Further, syllabic nasals induce shortening of preceding long or lengthened vowels (see §2.2.1.3). Phonetically they are realized with a longer duration than non-syllabic nasals. As with prenasalized plosives, syllabic nasals as a general rule are homorganic to the following segment, and approximant phonemes are hardened to plosives. A syllabic nasal preceding /h/ is realized as velar.

(20) ʊm̩belo (°ʊ-mu-belo) ‘wind’
     ʊndʊme (°ʊ-mu-lʊme) ‘husband’
     ʊngʊnda (°ʊ-mu-gʊnda) ‘field, farm’
     ʊnhɪɪji (°ʊ-mu-hɪɪj-i) ‘thief’

2.2.3 Suprasegmentals

Nyakyusa is not a tonal language, unlike the majority of Bantu languages (Kisseberth & Odden 2003 amongst others). The loss of inherited tone in Nyakyusa has been noted even in early studies (e.g. Nurse 1979; Guthrie 1967; von Essen & Kähler-Meyer 1969). Instead, Nyakyusa features a regular penultimate accent. The lack of phonemic tone makes Nyakyusa quite different from its close relative Ndali (see e.g. Nurse 1988; Botne 2008), although this characteristic is apparently shared with Ngonde (Kishindo 1999; Labroussi 1999). Every word in Nyakyusa is assigned stress on the penultimate syllable. However, words are often grouped together as a prosodic unit, in which case the penultimate syllable of the rightmost word receives a more pronounced stress. Typical cases are nouns followed by a determiner:

(21) ʊˌmwan(a) ʊˌjʊ
     ʊ-mu-ana ʊ-jʊ
     AUG-1-child AUG-PROX.1
     ‘this child’

(22) iiˌgalɪ lyangʊ
     ii-galɪ lɪ-angʊ
     5-car 5-POS.1SG
     ‘my car’

See Bickmore & Clemens (2016) on Tooro JE12 for a similar case.
2.3 Nouns and noun phrase

In the same fashion, a determiner introducing a relative clause (see §2.4) forms a prosodic unit with the following verb:

(23) ʊn̩ˈdʊngʊ ʊ-gʊ ɡʊˈkwisa  a'twale  n 행사
ʊ-mu-lʊŋʊ ʊ-gʊ ɡʊ-kʊ-is-a  a-twal-e  n-heela
AUG-3-week AUG-PROX.3 3-PRS-come-FV 1-carry-SUBJ AUG-money(9)
ˈjangʊ
ji-angʊ
9-POSS.1SG

'Next week [lit. the week that comes] he must bring my money.' [Monkey and Tortoise]

2.3 Nouns and noun phrase

2.3.1 Noun classes

Bantu languages are well-known for their noun class systems; for an introduction see Maho (1999: ch. 3) and Katamba (2003). Nyakyusa has a typical system of 18 noun classes, of which some are further differentiated into subclasses. Each noun class is characterized by a series of agreement prefixes. Agreement in the noun phrase occurs between the head and its modifiers, as (24) illustrates. See Lusekelo (2009b) on the linear structure of the Nyakyusa noun phrase.

(24) a-ɓa-ana  a-ɓa-lʊmyana  a-ɓa-tupe  b-angʊ  ba-bɪlɪ  ba-la
    AUG-2-child  AUG-2-boy  AUG-2-fat  2-POSS.1SG  2-two  2-DIST
    ‘these two fat sons of mine’ [ET]

As to agreement marking, two sets of prefixes can be distinguished within the noun phrase:

- The nominal prefix (NPX) is used with nouns and adjectives and the numerals 2–5, as well as with the bound roots nandi ‘little, few’, ingi ‘many, much’ and linga ‘how much, how many’.
- The pronominal prefix (PPX) is used to form demonstratives (see §2.3.3), and also occurs with the associative and possessives as well as the bound roots mo ‘one, some’, ngi ‘other’, ki ‘what kind of’, which’, ope ‘also’, ene ‘self; owner’ (except for class 1), osa ‘all’, and is also used as a secondary prefix (see §2.3.2).
As the list indicates, there are a number of additional complexities concerning the choice and shape of these agreement prefixes, of which only the most frequent can be discussed here. In noun class 1, the pronominal prefix is *gʊ* with possessives, the associative and *osa* ‘all’ (yielding irregular *gwesa*), and *jʊ* elsewhere. Further, the bound root *ene* ‘self; owner’ takes the nominal prefix in noun class 1, but the pronominal prefix in all other classes. Numerals in class 10 are marked by a prefix *i*.

Subclasses (1a, 2a, 9a, 10a) differ from their main class in the marking of the head noun – in the first three cases they lack an overt nominal prefix. Dependent constituents, however, take the agreement forms of the respective main classes. Throughout this study, subclasses will not be explicitly marked in glossing. The agreement prefixes are further subject to a number of morphophonological alternations, some of which will be discussed in §2.3.2.

Nouns, adjectives and a number of other bound roots can also carry the augment, which is commonly referred to as the pre-prefix or initial vowel. This morpheme has the shape of a single vocalic segment /ɪ, a, ʊ/, whose place of articulation harmonizes with that of the respective noun class’s underlying prefix vowel. See §2.3.2 for a short discussion of the distribution of the augment.

The semantics of the Nyakyusa noun classes are only semi-transparent and can best be described in terms of some common core meanings.

Table 2.3 gives an overview of the various noun classes in Nyakyusa, their nominal agreement prefixes and frequent semantic elements of each class; cross-reference markers on the verb will be discussed in §3.3.2, 3.3.4, 3.3.8.1. The noun classes are numbered according to the common Bleek-Meinhof system. The ascribed meanings are based on a synthesis of previous grammatical sketches and have been refined by the author through the inclusion of subclasses.

As can be gathered from Table 2.3, Nyakyusa noun classes form a number of regular singular-plural pairings. Figure 2.2 illustrates these pairings, which for the main classes represent one of the most frequent patterns across Bantu (Katamba 2003: 109). Examples for each of these pairings are given in (25). See (27) below for examples of the locative noun classes and Chapter 11 on the infinitive noun class 15. Note that when it comes to nominal agreement, the discourse participants (first and second person) fall within noun classes 1 (singular) and 2 (plural).

---

9Schumann (1899), Meinhof (1966), Endemann (1914), Nurse (1979), Lusekelo (2007) and Felberg (1996)
### 2.3 Nouns and noun phrase

Table 2.3: Nyakyusa noun classes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>AUG</th>
<th>NPx</th>
<th>PPx</th>
<th>Semantics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>jṼ-</td>
<td>human beings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>kinship terms; proper names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Ṽ-)</td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>some living beings; some loans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>ba-</td>
<td>regular plural of class 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2a</td>
<td>(a-)</td>
<td>baa-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>regular plural of class 1a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>gu-</td>
<td>plants, other non-animates</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>natural phenomena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>mi-</td>
<td>gi-</td>
<td>regular plural of classes 3 and 14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>regular plural of class 5 augmentatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>li-</td>
<td>li-</td>
<td>fruits, produce; body parts; miscellanea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>augmentatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ma-</td>
<td>ga-</td>
<td>regular plural of class 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>mass terms and liquids; paired objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>kṅ-</td>
<td>kṅ-</td>
<td>characteristics, mannerisms, languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>instruments, utensils, tools</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>derogatives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>fi-</td>
<td>fi-</td>
<td>regular plural of class 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>r-</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>ji-</td>
<td>animals; frequently used objects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>some abstracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td>si-</td>
<td>regular plural to class 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>ny-</td>
<td>si-</td>
<td>regular plural to concrete nouns of class 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10a</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td></td>
<td>regular plural to class 9a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>le-</td>
<td>le-</td>
<td>long, thin entities; some abstracts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>single instances of collectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>particular instances of class 9 stems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>a-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>ka-</td>
<td>large quantities; some miscellanea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>diminutives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>tṼ-</td>
<td>tṼ-</td>
<td>regular plural of class 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>bṼ-</td>
<td>bṼ-</td>
<td>qualities, characteristics, materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>abstracts; localities, countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>some concretes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Ṽ-</td>
<td>kṼ-</td>
<td>kṼ-</td>
<td>infinitives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>pa-</td>
<td>pa-</td>
<td>locative: ‘at’, ‘proximity’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>kṼ-</td>
<td>kṼ-</td>
<td>locative: ‘general area’, ‘far away’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>/</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>locative: ‘in’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2 Grammatical sketch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sg.</th>
<th>Pl.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9a</td>
<td>10a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 2.2: Attested noun class pairings

(25)  

a. Classes 1/2:

\[\text{ʊmwana (°ʊ-\text{mu-ana})} \quad \text{‘child’}\]
\[\text{abaana (‘a-ba-ana) \quad \text{‘children’} }\]

b. Classes 1a/2a:

\[\text{taata (°ø-ø-taata) \quad \text{‘my father’} }\]
\[\text{baataata (°ø-\text{baa-taata}) \quad \text{‘my fathers’} }\]

c. Classes 3/4:

\[\text{ʊmpiki (°ʊ-\text{mu-piki}) \quad \text{‘tree’} }\]
\[\text{ɪmipiki (°ɪ-\text{mi-piki}) \quad \text{‘trees’} }\]

d. Classes 5/6:

\[\text{iitooki (‘ii-tooki) \quad \text{‘type of banana’} }\]
\[\text{amatooki (‘a-ma-tooki) \quad \text{‘bananas’} }\]

e. Classes 5/4 (augmentatives):

\[\text{iibwa (‘ii-bwa) \quad \text{‘big/bad dog’} }\]
\[\text{imibwa (‘i-mi-bwa) \quad \text{‘big/bad dogs’} }\]

f. Classes 7/8:

\[\text{ɪkɪkombe (°ɪ-kɪ-kombe) \quad \text{‘cup’} }\]
\[\text{ɪfikombe (°ɪ-fi-kombe) \quad \text{‘cups’} }\]
2.3 Nouns and noun phrase

g. Classes 9/10:

\textit{imbwa} (°ɪ-ny-bwa) ‘dog’
\textit{imbwa} (°ɪ-ny-bwa) ‘dogs’

h. Classes 9a/10a:

\textit{ɪɪpʊsi} (°ɪɪ-ø-pʊsi) ‘cat’ (<EN)
\textit{ɪɪpʊsi} (°ɪɪ-ø-pʊsi) ‘cats’

i. Classes 11/10:

\textit{ʊlʊnywili} (°ʊ-lʊ-nywili) ‘hair (sg.)’
\textit{ɪnywili} (°ɪ-ny-nywili) ‘hair (pl.)’

j. Classes 12/13:

\textit{akapango} (°a-ka-pango) ‘story’
\textit{ʊtʊpango} (°ʊ-tʊ-pango) ‘stories’

k. Classes 12/13 (diminutives):

\textit{akabwa} (°a-ka-bwa) ‘little dog’
\textit{ʊtʊbwa} (°ʊ-tʊ-bwa) ‘little dogs’

l. Classes 14/4:

\textit{ʊbooga} (°ʊ-bʊ-oga) ‘mushroom’
\textit{ɪmyoga} (°ɪ-mi-oga) ‘mushrooms’

2.3.2 Nominal morphology

The linear structure of a canonical nominal in Nyakyusa can be schematized as in Figure 2.3.

\begin{center}
\begin{tabular}{lll}
(Augment) & (Locative prefix) & Nominal prefix & Stem \\
(Pronominal prefix) & & & \\
\end{tabular}
\end{center}

Figure 2.3: Structure of Nyakyusa nominals

The grammatical functions of the augment in Bantu are complex and need further research; see Hyman & Katamba (1991; 1993) and also van der Wal & Namyalo (2016) for an insightful discussion of a number of pragmatic and syntactic functions of the augment in Ganda JE15. In Nyakyusa use of the augment is optional, although it is excluded in a number of contexts: following the associative -a, in predicative and vocative use, following \textit{ngati} ‘as, like’, \textit{kukutu} ‘every’ and (i)\textit{kisita}/(o)\textit{kosita} ‘without’, and when the head noun is modified by \textit{ki}
2 Grammatical sketch

‘which, what kind of’. Nouns carrying a pronominal prefix instead of an augment, express an emphatic notion translatable along the lines of ‘just X; the very X’:

(26)  
\[ lʊ-lw-ala \] 'the very grindstone (class 11)'
\[ go-n-nts \] 'the very head (class 3)'

Inherently locative nouns are rare. Locatives are commonly formed by additive marking, that is by prefixing a locative noun class prefix to a noun already marked for a noun class of its own:

(27)  
\[ pa-lw-isi \] 'at (class 16) a/the river'
\[ ko-lw-isi \] 'at (class 17) a/the river'
\[ mu-lw-isi \] 'in (class 18) a/the river'

In a manner analogous to the prefixing of pronominal prefixes discussed above, locative nouns may carry more than one prefix of the same locative class in addition to the noun’s basic noun class prefix. This twofold or even threefold locative marking seems to give emphasis to the specific locative semantics.

(28)  
\[ pa-pa-kr-lo \] 'on that very (class 16) night'
\[ mu-n-k-iina \] 'in (class 18) the pit'
\[ mu-mu-n’-dw-isi \] 'in (class 18) the river'

The nominal prefixes (§2.3.1) are subject to a number of morphophonological alternations, of which only the most general ones can be discussed here. The nominal prefix \[ mu- \] of noun classes 1, 3 and 18 is commonly realized as a syllabic nasal when preceding consonants other than the prenasalized plosives; see §2.2.2.4 for some examples. The nominal prefix \[ ny- \] of classes 9/10 does not surface when preceding a stem-initial nasal or voiceless fricative, unless the resultant word would be monosyllabic, in which case it surfaces as a syllabic nasal (29). Any prefix preceding an underlying \[ ny- \] (the augment, a locative prefix or a prepositional prefix) is realized with a long vowel. The same holds for any following stem-initial vowel (30). Similarly, augments and other prefixes on subclass 9a/10a nouns always feature a long vowel (31).

(29)  
\[ ṭunongwa \] ('ṭ-ny-nongwa) 'affair(s); case(s)'
\[ ṭiswi \] ('ṭ-ny-swi) 'fish(es)'
\[ nswi \] ('ny-swi) 'it is (a/the) fish(es)'

(30)  
\[ ṭinyuma \] ('ṭ-ny-nyuma) 'back'
\[ ji-nyuma \] ('ji-ny-nyuma) 'the very back'
\[ kʊ-nyuma \] ('kʊ-ny-nyuma) 'behind, after'
\[ ṭinyaala \] ('ṭ-ny-ala) 'grindstones'
2.3 Nouns and noun phrase

Further, there are a few class 9/10 stems where the prefix and the stem-initial consonant fuse due to a fossilized morphophonemic process known as Meinhof’s law (32). In noun class 5, with consonant-initial stems, most commonly a prefix \( ii \)- is used, with no distinction concerning the presence or absence of an augment (33).

(32) \( \text{ɪɪng’ombe} \) (\( \text{ɪ}-\text{n}-\text{ɡ}-\text{om}-\text{b}-\text{e} \)) ‘cow’ cf. \( \text{akagombe} \) ‘little cow (class 12)’
\( \text{ɪɪnyumba} \) (\( \text{ɪ}-\text{n}-\text{y}-\text{j}-\text{u}-\text{m}-\text{b}-\text{a} \)) ‘house’ cf. \( \text{akajumba} \) ‘little house (class 12)’

(33) \( \text{ii}-\text{bole} \) ‘leopard’
\( \text{ii}-\text{lʊʊka} \) ‘shop’
\( \text{ii}-\text{sys} \) ‘word’

2.3.3 Demonstratives and pronominals

Three basic demonstratives can be distinguished. First, a proximal of the shape \( \text{AUG-PPX} \).\(^{10}\) This demonstrative is always used with the augment. Second, a demonstrative with a referential function (\( \text{AUG-PPX-o} \)). Used without the augment, this further serves as an emphatic copulative. Following common Bantuist terminology, throughout this study these demonstratives will also be called substitutives. Third, there is a distal demonstrative (\( \text{PPX-la} \)). Table 2.4 illustrate these forms.

Numerous emphatic forms can be constructed through various patterns of reduplication, for instance \( \text{kikiki} \) ‘this very one (class 7)’, \( \text{kikyo} \) ‘the very one (class 7)’ (e.g. already mentioned) or \( \text{kilakila} \) ‘that very one (class 7)’. Locative classes 17 and 18 (but not 16) differ in that their proximal demonstrative has the shape \( \text{PPX-no} \). Parallel forms also exist for class 14 (\( \text{buno} \) ‘this way, thus, so’) and class 5 (\( \text{lino}, \text{litlino} \) ‘now; today’).

A number of demonstratives have acquired special meanings and functions. The class 14 substitutive \( \text{bo} \) serves a number of circumstancial functions, such as introducing adverbials of comparison. It also has an aspectual function of establishing or reintroducing a temporal anchor (34) and introducing temporal adverbial clauses (35).

\(^{10}\) Sometimes (but not consistently) a Swahili-influenced variant /\text{hVCV}/ is heard: e.g. \( \text{hikr} \) ‘this (7)’.
2 Grammatical sketch

Table 2.4: Noun class demonstratives

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Proximal</th>
<th>Referential</th>
<th>Distal</th>
<th>Class</th>
<th>Proximal</th>
<th>Referential</th>
<th>Distal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ʊjo</td>
<td>ʊ-jo</td>
<td>jʊla</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>ʊlo</td>
<td>ʊ-lo</td>
<td>kʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>aba</td>
<td>a-bo</td>
<td>bala</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>aka</td>
<td>a-ko</td>
<td>kala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>ʊgʊ</td>
<td>ʊ-go</td>
<td>gʊla</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>ʊto</td>
<td>ʊ-to</td>
<td>tʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>iɡi</td>
<td>i-gyo</td>
<td>gɪla</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>ʊbʊ</td>
<td>ʊ-bo</td>
<td>bʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>ɪlɪ</td>
<td>i-lyo</td>
<td>lɪla</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>ʊkʊ</td>
<td>ʊ-ko</td>
<td>kʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>ɡaɡa</td>
<td>a-go</td>
<td>gala</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>apa</td>
<td>a-po</td>
<td>pala</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>ɪkɪ</td>
<td>i-kyo</td>
<td>kɪla</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>kʊno</td>
<td>ʊ-ko</td>
<td>kʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ɪfi</td>
<td>i-fyo</td>
<td>fila</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>mʊno</td>
<td>ʊ-mo</td>
<td>mʊla</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ɪji</td>
<td>i-jo</td>
<td>jɪla</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>ɪsi</td>
<td>i-syo</td>
<td>sɪla</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(34) bo a-a-bomb-ag-a fi-ki?
14.REF 1-PST-do-IPFV-FV 8-what
‘What was he doing then?’ [ET]

(35) bo fi-kw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-bfw-a, ɪ-n-gambɪl
14.REF 8-PRS-begin-FV AUG-15-ripen-FV, AUG-10-monkey
si-lnkw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-ly-a ɪ-fi-lombe m-mi-gunda gy-a
10-NARR-begin-FV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-8-maize 18-4-farm 4-ASSOC
ba-ndʊ ba-la
2-person 2-DIST
‘When it began to ripen, monkeys started to eat the maize in those
people’s field.’ [Thieving monkeys]

Similarly, the locative determiners are used as temporals. Further cases of
specialized meanings include class 11 proximal ʊlo ‘in this way; now’ and class 18
reduplicated substitutives muumo, momuumo ‘right, all right; accordingly; com-
plete’.

The pronouns for the discourse participants (substitutives) are given in Ta-
ble 2.5. In contrast to the substitutives of the noun classes, they have the shape
AUG-C(G)-e. Note the change of the consonant in the first person plural when preceded by a vowel.
Table 2.5: Participant pronouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant</th>
<th>Pronoun</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>ʊ-ne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2SG</td>
<td>ʊ-gwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1PL</td>
<td>twe, ʊ-swe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2PL</td>
<td>ʊ-mwe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emphatic personal pronouns are formed with a reduplicated class 1 pronominal prefix. This holds for the singular as well as for the plural: *jo~joʊ-ne* ‘just me’, *jojoʊgwe* ‘just you’, *jojoʊswe* ‘just us’, *jojoʊmwe* ‘just you (pl.)’.

### 2.4 Basic syntax

The basic word order in Nyakyusa is Subject–(Auxiliary)–Verb–1<sub>ary</sub> Object–2<sub>ary</sub> Object (–Adjuncts).

(36) a-lɪ pa-kʊ-ba-p-a a-ba-ana ɪ-fi-ndʊ pa-ka-aja
     1-COP 16-15-2-give-FV AUG-2-child AUG-8-food 16-12-homestead
     ‘She is giving the children food at home.’ [ET]

However, as Bearth (2003) observes, word order in Bantu is typically not as much a question of syntactic restrictions as it is governed by the needs of discourse. Modifiers most commonly follow their head:

(37) ɪɪ-heela ny-ingi
     AUG-money(10) 10-many
     ‘much money’

(38) ʊ-tʊ-ndʊ tw-ɪtʊ
     AUG-13-thing 13-poss.1PL
     ‘our things’

A key element in Nyakyusa syntax are the noun classes (§2.3.1) and their respective agreement or cross-reference. Agreement in Nyakyusa occurs between a head and its modifiers in the noun phrase, as well as between the predicate and its subject and possibly an object. There is also endophoric agreement with
demonstratives and relative clauses. The reader is referred to Katamba (2003) and Beart (2003) for an introduction.

Unlike many other Bantu languages (see Güldemann 1996: ch. 3.3), Nyakyusa does not have dedicated morphological paradigms for relative clauses. Instead these are introduced by demonstratives that agree with the head of the phrase. Typically the proximal or distal demonstratives are used, although emphatic reduplicated pronouns (see §2.3.3) are also found. (39, 40) illustrate subject and object relatives respectively. (41) exemplifies a relative clause modifying a locative adjunct.

(39) ba-mo a-ba ba-tol-iigwe ʊ-kʊ-ly-ag-a
2-one AUG-2.PROX 2-wín-PASS.PFV AUG-15-5-find-FV
i-ly-ʊndʊ, ba-a-gele-kl-ag-ə i-mi-pʊpa
AUG-5-thatching_grass 2-PST-thatch-APPL-IPFV AUG-4-banana_leaf
‘Some who were unable to get the type of grass would roof with banana leaves.’ [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]

(40) leelo ʊ-lw-ifi bo ʊ-pliike a-ma-syscall g-a kaloʊ now/but AUG-11-chameleon as 11-hear.PFV AUG-6-word 6-ASSOC hare(1)
a-ga a-a-job-ag-ə, ʊ-lmkw-amul-a ʊ-lmku-tri
AUG-PROX.6 1-PST-speak-IPFV 11-NARR-answer-FV 11-NARR-say
‘When Chameleon heard the words that Hare had been speaking, he answered:’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(41) a-lmkʊ-ga-ag-a a-m-ɪɪsi ma-nandi n-du-kʊbo mu-no
1-NARR-6-find-FV AUG-6-water 6-little 18-11-pasture 18-PROX
a-a-tiim-ag-ə n-ŋ’ombe
1-PST-herd-IPFV AUG-cow(10)
‘He found a little water in the pasture where he was herding cows.’ [Water and toads]

Relative clauses referring to discourse participants are introduced by their respective substitutives without the augment. (42, 43) illustrate this for the first and second person singular.

(42) n-dì na=a-ma-hala jʊʊ~jʊ-ne ne n-ga-job-a
1SG-COP COM=AUG-6-intelligence REDUPL~1-1SG 1SG 1SG-NEG-speak-FV
na=si-mo
COM=10-one
‘I’m the only smart one, I who haven’t said anything.’ [Invaders]
(43) ʊ-ne  n-gʊ-fi-tol-a  n=ɪ-fi-nyamaana  fi-f-ingi,
AUG-1SG 1SG-PRS-8-beat-FV COM=AUG-8-animal 8-8-many
aa=ku-ʃ-a  jo  ʊ-gwe  gwe  ʊ-bagiile
FUT=PRS-be(comer-FV REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-be_able.PFV
祐-kʊ-tolan-a  na=niine?
AUG-15-compete-FV COM=COM.1SG
‘I beat [i.e. have beaten] many animals, will you be the one who is able to
compete with me?’ [Hare and Chameleon]

Lastly, a relative clause need not have a lexical head. Endophoric reference and
the inherent semantics of noun classes may substitute for this. (44) illustrates a
headless relative clause.

(44) pa-ʃʊ-komaano ʃʊ-la,  j-aa-sal-ii-gwe  ʃʊ-fubu
16-11-meeting  11-DIST 9-PST-choose-PASS.PFV AUG-hippo(9)
祐-ʃʊ-j-a  mw-mɪlɪli  gw-a  ba-la  bi-ʃʊ-j-a
AUG-15-be(come)-FV 1-supervisor 1-ASSOC 2-DIST 2-PRS-be(come)-FV
pa-ʃʊ-tolan-a
16-15-compete-FV
‘At that meeting, Hippo was chosen as the referee of those that were
going to race.’ [Hare and Chameleon]
3 Structure of the verb

3.1 Introduction

The purpose of this chapter is to give an introduction to the phonological and morphological structure of the verbal word in Nyakyusa, as well as to give a description of several morphemes that do not fit in the following chapters.

First, the phonological structure of verbal morphemes will be laid out (§3.2), followed by a description of the linear morphological structure of the finite verb (§3.3). The latter includes a description of each of the slots that make up the finite verbs and the morphemes that may fill these slots. Specific focus is laid on subject and object prefixes as well as on post-final enclitics. Last, the hierarchical structure of the verbal root, base and stem will be discussed (§3.4).

3.2 Phonological structure of verbal morphemes

The basic segmental shape of the verbal root is CVC, where $C_1$ can be followed by a glide and $C_2$ can be a prenasalized plosive; $C_1$ is never prenasalized. One of the consonantal segments can be zero and $V$ might be short or long. For vowel-initial roots, all vowels in the inventory but /u/ are attested, which is most likely an accidental gap, as nominal stems with initial /u/ are attested, e.g. $\varnothing$-mu-unyu ‘salt’, ly-ungu ‘pumpkin’.

Although disyllabic roots can be considered the most basic structure, more complex forms outnumber these in the present-day language. Most verbs with a more complex shape can be analysed as the outcome of derivational processes, although in many cases such an analysis can only be arrived at through a comparative Bantu perspective. Only 17 monosyllabic verbs exist in Nyakyusa. These, however, include some very basic concepts. (1) lists their stem forms; see §3.4 on roots and stems. Note that <ni> in nia stands for a sequence of coronal nasal plus palatal glide.
### 3 Structure of the verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1)</th>
<th>a. shape C₁ (defective verbs)</th>
<th>d. shape Cw-a</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>li</em> ‘be’</td>
<td><em>fwa</em> ‘die’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>tt</em> ‘say; think; do like’</td>
<td><em>gwa</em> ‘fall’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b.</td>
<td>shape C(V)-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>pa</em> (p(a)-a) ‘give’¹</td>
<td><em>kwa</em> ‘pay dowry’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>ja</em> (j-a) ‘be, become’</td>
<td><em>lwa</em> ‘fight’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c.</td>
<td>shape Cy-a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>kya</em> ‘cease raining; dawn’</td>
<td><em>mwa</em> ‘shave’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>lya</em> ‘eat’</td>
<td><em>nwa</em> ‘drink’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>nia</em> ‘defecate’</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>pya</em> ‘be burnt’</td>
<td><em>swa</em> ‘spit; forgive’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>sya</em> ‘grind’</td>
<td><em>twa</em> ‘be plenty (esp. of fish)’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The typical verbal prefix has the shape CV-, with a very limited number of exceptions having VCV-, V- or N-. Prefixes do not contain the mid vowels /e/ and /o/. Suffixes typically have the mirrored form -VC, with a few cases of -V. Of the few suffixes having -VCV, some might be understood as bipartite -VC-V. The final vowel segment of the verbal word is always short. This also holds when post-final clitics (§3.3.8) are attached.

### 3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

The highly agglutinative structure of the finite verb in Nyakyusa can be understood as consisting of a number of slots for derivational and inflectional affixes that frame the basic unit, the verbal root.

The linear arrangement of the verbal morphemes and the functions associated with each slot can be represented as in Figure 3.1, adopting the segmentation and terminology proposed by Güldemann (1999: 546). Slots with a subscript N may be filled with various affixes, as will be described in the corresponding sections.

---

¹The verb *pa* ‘give’ behaves ambiguously with regard to its segmentation. Both vowel quality and length in the perfective stem *peele* (§6.4.2), the applicative *peela* (§4.2.1) and the passive *peegwa* (§4.2.7) indicate a root *pa*. With the imperfective suffix however, the stem takes the shape *paga* (*pege* in the imperfective subjunctive), not *paaga, pege*. With post-final clitics it also surfaces as *pa* (*pe* in the subjunctive). Thus it is treated as *p* in these cases.
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>slot</th>
<th>pre-initial</th>
<th>initial</th>
<th>post-initial_N</th>
<th>pre-radical</th>
<th>radical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
<td>tense/ emphasis</td>
<td>subject</td>
<td>TMA/ polarity</td>
<td>object</td>
<td>verbal root</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>slot</th>
<th>pre-final_N</th>
<th>final</th>
<th>post-final</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>function</td>
<td>derivation/ TMA</td>
<td>locative/WH/ adverbial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.1: Linear structure of the finite verb

Examples (2) and (3) illustrate the imperative as the morphologically minimal possible structure and the use of all verbal slots respectively.2

(2) job-a
    speak-FV
    ‘Speak!’

(3) aa=tʊ-ti-kʊ-ba-jaat-ɪl-a=ko
    fut=1PL-NEG-PRS-2-walk-APPL-FV=17(LOC)
    ‘We will not visit them there’

In the following subsections, each of the individual slots, together with the morphemes that may fill them, will be described.

3.3.1 The pre-initial slot

The pre-initial slot of the verbal word may only contain a single morpheme. As Güldemann (2003: 186) notes, morphemes in this slot are typically the result of the truncation of a formerly bi-predicate structure. This is most likely the case for the de-itive future proclitic aa= (§8.2) and its de-ventive counterpart (i)sa= (§8.3). Other morphemes that may occupy this slot are a proclitic form of comitative na= as well as a proclitic a=, both of which add specific interlocutory and modal nuances to certain uses of the subjunctive paradigm (§9.3.1.1). Last, in some southern varieties of Nyakyusa, a proclitic naa with a future-oriented meaning is found (§8.4), which might be a portmanteau of comitative na and the future proclitic aa=.

---

2The glossPRS ‘present’ is here to be understood as shorthand for a non-past imperfective; see §6.5.1.
3 Structure of the verb

3.3.2 The initial slot

In the initial slot of the verbal word, the subject is marked. Any finite Nyakyusa verb, with the exception of imperatives (§9.2) and subjunctives in their directive use (§9.3.1.1), carries a subject prefix.

In the Bantuist and general linguistic tradition, the subject prefixes, as well as the object prefixes (§3.3.4), are most often referred to as agreement markers. Given the origin of the term agreement in the treatment of person-marking in European languages and the typological problems associated with it (see e.g. Haspelmath 2013), the more neutral and also widespread term cross-reference is used throughout this study. This nomenclature has the further advantage of capturing not only subject- and object-markers but also the locative morphemes described in §3.3.8.1.

Concerning the subject markers, two paradigmatic sets of prefixes will be assumed in this study. The choice between the sets depends on the following formant: when the subject prefix directly precedes the simple present prefix kʊ-, set 2 is used. Otherwise set 1 is used.

These two distinct sets are postulated for two reasons. First, the subject prefix for the second person singular is zero before simple present kʊ- and has the shape (g)ʊ- elsewhere. Second, the shape of the other subject prefixes preceding kʊ- is not completely predictable in the varieties that are in the focus of this study. While /a/ regularly changes to /i/ in this environment and the front vowel of some subject prefixes is raised to /i/, this is not a regularly predictable process (see Tables 3.1 and 3.2). In other topolects, such as the one described by Berger (1938) and the lake-shore-plains variety, which is the subject of ongoing research by SIL International, there is greater regularity. In those varieties all unrounded vowels preceding simple present kʊ- are raised to /i/ and all rounded back vowels change to /u/. The findings of the present study, however, basically agree with those of Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960c) and Labroussi (1998). While the former work gives no information as to the variety studied, Labroussi’s main assistant is a speaker of the Kukwe/Ngumba topolect.

Similar alternations, in which a vowel segment /i/ surfaces in at least one allomorph of the simple present (and constructions based on this paradigm), are found in numerous languages in a coherent area encompassing Nyakyusa as well as most of Guthrie’s zones G60 and N10. Persohn & Bernander (2016) trace this back to a grammaticalization process the source structure of which consists of a

3 The variety of Ngonde described by Kishindo (1999) does not have this alternation in subject prefixes. This seemingly also holds for the Ngonde described by Labroussi (1998).
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

reflex of Proto-Bantu *jikad ‘dwell, be, sit’ plus infinitive and the cradle of which is found in zone G60.

In the following subsections, first the subject prefixes for the discourse participants (first and second person) will be described (§3.3.2.1), followed by the prefixes for the noun classes (third persons) (§3.3.2.2).

3.3.2.1 Participant subject prefixes

The subject prefixes for the discourse participants are listed in Table 3.1.4

Table 3.1: Participant subject prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant</th>
<th>Set 1</th>
<th>Set 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>n-</td>
<td>n (ni-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2SG</td>
<td>ø-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1PL</td>
<td>tø-</td>
<td>tw-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2PL</td>
<td>mu-</td>
<td>mu-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prefixes of the first and second person singular display some morphophonemic peculiarities. In the first person singular, set 2 contains an alternative form *ni-. This was found in older descriptions and text collections (e.g. Schumann 1899; Endemann 1914; Berger 1933). The younger speakers consulted were unaware of this alternation and it was considered antiquated by the older generation.

Preceding those noun class object prefixes featuring a voiceless plosive (noun classes 7, 12, 13, 15, 16 and 17), the first person singular subject prefix is realized as a syllabic nasal. This is illustrated in (6). Before any other prefix with an initial voiceless plosive, it regularly triggers prenasalisation; see (4) for the object prefixes of the second person singular and first person plural, and (5) for TMA prefixes. For stem-initial plosives see (19) in §2.2.2.3. This allophony can hence not be accounted for on a purely phonological base.

(4) ngumeenye (‘n-kə-many-ile) ’I know you’
    ndumeenye (‘n-tu-many-ile) ’I know us’

4The second person plural is also used as an honorific. This usage seems to be limited to the exchange of greetings; also see Walsh (1982: 32).
3 Structure of the verb

(5) ngamanya (‘n-ka-many-a) ‘I do not know’
ngamanye (‘n-ka-many-e) ‘I should go get to know’
ndiki joba (‘n-ti-kω-job-a) ‘I do not speak’

(6) nkameenye (‘n-ka-many-ile) ‘I know it (class 12)’
nkumeenye (‘n-tʊ-many-ile) ‘I know them (class 13)’
 nkomeenye (‘n-kʊ-many-ile) ‘I know it (class 15)’
mpameenye (‘n-pa-many-ile) ‘I know the place (class 16)’
nkumeenye (‘n-kʊ-many-ile) ‘I know the place (class 17)’

The first person singular subject prefix also surfaces as a syllabic nasal before a fricative or another nasal:

(7) mmalile (‘n-mal-ile) ‘I have finished’
mmumeenye (‘n-mu-many-ile) ‘I know it inside (class 18)’
nnusiisye (‘n-nus-ile) ‘I have smelled’
nng’wilile (‘n-ng’wil-ile) ‘I have scratched’
nnyeelile (‘n-nyeel-ile) ‘I have jumped’
nhobwike (‘n-hobok-ile) ‘I have rejoiced’
mfibwene (‘n-fi-bon-ile) ‘I have seen them (class 8)’
mfumile (‘m-fum-ile) ‘I have come (from)’
nsibwene (‘n-si-bon-ile) ‘I have seen them (class 10)’
nswile (‘n-sw-ile) ‘I have spilled’

The first person singular subject prefix is further realized as a syllabic nasal before monosyllabic stems with an initial plosive or approximant in the subjunctive mood, that is, in those cases in which prenasalization would result in a monosyllabic word (8). In the imperfective subjunctive and when post-final clitics are attached, the resultant word is no longer monosyllabic and the prefix surfaces as prenasalization (9). Likewise, when the subjunctive of tɪ ‘say; think; do like’ merges with the following interrogative bʊle (see §10.3), the first person singular subject prefix surfaces as prenasalization (10). A similar avoidance of monosyllabic words is found with the corresponding object prefix in the imperative; see §3.3.4.1.

(8) njye (‘n-j-e) ‘I should be(come)’
 ndye (‘n-ly-e) ‘I should eat’
 ndir (‘n-ti) ‘I should say’
 ngwe (‘n-gw-e) ‘I should fall’

(9) ndyege (‘n-ly-ege) ‘I should be eating’
 ndyepo (‘n-ly-e=po) ‘I should eat a bit’

56
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

\[ \text{ndyemo} \ (\text{'n-ly-e-mo}) \ ‘I should eat some’ \]
\[ \text{ndigi} \ (\text{'n-t-ig}) \ ‘I should be saying’ \]

\[(10) \ \text{ndibule} \ (\text{'n-ti bule}) \ ‘What should I say/do’ \]

When the object prefix of noun class 1 follows the subject prefix of 1sg, an epenthetic vowel /u/ is inserted.

\[(11) \ \text{nummu\-lile} \ (\text{'n-mu-\-l-ile}) \ ‘I have bought for him/her’ \]
\[ \text{nummwa\-gile} \ (\text{'n-mu-ag-ile}) \ ‘I have found him/her’ \]
\[ \text{numkomi\-le} \ (\text{'n-mu-kom-ile}) \ ‘I have hit him/her’ \]

A vowel following the first person singular subject prefix is regularly long (12), with the exception of the indefinite future prefix \( isak\- \) (§8.6).

\[(12) \ \text{niisile} \ (\text{'n-is-ile}) \ ‘I have come’ \]
\[ \text{numile} \ (\text{'n-m-ile}) \ ‘I have stopped’ \]
\[ \text{neegile} \ (\text{'n-eg-ile}) \ ‘I have taken’ \]
\[ \text{naagile} \ (\text{'n-ag-ile}) \ ‘I have found’ \]
\[ \text{naataa\-gile} \ (\text{'n-a-taag-ile}) \ ‘I threw’ \]
\[ \text{noogile} \ (\text{'n-og-ile}) \ ‘I have bathed’ \]
\[ \text{nuwile} \ (\text{'n-ul-ile}) \ ‘I have bought’ \]

The subject prefix of the second person singular is realized as \( go\- \) preceding a vowel (13). The usual rules for vowel juxtaposition apply (see §2.2.1.4).

\[(13) \ \text{gwisile} \ (\text{‘u\-is-ile}) \ ‘you have come’ \]
\[ \text{gwimile} \ (\text{‘u\-im-ile}) \ ‘you have stopped’ \]
\[ \text{gwegile} \ (\text{‘u\-eg-ile}) \ ‘you have taken’ \]
\[ \text{gwagile} \ (\text{‘u\-ag-ile}) \ ‘you have found’ \]
\[ \text{gwataa\-gile} \ (\text{‘u-a-taag-ile}) \ ‘you threw’ \]
\[ \text{googile} \ (\text{‘u\-og-ile}) \ ‘you have bathed’ \]
\[ \text{gwo\-\-ile} \ (\text{‘u\-ul-ile}) \ ‘you have bought’ \]

When the subject prefix of the second person singular is adjacent to the object prefix of the first person singular or noun class 1, there is free variation between \( go\- \) and \( u\- \). The only paradigms in which these two sets of morphemes can be adjacent are the subjunctive (§9.3) and the present perfective (§6.5.3):

\[ ^5 \text{For the subjunctive of defective } ti, \text{ see §10.3.} \]
3 Structure of the verb

(14) Subject prefix 2sg and object prefix 1sg:

\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊʊnyʊʊliile} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-ʊl-ɪl-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have bought for me’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊndaagile} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-taag-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have thrown me’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊʊsalile} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-sal-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have chosen me’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊʊnyʊʊlɪle} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-ʊl-ɪl-e}) \quad \text{‘you should buy for me’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊndaage} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-taag-e}) \quad \text{‘you should throw me’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊʊsale} \quad (\text{ʊ-ny-sal-e}) \quad \text{‘you should choose me’}\]

(15) Subject prefix 2sg and object prefix class 1:

\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊmmʊʊliile} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-ʊl-ɪl-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have bought for him/her’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊmmwagile} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-ag-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have found him/her’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊnsalile} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-sal-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have chosen him/her’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊmmʊʊlɪle} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-ʊl-ɪl-e}) \quad \text{‘you should buy for him/her’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊmmwage} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-ag-e}) \quad \text{‘you should find him/her’}\]
\[\text{(g)}\text{ʊnsale} \quad (\text{ʊ-mu-sal-e}) \quad \text{‘you should choose him/her’}\]

Given this free variation as well as the fact that the second person singular subject before consonants in other contexts surfaces as \text{ʊ-}, the monosegmental form can be assumed to be the underlying representation.

3.3.2.2 Noun class subject prefixes

Table 3.2: Noun class subject prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun class</th>
<th>Series 1</th>
<th>Series 2</th>
<th>Noun class</th>
<th>Series 1</th>
<th>Series 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>\text{a-}</td>
<td>\text{i-} (\text{ʊ-})</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>\text{si-}</td>
<td>\text{si-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>\text{ba-}</td>
<td>\text{bi-}</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>\text{lu-}</td>
<td>\text{ku-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>\text{gʊ-}</td>
<td>\text{gʊ-}</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>\text{ka-}</td>
<td>\text{ki-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>\text{gi-}</td>
<td>\text{gi-}</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>\text{tʊ-}</td>
<td>\text{tʊ-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>\text{li-}</td>
<td>\text{li-}</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>\text{bu-}</td>
<td>\text{bu-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>\text{ga-}</td>
<td>\text{gi-}</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>\text{ku-}</td>
<td>\text{ku-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>\text{ki-}</td>
<td>\text{ki-}</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>\text{pa-}</td>
<td>\text{pi-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>\text{fi-}</td>
<td>\text{fi-}</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>\text{ku-}</td>
<td>\text{ku-}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>\text{ji-}</td>
<td>\text{ji-}</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>\text{mu-}</td>
<td>\text{mu-}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The subject prefixes for the noun classes are given in Table 3.2. Except for noun class 1, the first series is identical to the pronominal prefixes (§2.3.1). In the second
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

Series, \(i\)- is the most common and most widely accepted subject prefix of noun class 1. A variant form \(ə\)- is attested for speakers of the northernmost varieties. The speakers consulted on this subject considered this a feature common for the northernmost topolects, but of low prestige. Given that all the other subject prefixes recorded for that variety have the predictable alternation between /a/ in series 1 and /i/ in series 2, this is most likely an innovative case of assimilation.\(^6\)

3.3.3 The post-initial slot

In the post-initial slot, polarity, tense, aspect and mood/modality are marked. The following prefixes may fill this slot: \(ti\)- ‘negation’, \(ka\)- ‘negation’, \(nga\)- ‘negative subjunctive’ (see §6.3 on negation in Nyakyusa), \(kʊ\)- ‘simple present (also: modal future)’, \(a(lɪ)\)- ‘past’, \(a\)- ‘subsecutive’, \(linkʊ\)- ‘narrative tense’, \(isakʊ\)- ‘indefinite future’, \(ka\)- ‘itive/distal’, and \(lɪ\)- ‘desiderative’.

Concerning the order of prefixes in this slot, negative markers are followed by the respective tense-aspect prefixes. The exception is desiderative \(lɪ\)-, which stands before the negative subjunctive prefix. Table 3.3 lists the possible co-occurrences of prefixes in the post-initial slot. Note that some of the mentioned paradigms require the addition of specific suffixes other than the default final vowel \(-a\) (§3.3.7). For a detailed description of the individual tense, aspect and mood/modal construction as well as their negative counterparts see §6–9.

Table 3.3: Co-occurrences of prefixes in the post-initial slot

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefixes</th>
<th>See</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(ka)- ‘NEG’</td>
<td>(a(lɪ))- ‘PST’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ti)- ‘NEG’</td>
<td>(kʊ)- ‘PRS’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ti)- ‘NEG’</td>
<td>(isakʊ)- ‘INDEF.FUT’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lɪ)- ‘DESDTV’</td>
<td>(nga)- ‘NEG.SUBJ’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(lɪ)- ‘DESDTV’</td>
<td>(ka)- ‘ITV’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^6\)In the (north-)eastern neighbour languages Kinga and Wanji the combination of noun class 1 subject prefix and simple present prefix yields \(i/ɪko\), while Safwa, bordering to the north, has \(ahu/-a\). The choice of allomorphs depend on the type and shape of the following morpheme (Wolf, 1905; Voorhoeve n.d. Helen Eaton, p.c.). Influence from the neighbouring languages can thus be excluded.
3 Structure of the verb

3.3.4 The pre-radical slot

The pre-radical slot is the locus of object-marking. In the following subsections the object prefixes will be described, beginning with those of the discourse participants (§3.3.4.1), followed by the object prefixes of the noun classes (third persons) (§3.3.4.1) and the reflexive object prefix (§3.3.4.3). The focus lies mainly on the shape of the prefixes and a number of morphophonological particularities.

Concerning the syntactic and discourse-pragmatic factors licensing the object prefixes, some first observations are found in Lusekelo (2012). As observed therein and as previously noted by Schumann (1899: 20f) and Endemann (1914: 17–20), Nyakyusa allows for only a single object to be marked in pre-radical position. In the typology of Bantu languages put forward by Bearth (2003), Nyakyusa thus classifies as an OM-1 language. This characteristic is shared by the surrounding languages Nyika Nyika M23, Malila M24, Safwa M25 (Helen Eaton, p.c.), Kinga G65 (Wolff 1905), Wanji G66 (Helen Eaton, p.c.), and Kisi G67 (Gray n.d.).

3.3.4.1 Participant object prefixes

Table 3.4 lists the object prefixes for the discourse participants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Participant</th>
<th>Object prefix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1SG</td>
<td>ny-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2SG</td>
<td>kʊ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1PL</td>
<td>tʊ-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2PL</td>
<td>ba-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The object prefix of the first person singular displays some morphophonemic peculiarities. Before a vowel it surfaces as ny-. In this case, both the vowel of the preceding prefix and the following stem-initial vowel are long (16).

(16) ıkuʃnyiitka  (‘i-kʊ-ny-itik-a)  ‘s/he believes me’
muunyoottle  (‘mu-ny-ot-ile)  ‘you (pl.) have invited me’
baanyagile  (‘ba-ny-ag-ile)  ‘they have found me’
syalmyaagile  (‘si-alɪ-ny-ag-ile)  ‘they (class 10) found me’
ʊkaanyʊʊlɪle  (‘ʊ-ka-ny-ul-il-e)  ‘go buy for me’
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

Preceding a plosive or an approximant, the first person singular object prefix follows the general phonological rules and triggers prenasalization. Note that prenasalization induces lengthening of the preceding vowel (see §2.2.2.3), which, as it is predictable, is not indicated in the practical orthography.

(17) **bambinyile** (‘ba-ny-piny-ile’) ‘they have bound me’
**bambʊʊlile** (‘ba-ny-bʊʊl-ile’) ‘they have told me’
**bandaagile** (‘ba-ny-taag-ile’) ‘they have thrown me’
**bandobile** (‘ba-ny-log-ile’) ‘they have bewitched me’
**banjobile** (‘ba-ny-job-ile’) ‘they have spoken to me’
**banegetile** (‘ba-ny-keet-ile’) ‘they have watched me’
**bangogile** (‘ba-ny-gog-ile’) ‘they have killed me’

There is one exception: in the imperative (§9.2), when a monosyllabic root contains an initial plosive or an approximant and prenasalization would thus result in a monosyllabic word, the first person singular object prefix surfaces as a syllabic nasal (18). Accordingly, in the imperfective imperative and with post-final clitics (§3.3.8), the first person singular object prefix surfaces as prenasalization (19). This behaviour is shared with the first person singular subject prefix in the subjunctive mood; see §3.3.2.1.

(18) **ndya** (‘ny-ly-a’) ‘Eat me!’
**ngwa** (‘ny-kw-a’) ‘Pay me dowry!’
**mba** (‘ny-p-a’) ‘Give me!’

(19) **ndyaga** (‘ny-ly-aga’) ‘Be eating me!’
**ngwaga** (‘ny-kw-aga’) ‘Be paying me dowry!’
**mbaga** (‘ny-p-aga’) ‘Be giving me!’
**mbako** (‘ny-p=a=ko’) ‘Give to me!’

When the object prefix of the first person singular stands between a prefix and a stem-initial nasal or fricative, it has no segmental realization. However, it is discernible through the length of the preceding vowel (20). To summarize, any word-internal vowel preceding or following the first person singular object prefix is phonetically realized as long.7

---

7Interestingly, the same holds for the noun class 9/10 noun prefix, which also has the underlying shape ny-.
3 Structure of the verb

(20) a. Deletion of object prefix 1sg in simple present:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ikwometa} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-met-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he shaves me’} \\
\text{ikwɔnangisya} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-angisi-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he shows me’} \\
\text{ikwɔnyomosya} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-nomosi-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he frightens me’} \\
\text{ikwɔng’umula} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-ng’amul-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he recognizes me’} \\
\text{ikwɔfwima} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-fwim-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he hunts me’} \\
\text{ikwɔshobosya} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-hobosi-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he makes me happy’} \\
\text{ikwɔsala} & \quad (\text{°i-kʊ-ny-sal-a}) \quad \text{‘s/he chooses me’}
\end{align*}
\]

b. Deletion of object prefix 1sg in other paradigms:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{aafwimile} & \quad (\text{°a-ny-fwim-ile}) \quad \text{‘s/he has hunted me’} \\
\text{aalɪɪfwimile} & \quad (\text{°a-ɪɪ-ny-fwim-ile}) \quad \text{‘s/he hunted me’} \\
\text{aametile} & \quad (\text{°a-ny-met-ile}) \quad \text{‘s/he has shaved me’} \\
\text{aalɪɪmetile} & \quad (\text{°a-ɪɪ-ny-met-ile}) \quad \text{‘s/he shaved me’} \\
\text{(g)ʊʊsalile} & \quad (\text{°ʊ-ny-sal-ile}) \quad \text{‘you have chosen me’} \\
\text{ʊngaasyobaga} & \quad (\text{°ʊ-nga-ny-syob-aga}) \quad \text{‘don’t cheat on me’}
\end{align*}
\]

3.3.4.2 Noun class object prefixes

Table 3.5 lists the object prefixes for the noun classes. These are identical to the pronominal prefixes, except for class 1, the object prefix of which is identical to the nominal prefix (§2.3.1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun class</th>
<th>Object prefix</th>
<th>Noun class</th>
<th>Object prefix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>\textit{mu}-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>\textit{si}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>\textit{ba}-</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>\textit{lo}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>\textit{gu}-</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>\textit{ka}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>\textit{gi}-</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>\textit{tu}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>\textit{li}-</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>\textit{bu}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>\textit{ga}-</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>\textit{kʊ}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>\textit{ki}-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>\textit{pa}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>\textit{fi}-</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>\textit{kʊ}-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>\textit{ji}-</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>\textit{mu}-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

The object prefix of noun class 1 becomes a syllabic nasal before a consonant (21) and thus triggers shortening of a preceding vowel (22).8

(21) bikʊmpinya (‘bi-kʊ-mu-piny-a) ‘they bind him/her’
    bikʊmbʊola (‘bi-kʊ-mu-bʊʊl-a) ‘they tell him/her’
    bikʊnjoba (‘bi-kʊ-mu-job-a) ‘they speak to him/her’
    bikʊnsala (‘bi-kʊ-mu-sal-a) ‘they choose him/her’
    bikʊmmeta (‘bi-kʊ-mu-met-a) ‘they shave him/her’

(22) bampinyaga (‘ba-a-mu-piny-aga) ‘they were binding him/her’
    bambʊʊlaga (‘ba-a-mu-bʊʊl-aga) ‘they were telling him/her’
    ban̩jobaga (‘ba-a-mu-job-aga) ‘they were speaking to him/her’
    bansalaga (‘ba-a-mu-sal-aga) ‘they were choosing him/her’
    bammetaga (‘ba-a-mu-met-aga) ‘they were shaving him/her’

When a following vowel induces glide formation or vowel coalescence (see §2.2.1.4), the nasal segment of the noun class 1 object prefix is realized with a longer phonetic duration and also triggers vowel shortening (23), which is orthographically indicated by <mm> in these cases. The nasal in these cases, however, does not constitute a syllable of its own. In summary, any vowel preceding the noun class 1 object prefix surfaces as short.

(23) bammwega [β̝a.ˈmːʷɛˑ.ɰa] ‘they (then) took him/her’
    bammʊʊlɪlaga [β̞a.mːʊː.lɪ.ˈla.ɰa] ‘they were buying for him/her’
    bammootaga [β̞a.mːoː.ˈtʰa.ɰa] ‘they were inviting him/her’

Unlike its class 1 counterpart, the noun class 18 object prefix mu- does not become a syllabic nasal before a consonant. The nasal segment is neither realized with a longer duration, nor does it trigger vowel shortening:

(24) amumeenye (‘a-mu-many-ile) ‘s/he knows it inside’
    aamumeenye (‘a-a-mu-many-ile) ‘s/he knew it inside’
    ikʊmwinogona (‘i-kʊs-mu-inogon-a) ‘s/he considers the inside’

Note that locative object prefixes are extremely rare in the text corpus, whereas enclitic forms of locative substitutives (§3.3.8.1) occur frequently. A similar distribution is also attested in languages such as Kiluba L33, Ruund L53, and Luvale K14; see Persohn & Devos (2017) for an overview.

8The vowel of the noun class 1 prefix is given as /u/, as the process of reduction and syllabification is shared with the nominal concords of classes 1, 3 and 18, which have the shape mu-. Due to the rules of hiatus resolution for verbal prefixes (§2.2.1.4) and the fact that the prefix surfaces as a mere consonantal segment preceding another consonant, the quality of the vowel cannot be directly observed.
3 Structure of the verb

3.3.4.3 Reflexive object prefix

The reflexive object prefix has the shape \(i\)- before consonants (25) and \(ij\)- preceding vowels. Stem-initial vowels following the reflexive are always long (26).

(25)  
- \(koma\) ‘hit’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ikoma\) ‘hit oneself’
- \(nyomosya\) ‘frighten’ \(\rightarrow\) \(inyomosya\) ‘frighten o.s.’
- \(joba\) ‘speak’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ijoba\) ‘speak about o.s.’
- \(baaja\) ‘kick’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ibaaja\) ‘kick o.s.’
- \(fisa\) ‘hide’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ifisa\) ‘hide o.s.’

(26)  
- \(ima\) ‘not give; deprive’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-iima\) ‘abstain from’
- \(imika\) ‘erect; respect’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-imika\) ‘stand o.s. up; praise o.s.’
- \(elʊsya\) ‘clean; rinse’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-elʊsya\) ‘cleanse o.s.’
- \(absa\) ‘help; open, release’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-aabsa\) ‘make o.s. free’
- \(onanga\) ‘destroy’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-onanga\) ‘destroy, spoil o.s.’
- \(ʊbatɪla\) ‘embrace’ \(\rightarrow\) \(ij-ʊbatɪla\) ‘embrace o.s.’

With some verbs the reflexive gives an idiosyncratic meaning:

(27)  
- \(i\)-\(kanyanga\) ‘talk nonsense’ \(<\) \(kanyanga\) ‘trample’
- \(i\)-\(bona\) ‘consider o.s. different’ \(<\) \(bona\) ‘see’
- \(i\)-\(bɪɪka\) ‘pretend’ \(<\) \(bɪɪka\) ‘put, store’
- \(i\)-\(gana\) ‘like, prefer’ \(<\) \(gana\) ‘like, love’
- \(i\)-\(pɪlɪka\) ‘act arrogantly’ \(<\) \(pɪlɪka\) ‘hear’
- \(i\)-\(pʊʊla\) ‘actively seek’ \(<\) \(pʊʊla\) ‘thresh’
- \(i\)-\(puuta\) ‘pray, worship’ \(<\) \(puuta\) ‘blow out (in prayer)’
- \(i\)-\(kasya\) ‘bear; try one’s best’ \(<\) \(kasya\) ‘encourage; fasten’
- \(i\)-\(kinya\) ‘knock, bump (Loc)’ \(<\) \(kinya\) ‘hit’

Given an adequate context, at least some of the verbs with idiosyncratic meaning with the reflexive allow for a second object prefix, including a second instance of the reflexive (28). The examples in (29, 30) show that two object prefixes in the same verb are otherwise not licensed. See Marlo (2014) for a discussion of object marking exceptionalities involving the reflexive in several Bantu languages.

(28)  
- \(k\)-\(ii\)-\(gana\) ‘like it (class 7)’ (not all speakers)
- \(ij\)-\(ii\)-\(gana\) ‘like oneself; be vain’
- \(ny\)-\(ii\)-\(puut\)-\(tl\)-\(a\) ‘pray for/with (APPL) me’
- \(mmw\)-\(i\)-\(puut\)-\(tl\)-\(a\) ‘pray for/with (APPL) him/her’
- \(ij\)-\(ii\)-\(puut\)-\(tl\)-\(a\) ‘pray for/with (APPL) oneself’
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

(29)  
an. *bi-kʊ-si-m-p-aʊ-n̩-dʊmyanaɪ-heela  
2-PRS-10-1-give-FV AUG-1-boy AUG-money(10)  
b. *bi-kʊ-n-si-p-aʊ-n̩-dʊmyanaɪ-heela  
2-PRS-10-1-give-FV AUG-1-boy AUG-money(10)  
(indentated: They give the boy money.)

(30)  
an. *ʊ-n̩-dʊmyana i-kʊ-si-i-p-aɪ-heela  
AUG-1-boy 1-PRS-10-REFL-give-FV AUG-money(10)  
b. *ʊ-n̩-dʊmyana i-kw-i-si-p-aɪ-heela  
AUG-1-boy 1-PRS-REFL-10-give-FV AUG-money(10)  
(indentated: The boy gives himself money.)

At least with the following two verbs, the reflexive has an intransitivizing or middle function:

(31)  
i-kola ‘be(come) caught, stuck’ < kola ‘grasp, hold’  
i-kyela ‘consent; be pleased’ < kyela ‘please’

Lastly, at least the following verbs exist only as reflexives:

(32)  
i-fun-a ‘boast’ no *funa attested  
ij-eekel-a ‘be in privacy’ no *ekela attested

3.3.5 The radical slot

As discussed in §3.3, the radical slot contains the verbal root and can thus be considered the centre of the verbal word. For the phonological structure of verbal roots see §3.2.

3.3.6 The pre-final slot

The pre-final slot is the locus of verb-to-verb derivation by means of suffixes (verbal extensions). This will be described in detail in §4. For a discussion of co-occurrences of verbal derivation suffixes see §4.3.

3.3.7 The final slot

In the final slot of the verb, tense, aspect and mood/modality are marked. By default this slot is filled with the final vowel -a; see §3.4. Other suffixes that may occur in this slot are imperfective -a(n)ga, subjunctive -e, imperfective subjunctive -e(n)ge – see §6.4.1 on the morphophonology of the imperfective suffix – as
well as perfective -ile. The latter is subject to complex alternations, which may obscure the boundary between the radical, pre-final and final slot; see §6.4.2 for a detailed discussion.

3.3.8 The post-final slot

The post-final slot of the verb may be filled with one of a set of morphemes of the shape CV. Although there is no clear boundary between clitics and affixes, these morphemes will be referred to as enclitics in this study. The reasons for this analysis are mainly syntactical and morphological. First, in case of the WH enclitics, these stand in alternation with their free forms. Second, post-final enclitics are often optional and – in the cases of non-locative =po and =mo – show a lower selectivity than affixes. Further, they lie outside the scope of stem reduplication. In terms of their (morpho-)phonology, however, the post-finals show a tight integration into the verbal word. First, when they are attached, stress shifts to the new penultimate syllable. More importantly, all enclitics except =ki ‘what’ trigger certain morphophonological changes in the verb stem, namely prenasalization of the imperfective suffix (§6.4.1) and raising of the vowel in the copula (see §10.2.3).

In the following subsections, first enclitic forms of locative substitutives will be discussed, which serve as locative cross-reference markers, (§3.3.8.1), followed by a description of several adverbial enclitics that can mostly be traced back to extended functions of the locative enclitics (§3.3.8.2–3.3.8.4) and frequent or lexicalized collocations between verbs and these enclitics (§3.3.8.5). Last, two enclitic forms of question words (‘WH enclitics’) will be described (§3.3.8.6).

3.3.8.1 Enclitic locative substitutives

Locations can be marked on the verb with enclitic forms of the substitutives of locative noun classes 16–18. Note that the locative enclitic is licensed even when the overt locative noun phrase directly follows the verb, as in (34), unlike what has been reported for interlacustrine Bantu languages (e.g. Diercks 2011; Gray 2013).

---

9The analysis and some of the data presented in this section are also found in Persohn (2017b). The limitation to a single enclitic stands in contrast to (the Malawian variety of) Ndali, where enclitics can be stacked (Botne 2008: 92).
(33) bo i-kʊ-gon-a mu-n-k-iina mula~mu-la i-n-jala
as 1-PRS-live-FV 18-18-7-pit REDUPL~18-DIST AUG-9-hunger
j-a-ŋ-dum-aga fiijo, a-lmkʊ-tendeel-a pa-mwanya ʊkʊtɪ
9-PST-1-bite-IPFV INTENS 1-NARR-peep-FV 16-up COMP
a-sook-e a- büuk-e n-kʊ-ly-a. a-lmkw-ag-a r-n-giisi
jɪ-li=po ngatɪ mu-ndʊ ɪm-ile=po, ngimba ii-syanjʊ
9-COP=16 like 1-person 1.stand/stop-PFV=16 behold 5-leave
ɪ-n̩-gw-il-ilile= po
5-1-fall-APPL-PFV=16

‘While he [Hare] was staying there in the pit, he was plagued by hunger. He had a look upwards to leave and go to eat. He found there was darkness, as if a person was standing there, in fact a leaf had fallen (there) on him.’ [Saliki and Hare]

(34) p-ii-sɪɪlya a-aly-and-ile ʊ-kʊ-bop-a kɪsita kʊ-keet-a-ko
16-5-other_side 1-PST-start-PFV AUG-15-run-FV without 15-watch-FV-17
kʊʊ-nyuma
17-back(9)

‘On the other side, he started to run without looking back.’ [Saliki and Hare]

Locative enclitics were also found with reference not to a formal locative, but to a noun phrase that simply denotes a location. Thus in (35) the class 17 clitic =ko refers to un̩gʊnda ‘field’, while in (35) the class 18 clitic =mo can be understood to refer to the inside of ndeko ‘earthen pot’. This kind of use often has an infinitive as the dependent element of the associative construction (37).

(35) n-kamu gw-angʊ Pakyindɪ, n-ng’ombe si-k-oonang-a fiijo
1-relative 1-POSS.1SG P. AUG-10.cow 10-PRS-destroy-FV INTENS
a-ma-jabʊ ga-ako a-ka-balilo a-ka-a pa-muu-si,
AUG-6-cassava 6-POSS.2SG AUG-12-time AUG-12-ASSOC 16-3-daytime
n-go-ku-sʊʊm-a ʊkʊtɪ u- büuk-e u-ka-sigil-e=ko paapo
1SG-PRS-2SG-beg-FV COMP 2SG-go-SUBJ 2SG-ITV-check-SUBJ=17 because
a-ma-jabʊ g-oonang-iike fiijo
AUG-6-cassava 6-destroy-NEUT.PFV INTENS

‘My friend Pakyindi, the cows are destroying your cassava during the day, I beg you go and have a look there, because the cassava is very spoiled.’ [Sokoni and Pakyindi]
3 Structure of the verb

(36) bo a-fik-ile a-a-jr-bwene 1-n-deko jr-li pa-m-ooto.
as 1-arrive-PFV 1-PST-9-see.PFV AUG-9-earthens_pot 9-COP 16-3-fire
a-a-kuputwile, a-aly-eg-ile=mo 1-fi-balali
1-PST-uncover.PFV 1-PST-take-PFV=18 AUG-8-piece

‘When she arrived, she saw that the pot was on the fire. She uncovered it,
she took out pieces [of the food].’ [Thieving woman]

(37) gw-ijʊʊl-e ʊ-kʊ-lond-a ʊ-bʊ-jo ʊ-bʊ-nunu
2SG-work_hard-SUBJ AUG-15-search-FV AUG-14-place AUG-14-good
ʊ-bw-a ku-jeng-a=po
AUG-14-ASSOC 15-build-FV=16

‘You should try to look for a good place to build on.’ [How to build
modern houses]

Note that there are homophonous enclitics =po and =mo which serve non-
locative functions. These are discussed in the following subsections.

3.3.8.2 Partitive =po

An enclitic =po, derived from the locative class 16 substitutive serves as a parti-
tive. For an overview over such de-locative partitives across Bantu, see Persohn
& Devos (2017). Concerning the core function of verbal partitive markers, Per-
sohn & Devos adopt the following definition by Budd: “[A verbal partitive marker
denotes] an indefinite partial degree, to which an action is carried out or to which a
situation pertains” (Budd 2014: 524).

The use of partitive =po in Nyakyusa is frequently, but not exclusively, com-
bined with the adverbial panandɪ ‘a little’. Formally speaking, panandɪ can be
segmented into pa-nandɪ ‘16-little’. This collocation thus seems like a reasonable
candidate for the development of the non-locative function of the enclitic. This
fits the fact that Nyakyusa =po often retains a minimizing meaning of low inten-
sity, short duration or limited affectedness of the object, whereas a more general
indefinite meaning is expressed by enclitic =mo (see §3.3.8.4). The scope of par-
titive =po may be over the object (in transative clauses), as in (38), or over the
entire predicate, in which case it quantifies the degree of the state-of-affairs, as in
(39). Note that in (40) the partitive seems to also function on the intersubjective
level, qualifying the imperative’s imposition on the hearer rather than only the
propositional content.

(38) kangi na=nungwe ko-m-bon-a lɪnga a-ka-ndʊ ka-mo
again COM=COM.2SG 2SG.PRS-1SG-see-FV if/when AUG-12-thing 12-one
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

ka-m-balamaasise=po Ṽ-m-bil Ṽ-gw-angu, Ṽ-gw-andʊ-a
12-1SG-touch.PFV=PART AUG-3-body 3-POSS.SG 1SG-PRS-change-FV
r-my-enda r-ɡi m-fwele, nakalinga
AUG-4-cloth AUG-PROX.4 1SG-dress/wear.PFV immediately
n-gʊ-fwal-a r-ɡi-ngi r-mi-nunu r-gy-a lʊ-kʊ
1SG-PRS-dress/wear-FV AUG-4-other AUG-4-good AUG-4-ASSOC 12-type
Ṽ-lʊ-ngi
AUG-11-other
‘You too see me [habitually], when something touches my body a bit, I change the clothes I wear and immediately put on other beautiful ones of a different type.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(39) lʊmo bo a-bomb-ile=po panandɪ kw-ag-aga
maybe as 1-work-PFV=PART a_little 2SG.MOD.FUT-find-MOD.FUT
a-b-eene na=fyo b-iis-ile kʊ-kw-eg-a
AUG-2-owner COM=REF.8 2-come-PFV 17-15-take-FV
‘Or when he has worked for a little while, you will find they [owner of the tools] have come to take them back.’ [Types of tools in the home]

(40) tw-ɪmb-ɪl-e=po kangɪ mwa=li-ndʊ, kʊb-a kangɪ!
1PL-sing-APPL-IMP=PART again matronym=5-monster beat-FV again
‘Sing a little for us again, Mr. Monster, play again!’ (Monster with Guitar)

On negated verbs, the partitive =po strengthens the negation, having the meaning ‘not a bit’ or ‘not at all’.

(41) a-a-bop-ile mw-ene, a-a-bop-ile mw-ene kalʊkʊ.
1-PST-run-PFV 1-only 1-PST-run-PFV 1-only hare(1)
mwa=n-dugutu a-ka-a-bop-ile=po
matronym=9-type_of_bird 1-NEG-PST-run-PFV=PART
‘He [Hare] had run alone, Hare had run alone. Mr. Tugutu did not run at all.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

(42) Ṽ-gwe kʊ-job-a r-s-ingi itolo r-si
AUG-2SG 2SG.PRS-speak-FV AUG-10-many just AUG-PROX.10
a-ka-kʊ-lagɪl-a=po, fiki Ṽ-ti-kʊ-pilɪkɪsy-a kanunu?
1-NEG-2SG-order-FV=PART why 2SG-NEG-PRS-listen-FV well
‘You say many things that he hasn’t told you at all, why don’t you listen properly?’ [Saliki and Hare]
3 Structure of the verb

As with the semantically locative enclitics, minimizing =po triggers prenasalization of the imperfective suffix (§6.4.1):

(43) a. nw-anga=po!
    drink-IPFV=PART
    ‘Drink a little!’
b. u-tusy-enge=po
    2SG-rest-IPFV.SUBJ=PART
    ‘You should rest a little.’

Partitive =po is also used with predicative adjectives (44) and is also attested with adverbials (45). This has been observed before by Schumann (1899: 63) and Endemann (1914: 80).

(44) a-ka-aja a-ko ka-li pa-tali=po
    AUG-12-village AUG-REF.12 12-COP 16-long=PART
    ‘That village is a bit far.’ [ET]
(45) bo end-ile=po n-ky-eni=po panandi,
    as 1.walk/travel-PFV=PART 18-7-forehead=PART a_little
    a-lnkũ-ba-bon-a Jaakobo na Johani, a-ba-nya-Sebetai
    1-NARR-2-see-FV J. COM J. AUG-2-kinship-S.
    ‘When he had gone a little farther, he saw James son of Zebedee and his brother John.’ (Mark 1:19)\(^{10}\)

3.3.8.3 Comparative =po

Another enclitic, =po, likewise derived from the locative class 16 substitutive, is used in comparisons of inequality. Nyakyusa’s primary means of encoding comparisons of inequality features the verb kinda ‘pass, surpass’, which takes the standard of comparison as its object. Stassen (2013) terms this pattern, which is the most common means of forming comparisons in languages south of the Sahara, “exceed comparatives”.

(46) n-nyumba i-ji nywamu u-kũ-kind-a ji-la
    AUG-house(9) AUG-PROX.9 big(9) AUG-15-pass-FV 9-DIST
    ‘This house is bigger than that one’ [ET]

\(^{10}\) nkyeni (lit. ‘in the forehead’) has grammaticalized to an adverbial ‘in front, ahead’.
The verb *kinda* often features the comparative enclitic =po. According to the speakers consulted, this emphasizes the comparison.

(47) ʊ-mw-ana ʊ-jʊ a-li na=a-ma-hala  
AUG-1-child AUG-PROX.1 1-COP COM=AUG-6-intelligence  
ʊ-kʊ-kmd-a=po ʊ-jʊ-ngi ʊ-jʊ  
AUG-15-pass-FV=CMPR AUG-1-other AUG-PROX.1  
'This child is cleverer than this other one.' [ET]

Note that *kinda* even in non-comparative contexts often features an enclitic =po:

(48) bo ka-kmd-ile=po a-ka-balilo ka-nandi, Pakyindi a-lmkʊ-bʊuk-a as 12-pass-PFV=CMPR AUG-12-time 12-little, P. 1-NARR-go-FV  
ku-n-gʊnda 17-3-field  
'When a short time had passed, Pakyindi went to the field.' [Paykindi and Sokoni]

The host of the comparative enclitic may also be an inflected verb (49) or a predicative adjective (50) functioning as the object of comparison.

(49) ʊ-ŋ-dʊmyana ʊ-jʊ i-kʊBomb-a=po kanunu  
AUG-1-boy AUG-PROX.1 1-PRS-work-FV=CMPR well  
ʊ-kʊ-n-kmd-a ʊ-jʊ  
AUG-15-1-pass-FV AUG-PROX.1  
'This boy works better than this one.' [ET]

(50) kʊ-pepe=po 1-n-gamila ʊ-kw-end-a pa-bw-asi  
15-easy=CMPR AUG-9-camel(<SWA) AUG-15-walk/travel-FV 14-gap  
bw-a sindaan ʊ-kʊ-kmd-a ʊ-n-kabiy ʊ-kw-ingil-a  
14-ASSOC needle(9) AUG-15-pass-FV AUG-1-rich AUG-15-enter-FV  
m-bʊ-nyafyale bw-a Kyala 18-14-chiefdom 14-ASSOC God  
'It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for someone who is rich to enter the kingdom of God.' (Mark 10:25)

The comparative clitic is also found on predicative adjectives without any form of *kinda* in the clause (51). Lastly, note that a sequence /po/ is also found in the invariant stem *paakipo* 'preferable' and in *kyaji* ~ *kyajipo* 'better'.
3 Structure of the verb

(51) i-m-bwa i-jí n-gali, ji-la n-gali=po
AUG-9-dog AUG-PROX.9 9-fierce 9-DIST 9-fierce=CMPR
'This dog is fierce, that one is fiercer.' [ET]

The use of an originally locative enclitic to express comparison is not limited to Nyakyusa: Persohn & Devos (2017) observe comparative uses in Kanyoka L32, Kaonde L41, Tumbuka N21 and Umbundu R11. As has been noted above, in Nyakyusa there is a strong attraction between the exceed-verb kɪnda and the enclitic =po. It is conceivable that the enclitic originally indexed the (implied) landmark, beyond which motion continues. Through metaphorical transfer this may be a temporal landmark, as in (48) or the standard of comparison NP. A likely source construction is found in the following example:

(52) n-ambiile fy-osa i-fi mu-m-b-eele, kangí
1sg-receive.PFV 8-all AUG-PROX.8 2PL-1SG-give-PFV again
n=ʊ-kʊ-kind-a=po pali i-fi n-aa-lond-aga
COM=AUG-15-pass-PFV=16 16 AUG-PROX.8 1SG-PST-want-IPFV

'But I have all, and abound. [lit. I have received everything that you have given me and even more than what I needed]' (Philippians 4:18)

In this scenario, =po turns into a comparative marker of its own when it attaches to the inflected verb, predicative nominal or predicative invariant stem that expresses the object of comparison.

3.3.8.4 Some(time) =mo

The enclitic =mo can have a range of non-locative readings. The collocation with perfective -ile (see §6.5.3,6.5.5) typically denotes a state-of-affairs that has occurred at some previous time, a reading similar to what has been labelled the "experiential perfect" (Comrie 1976) or "existential perfect" (McCawley 1971).

(53) ʊ-ka-bagɪl-a ʊ-kʊ-n-dol-a ʊ-ne, paapo i-fi-nyamaana
2SG-NEG-be_able-FV AUG-15-1SG-beat-FV AUG-1SG because AUG-8-animal
bo i-m-babala, ʊ-senjebele n=i-fi-nyamaana i-fi-ngi,
like AUG-9-gazelle AUG-zebra(9) COM=AUG-8-animal AUG-8-other
i-fi ʊ-fi-meenye ʊkʊtɪ fi-kʊ-bop-a fiijo ʊ-ɪ-bɪlo,
AUG-PROX.8 2SG-8-know.PFV COMP 8-PRS-run-FV INTENS AUG-11-running
fy-ope fi-gel-ile=mo ʊ-kʊ-tolana na=niine, fy-osa
8-also 8-try-PFV=some AUG-15-compete COM=COM.1SG 8-all
3.3 Linear morphological structure of the finite verb

n-aa-fi-tol-ile
1SG-PST-8-beat-PFV
‘You can’t beat me, because animals like Gazelle, Zebra and many animals that you know to race fast have [at some point] tried to compete with me, I beat them all.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(54) Context: When you came to this place, did you know my brother?
tw-ag-an-iilee=mo
1PL-find-RECP-APPL.PFV=some
‘We met [at least once before].’ [ET]

In questions, =mo can be combined with sikʊ ‘ever’.

(55) u-l-iile=mo sikʊ 1-ki-nanaasi?
2SG-eat-PFV ever AUG-7-pineapple(<SWA)
‘Have you ever eaten pineapple?’ [ET]

With negated verbs, =mo adds the notion of ‘not once, never’.

(56) a-ka-balilo ka-mo a-alr-m-bwene n=ʊ-n-nyambala ʊ-jʊ-ngi
AUG-12-time 12-one 1-PST-1-see.PFV COM=AUG-1-man AUG-1-other
mu-ŋ-gunda ʊ-gw-a ma-jabʊ ʊ-gw-a ʊ-dome bo
18-3-field AUG-3-ASSOC 6-cassava AUG-3-ASSOC 1-husband as
i-kʊ-logw-a.
leelo Sokoni a-ka-alr-m-bʊʊl-ile=mo
1-PRS-copulate-PFV now/but S. 1-NEG-PST-1-tell-PFV=some
ʊ-ŋ-dome
AUG-1-husband
‘One time he [Sokoni] saw her with another man in her husband’s cassava field while was having sex. But Sokoni did not ever tell the husband.’ [Sokoni and Pakyindi]

(57) po na=jʊ-mo a-ti-kw-i-tuufy-a=mo kʊʊ-nongwa j-aa
then COM=1-one 1-NEG-PRS-REFL-praise-PFV=some 17-issue(9) 9-ASSOC
m-bombo 1-si i-kʊ-bomb-a
10-work AUG-PROX.10 1-PRS-work-PFV
‘So no one ever praises oneself for the work s/he does.’ [Division of labour]

Negation involving =mo is frequently strengthened through the use of the postverbal sikʊ, yielding a sense of ‘never ever’ (58). The enclitic is also used on infinitives negated by (ʊ)kusita, (ɪ)kɪsita ‘without’ (59).

The adverbial sikʊ ‘ever’ seems to be derived from the root sikʊ ‘day’.

73
3 Structure of the verb

(58) \text{n-ga-fwal-a}=\text{mo} \quad \text{sikʊ} \quad \text{a-ma-koti} \quad \text{ma-nywamu} \\
1SG-NEG-dress/wear-FV-some ever AUG-6-coat(<SWA) 6-big

'I have never ever put on a thick jacket.' [ET]

(59) \text{ba-lnkʊ-j-a} \quad \text{ba-ndo} \quad \text{b-a} \quad \text{lu-sulumanio fiijo} \\
2-NARR-be(come)-FV 2-person 2-ASSOC 11-grief INTENS
\text{ʊ-kʊ-kong-an-a} \quad \text{n=ʊkʊsita} \quad \text{ku-kab-a}=\text{mo} \quad \text{ʊ-mw-ana} \\
AUG-15-follow-RECP-FV COM=without 15-get-FV=some AUG-1-child
\text{na=jʊ-mo} \quad \text{n-kati} \quad \text{m̩-bʊ-ʊmi bw-abo} \\
COM=1-one 18-middle 18-14-life 14-POSS.PL

'They became very sad because they did not [ever in all that time] get even a single child in their life.' [Pregnant women]

As with the semantically locative enclitics, =\text{mo} in its indefinite function triggers prenasalization of the imperfective suffix (§6.4.1):

(60) \text{ba-ka-a-bomb-anga}=\text{mo} \quad \text{sikʊ} \\
2-NEG-PST-work-IPFV=some ever

'They were never ever working.' [ET]

Note that an enclitic =\text{mo} is also found with predicative nominals. This gives a qualifying or mitigating reading. Thus (61) was given as a response to the author asking for the relationship between the addressee and another person who had just left. The mini-dialogue in (62) was suggested when discussing possible uses of =\text{mo} on nouns and adjectives.\footnote{Enclitic =\text{mo} is not only homophonous to the class 18 substitutive but also to the bound root \text{mo} 'one; some'. One is lead to wonder if this might have motivated the extra-locative uses.}

(61) \text{m-manyaani}=\text{mo} \quad \text{gw-angʊ} \\
1-friend=some 1-POSS.1SG

'He is somewhat of a friend of mine.' [overheard]

(62) \text{bʊle}, \text{pa-Lwangwa} \quad \text{pa-piipi}? \quad \text{– mma}, \text{pa-tali}=\text{mo} \\
Q \quad 16-L. \quad 16-close \quad \text{no} \quad 16-far=some

'Is it close to Lwangwa?' – ‘No, it is somewhat far.’ [ET]

3.3.8.5 Frequent or lexicalized collocations

Some verbal roots frequently occur in combination with a post-final clitic. To begin with, with the movement verb sooka, whose core meaning can be para-
phrased as 'leave, set off', the locative enclitics in most cases do not refer to an overt location, but specify the spatial relation to the source (63). An example within its discoursive co-text is given in (64). Note that there is no antecedent for the locative.

(63) sooka=po ‘go away; go off; pull out (train, bus)’  
sooka=ko ‘go away’  
sooka=mo ‘get out’

(64) i-kw-eg-a i-n-jinga, a-ka-bagil-a pa-ku~pot-a, paapo  
1-PRS-take-FV AUG-9-bicycle 1-NEG-be_able-FV 16-15-steer-FV because  
a-fuleele  
i-ki-lundl. i-ku-sook-a=po.  
1-be(come)_hurt.PFV AUG-7-leg 1-PRS-leave-FV=16  
‘He takes the bike, he cannot ride it, because he has injured his leg. He sets off.’ [Elisha pear story]

The same use of enclitics is found with the causative soosya:

(65) soosya ‘remove, get rid of; discharge; donate; yield’  
soosya=po ‘omit; remove; expel; dismiss; displace; send away’  
soosya=ko ‘deduct, subtract; remove’  
soosya=mo ‘exclude; bring out from within’

Locative enclitics are also frequently used with pa ‘give’, in which case the reference is to the recipient/goal:

(66) popaa~po Ṣ-mu-ndo jʊ-la a-lnkʊ~bʊð-k-a pa-ki-syanjʊ  
REDUPL~then AUG-1-person 1-DIST 1-NARR-go-FV 16-7-thicket  
pa-ku~tsjʊs-y-a, a-lnkʊ~j-aag-a 11-nyama. a-lnkʊ~ji=koo-lel-a  
16-15-rest-FV 1-NARR-9-find-FV AUG-meat(9) 1-NARR-9-call-FV  
r-m-bwa j-aake, a-lnkʊ-p-a=po Ṣ-kʊtt jʊ-ly-ege  
AUG-9-dog 9-POSS.SG 1-NARR-give-FV=16 COMP 9-eat-IPFV.SUBJ  
‘That man went into the thicket to rest, he found the meat. He called his dog, he gave [the meat] to him to eat.’ [Dogs laughed at each other]

A few collocations of verbal root plus enclitic have acquired a specialized meaning, which must be considered lexicalized or on the path to becoming so. First, the verb lya ‘eat’, when used with a human subject, is more frequently than

---

13Botne (2005: 66) states about the seemingly functionally equivalent verb in Ndali: “ny’amuka denotes separation of the figure from the source, with latent motion away from that source.” The encoding of motion in Nyakyusa is the subject of ongoing research.
3 Structure of the verb

not used with an enclitic =mo, whose semantic contribution is not entirely clear (67). The only counterexamples in the corpus feature anthropomorphized animals as the protagonists of fables, as in (68). This association with humans also became clear in elicitation, where constructed examples with animals as subjects of lyama=mo were either only accepted with a locative reading or considered as humanizing the animal.

(67) ba-lnku-m’-bœl-a uköt iik-e paa-si a-ly-e=mo
2-NARR-1-tell-FV COMP 1.descend-SUBJ 16-below 1-eat-SUBJ=some(?)
i-fi-ndu i-fi ba-ali-n-twaliile
AUG-8-food AUG-PROX.8 2-PST-1-carry-APPL.FVF
‘They told her to come down and eat the food they brought for her.’
[Myfage turns into a lion]

(68) bo ba-l-iile=mo kâlœn n=û-lû-bûbi, ba-lnku-buj-a
as 2-eat-PFV=some(?) hare(1) COM=AUG-11-spider 2-NARR-return-FV
kû-my-abo
17-4-POSS.PL
‘When Hare and Spider had eaten they went home.’ [Hare and Spider]

Lastly, at least the verbs in (69) have related, but idiosyncratic meanings when combined with an enclitic:

(69) tala ‘do first; be first to do’ > tala=po ‘go ahead’
gela ‘try; examine’ > gela=po ‘dare to’
ingɪla ‘enter’ > ingɪla=po ‘succeed, inherit from’
ikiinya ‘knock at, bump into (loc)’ > ikiinya=mo ‘take offence’

In the cases of tala=po and gela=po, the partitive po suggests itself as the source of the divergent meaning. Concerning ingɪla=po and ikiinya=mo, the idiosyncratic readings most likely originate in collocations with locative possessives, which are still sometimes found in the present-day language: ingɪla=po pamyake ‘enter his/her place’ > ‘succeed’ and ikiinya=mo mmyake lit. ‘bump into his/hers’ > ‘take offence’.
3.4 Root, base and stem

3.3.8.6 WH-enclitics

Two question morphemes can attach to the verb: ki ‘what’ and kʊ ‘where’. The bound root ki has a meaning along the lines of ‘what kind of; which’. Its employment as an enclitic is derived from its use in noun class 8 (70).14

(70) kʊ-lond-a=ki? ~ kʊ-lond-a fi-ki?
     2SG.PRS-want-FV=what  2SG.PRS-want-FV 8-what
     ‘What do you want?’ [overheard]

Enclitic ki cannot be employed together with its full form:

(71) * kʊlondaki fiki?

The clitic kʊ is a shortened form of kʊʊgʊ, the question word for locative noun class 17.

(72) ba-fum-ile kʊʊgʊ? ~ ba-fum-ile=kʊ?
     2-come_from-PFV where  2-come_from-PFV=where
     ‘Where have they come from?’ [ET]

The enclitic kʊ also forms part of the fixed expression kʊtwakʊ ‘Where are you going?’. As is the case with =ki, =kʊ is incompatible with the full form:

(73) * bafumilekʊ kʊʊgʊ?

3.4 Root, base and stem

The verbal root being its basic unit, the Nyakyusa verb can be described in terms of a hierarchy. According to this view, the hierarchically lowest element is the root, which is not further analysable in its morphology. The root together with the derivational elements in the pre-final slot form the base, which is the domain of the morphophonological process of imbrication (§6.4.2). The base together with the final affix form the stem, which is the domain of clitization (§3.3.8). Figure 3.2 illustrates this structure.

In another common terminology, what is labelled root and base here corresponds to simple base and extended base (Schadeberg 2003a). Downing (2001) uses derivational stem and inflectional stem instead of base and stem.

14 fiki is also used as an interrogative of reason ‘why?’. Some speakers stated that the enclitic =ki is emblematic of the Mwamba/Lugulu and/or Kukwe/Ngumba dialect.
A number of verbs with initial /i/ are formally reflexive verbs, that is, they are preceded by the reflexive object marker i- (§3.3.4.3). However, with some of these the reflexive semantics has become obscured and there may not exist a corresponding stem without the reflexive marker. There are at least two diagnostic criteria regarding the status of initial /i/. First, object prefixes do not count as stem syllables. Trisyllabic formal reflexives are thus treated as disyllabic in the formation of the perfective stem (see §6.4.2).

Second, any object prefix other than first person singular triggers a final vowel -e in the imperative (§9.2) (75). Verbs in which initial /i/ is part of the stem have -a (76),

(74)  itoga ‘mount (horse, donkey)’ > itogile (not *itwige)
      ikifya ‘do your best’ > ikifiifye (not *ikiifye)

The final slot of the stem is obligatory and by default is occupied by the final vowel (fv) -a, except for certain TMA paradigms and the defective verbs lt and tt (§10). Following Bantuist tradition, throughout the rest of this study verbs are listed as stems, except when explicitly making reference to hierarchically lower structures. Note that the verb stem is generally not a possible morphological word in Nyakyusa.15

---

15 The exception is the imperative (§9.2), for those verbs that can figure in this paradigm and are not monosyllabic.
4 Verbal Derivation

4.1 Introduction

Verbal derivation in Nyakyusa is accomplished by means of several devices. The most frequent is the use of derivational suffixes. These are also known as verbal extensions in Bantu studies (Schadeberg 2003a) and are common in the postulated Niger-Congo phylum (Hyman 2007). The canonical verbal extension has the shape VC, with the exception of the passive and causative extensions (V and VCV). While some verbal extensions, e.g. the applicative, are highly productive, others like the tentative can be segmented on the basis of their shape and meaning, but are not used productively to derive new verbs. Between these two extremes lie other extensions whose productivity is harder to determine as there seems to be a close interaction with verbal semantics (see Fleisch 2000). In these cases productivity is described on a tentative basis.

Verbal derivation by means of derivational suffixes is cyclic: once a derived verbal base has acquired a special or idiosyncratic meaning, this functions as the point of departure for subsequent derivations.

(1) fuma
   ‘come from’
   > fumuka
   ‘be(come) known, famous’ (separative)
   > fumusya
   ‘announce’ (separative + causative)
   > fumusigwa
   ‘be announced’ (separative + causative + passive)

Verbal derivations cover a set of functions that can be subsumed under valency changing operations, semantic alternations, aktionsart (see §1.4.3.2) and alternations in Aristotelian aspect (see §1.4.3.1). Some devices express a combination of these functions.

This chapter begins with an account of morphophonological processes affecting verbal extensions (§4.2.1), followed by a section on the form and function of
each verbal extension (§4.2.2–4.2.15). The treatment of the less productive extensions includes observations on lexical co-occurrences that are derived forms from the same root (commutations). Thereafter the combinations of verbal extensions are dealt with in more detail, including their respective order and some cases of specialized combinations (§4.3). Following the verbal extensions, denominal verb bases are dealt with (§4.4). Lastly, there is a note on partially reduplicated verbs (§4.5).

4.2 Verbal extensions

4.2.1 Morphophonology of verbal extensions

Verbal extensions in Nyakyusa are subject to two progressively operating processes affecting the degree of vowel opening: vowel height harmony and high vowel raising.

4.2.1.1 Vowel height harmony

The verbal extensions with an underlying front vowel /ɪ/ surface with mid vowel /e/ following a syllable containing mid vowels /e, o/. The examples in (2) illustrate this for the applicative extension (only one possible reading given for each example).

(2) fikɪla ‘arrive at’ < fika ‘arrive’
    pɪmɪla ‘measure with’ < pɪma ‘weigh, measure’
    temela ‘cut with’ < tema ‘cut’
    jaba ‘give off to’ < jaba ‘divide; distribute’
    bopela ‘run to’ < bopa ‘run’
    bʊʊkɪla ‘go to’ < bʊʊka ‘go (to)’
    guulɪla ‘wait for’ < guula ‘wait’

A similar rule applies to extensions beginning with the back vowel /ʊ/. The separative extensions -ʊl and -ʊk occur as -ol and -ok following a syllable with /o/ (but not /e/). They surface as -ul/-uk following a syllable with the high back vowel /u/. That is, front and back vowels are treated asymmetrically. Previous discussions of vowel harmony in Nyakyusa (e.g. Mwangoka & Voorhoeve 1960c; Labroussi 1998; Hyman 1999) did not notice the raising of /ʊ/ to /u/. This rule of high vowel rising seems to be the expression of a more general constraint against stem-internal */uCo/. These rules are illustrated in (3) for the separative transitive extension.
4.2 Verbal extensions

(3) *kingola ‘uncover’ < *kinga ‘cover’
*pinola ‘convert’ < *pinda ‘bend; wrap’
*niembola ‘disentangle’ < *niemba ‘wrap up’
*matola ‘demolish’ < *mata ‘plug, stop up’
*bonola ‘pay off’ < *bona ‘see’
*tongola ‘pick’ < *tonga ‘hang; string together’
*fumbula ‘solve’ < *fumba ‘enclose in mouth or hands’

In principle, the rules of vowel harmony apply to all verbal extensions in question. (4) gives a formalized account. Extensions containing /i/ or /a/ such as the passive or the reciprocal do not change their vowel quality.

(4) $i \rightarrow e / \{ e \; C \; -$
$u \rightarrow o / o \; C \; -$
$o \rightarrow u / u \; C \; -$

The shape of the verbal extensions subject to vowel height harmony on monosyllabic roots is not predictable in a straightforward fashion, at least in synchronic terms. (5) lists the applicative forms of monosyllabic verbs together with their Proto-Bantu forms.¹

(5) a. *pa (*pá) ‘give’ > *peela
   *ja (*gi) ‘be(come)’ > *jìila
b. *fwa (*kú) ‘die’ > *fwila
   *gwa (*gò) ‘fall’ > *gwìla
   *kwa (*kò) ‘pay dowry’ > *kwìla
   *lwa (*dò) ‘fight’ > *lwìla
   *mwa (*mò) ‘shave’ > *mwìla
   *nwa (*nò) ‘drink’ > *nwìla
   *swa (*tu?) ‘spit; forgive’ > *swìla
   *twa (*tò?) ‘be plenty (esp. fish)’ > *twìla
c. *kya (*ké) ‘dawn; cease to rain’ > *kyela
   *lya (*lí) ‘eat’ > *lìila
   *nia (*nè) ‘defecate’ > *niela
   *pya (*pí) ‘be(come) burnt’ > *pìla
   *sya (*cè) ‘grind’ > *syìla

¹Defective *lr and *tt do not take derivational suffixes.
4 Verbal Derivation

As can be gathered, *pa* is treated as underlying *pa-a* for derivational purposes. With all other monosyllabic roots, the surface glide is retained, unless the sequence is */r-ɪ/. The vowel quality of the derivational suffix as such is conditioned by the historic root vowel and shows the same alternations as with longer verbs. The only exceptions are *twa* ‘be plenty (esp. of fish)’, whose origin in *tó* ‘bite’ is merely tentative, and *swa* ‘spit; forgive’ < *tú* ‘spit’, where *fwa* would be expected according to the rules of diachronic phonology.

4.2.1.2 High vowel raising

Two further and related processes affect the quality of vowels in verbal extensions. What both have in common is the raising of the second degree vowels /ɪ, ʊ/ to the first degree /i, u/. First, the underlying vowels of verbal extensions are raised to first degree vowels when following the palatal nasal,\(^2\) as illustrated in (6) with the applicative (-ɪl), neuter (-ɪk), causative\(_2\) (-ɪsi) and the separative (-ʊl/-ʊk) extensions.

\[(6)\] manyila (‘many-ɪl-a) ‘learn’ < manya ‘know’
manyika (‘many-ɪk-a) ‘be known’
manyisya (‘many-ɪsi-a) ‘teach’
kanyisya (‘kany-ɪsi-a) ‘fill up, stuff’ < kanya ‘tread on’
tuunyila (‘tuuny-ɪl-a) ‘throw at’ < tuunya ‘throw’
tuunyuka (‘tuuny-ʊk-a) ‘fall (from)’
kinyula (‘kiny-ʊl-a) ‘disencourage’ < kinya ‘hit’

This rule does not apply when the vowel in question is affected by vowel height harmony (7). Also, only the directly adjacent vowel is subject to high vowel raising (8).

\[(7)\] toonyesya ‘cause to fall or drip’ < toonya ‘drip, ooze’
keenyesya ‘insult, shout at’ < keenya ‘insult’
konyola ‘break, wreck; harvest corn’ < *kóny ‘fold, bend, twist’
konyoka ‘break (intr.)’

\[(8)\] manyilila ‘know (much)’ < manya ‘know’
pinyilila ‘tie up, bind repeatedly’ < pinya ‘bind; detain; fix’
kenyulila ‘add too much; oversalt’

\(^2\)This seems to be the expression of a more general constraint against stem-internal */nyɪ, nyʊ/, cf. also nominal stems like unyu ‘salt’ < PB *jɪ́nyʊ̀.*
4.2 Verbal extensions

The underlying second degree vowels /ɪ, ʊ/ of verbal extensions are also realized as first degree /i, u/ when they follow a sequence of low vowel /a/ plus the coronal or bilabial nasal /n/ or /m/. Examples are given in (9) for the extensions in question when following the reciprocal and positional extensions, while (10) illustrates this for root-final sequences.³

(9) komanila (’kom-an-il-a) ‘fight for’ < koma ‘hit’
swiganika (’swig-an-tk-a) ‘wonder (much)’ < swiga ‘wonder’
sulamika (’sulam-ik-a) ‘turn upside down’ < sulama ‘bend, droop’
batamisyta (’batam-isi-a) ‘silence, caress’ < batama ‘be silent’

(10) ganila (’gan-il-a) ‘love + APPL’ < gana ‘love’
ganisya (’gan-isi-a) ‘cause to love’
kaanika (’kaan-ik-a) ‘dispute’ < kaana ‘refuse’
kaanila (’kaan-il-a) ‘refuse’
kaanisyta (’kaan-isi-a) ‘forbid’
kamila (’kam-il-a) ‘milk + APPL’ < kama ‘milk, squeeze’
kamula (’kam-ul-a) ‘squeeze out’
lamula (’lam-ul-a) ‘stop fight; judge’*dàm-ʊd ‘settle dispute’
saamila (’saam-il-a) ‘move + APPL’ < saama ‘move, migrate’
saamisyta (’saam-isi-a) ‘transfer; displace’

Again, only the directly adjacent vowel undergoes raising:

(11) fwaniksysa (’fwan-ikisi-a) ‘compare’ < fwana ‘resemble’
kaanilila (’kaan-ilil-a) ‘refuse + INTNS’ < kaana ‘refuse’
saamiksysa (’saam-ikisi-a) ‘transfer; exile to’ < saama ‘move, migrate’
saamilila (’saam-ilil-a) ‘migrate + INTNS’
sanukila (’sanuk-il-a) ‘turn to’ < sanuka ‘alter’
amulisyta (’amul-isi-a) ‘make answer’ < amula ‘answer’

The examples in (12) show that other /aC/ sequences do not induce raising of the second degree vowels.⁴ The examples in (13) show that other /VN/ sequences likewise do not induce high vowel raising (but see above on the effects of the palatal nasal, and below on the sequence /mu/).

³Again, this seems to be the expression of a more general phonotactic constraint: Regardless of syntactic class, no stem containing /an, am/ followed by a second degree vowel is attested in the data.
⁴A few combinations are not attested in the data: /aŋɪ, afɪ, afu/. The lack of the first is due to the scarcity of the velar nasal, while the lack of the other two stems from the fact that the bilabial fricative /f/ has its main diachronic source in sequences of Proto-Bantu plosives followed by a first degree vowel.
4 Verbal Derivation

(12) /ap, at, ak/ /amb, and, əɲ, əŋ/
paapɪla ‘give birth + APPL’
babaka ‘arrange in line’
tapʊka ‘separate’
sambʊka ‘rebels’
ʊbatɪla ‘embrace’
andɪsya ‘establish; repeat’
latʊla ‘rip’
andʊla ‘change; convert’
pakɪla ‘load + APPL’
nangɪsya ‘show’
sakʊka ‘reappear’
pangola ‘dismantle’
/aβ̞, al, aɟ, aɰ/ /as, ah/
laabɪla ‘get up early; be early’
lasɪla ‘stab + APPL’
abʊla ‘release; open’
pasʊka ‘burst’
malɪka ‘(be) finish(ed) (intr.)’
hahɪla ‘propose + APPL’
saalʊka ‘be(come) unravelled’
/aŋ/ abʊla ‘release; open’
pasʊka ‘burst’
tajʊka ‘break up (intr.)’
bagɪla ‘be able; suit’
pagʊka ‘fall apart’

(13) /\V/=a{n, m}/
pɪmɪla ‘measure + APPL’
inɪsya ‘dirty (tr.)’
insla ‘lift’
timɪla ‘rain + APPL’
ʊmɪla ‘dry + APPL’

A formalized account of the rules of high vowel raising is given in (14, 15).

(14) \[ \{ \text{i} \rightarrow \{ \text{i} / \text{ny}_- \} \]
(15) \[ \{ \text{i} \rightarrow \{ \text{i} / \text{a{n, m}}_- \} \]

Lastly, in a few stems the sequence /mu/ is found in contexts where it cannot be accounted for by the above rules (16). This seems to be the expression of a general phonotactic constraint against /mʊ/.5 While the latter sequence may be the outcome of vowel coalescence between the vowel of a prefix and a vowel-initial stem (§2.2.1.4), no stem or affix containing it is attested.6

5This kind of constraint against certain CV sequences may be more widespread in Bantu. Bennet & Lee (2015) describe in detail how the sequence /li/ is strongly dispreferred in Tsonga S53.

6Note that this constraint alone cannot explain the raising of the front vowel /i/ after /a[m, n]/, nor can it explain the raising of /æs/ after /an/, as /a[m, n, nɔs]/ are licensed stem-internal syllables.
4.2 Verbal extensions

4.2.2 Causative 1

The verbal suffix -i serves to derive causative verbs. Before turning to a closer examination of its function, some formal aspects require discussion.

Synchronically speaking, the vowel of this extension is not directly observable; instead it surfaces as the glide /y/. It is interpreted as -i because of the morphophonological changes it induces, which in diachronical terms go back to a first degree front vowel. Lingual plosives and approximants preceding this causative suffix are spirantized to /s/, while their labial counterparts change to /f/. This rule, which constitutes a typical case of Bantu spirantization (see Bostoen 2008), is given (17) and illustrated in (18).

(17) Spirantization triggered by causative -i
   a. \{ t, l, j, k, g \} \rightarrow s / _i
   b. \{ p, b \} \rightarrow f / _i

(18)  
   | Bosya  | 'cause to rot' | < Bola | 'rot' |
   | Sesya  | 'make laugh'   | < Seka | 'laugh' |
   | Osya   | 'bathe (tr.); baptize' | < Oga | 'bathe (intr.)' |
   | Pyufya | 'warm, heat up' | < Pyupa | 'get warm' |
   | Sofya  | 'loose; mislead' | < Soba | 'be lost; be wrong' |

When prenasalized plosives are spirantized, the preceding vowel becomes long (19). The causative -i followed by passive -igw surfaces with a short vowel; see p. 94 in §4.2.7.

(19)  
   | Kusya  | 'make pass, pass through; allow' | < Knda | 'pass' |
   | Joosya | 'elope with girl; lose' | < Jonga | 'run away' |

When serving as a typical causative, this extension increases the valency of the verb by one. It introduces an agent that causes the act of the underlying verb

---

\(^{7}\)This can be analyzed either as retention of the compensatory lengthening triggered by the NC cluster or as subsequent deletion of the word-internal non-syllabic nasal plus compensatory lengthening, cf. the first person singular object prefix (§3.3.2.1).
4 Verbal Derivation

and demotes the original subject to an object. The following examples illustrate this.

(20)  
elʊsya  ‘clean, rinse’ < elʊka  ‘become white, clean’  
fulasya  ‘hurt (tr.)’ < fulala  ‘(be)come hurt’  
isʊsya  ‘fill’ < isʊla  ‘(be)come full’  
sumusya  ‘make stand up, get up’ < sumuka  ‘get up, depart’  
kusya  ‘blow away’ < kula  ‘blow (intr.), drift’

Causative -i has developed idiosyncratic readings with a number of verbs, but it is no longer productive in the present-day language. These issues are dealt with in more detail in §4.2.4.

4.2.3 Causative 2

The extension -ɪsi (allomorphs -esi, -isi, see §4.2.1,) serves to derive causative verbs. -ɪsi is the only causative extension used with monosyllabic verbs and verbs ending in the palatal nasal (21a). It is also the only productive causative in Nyakyusa; see §4.2.4 for discussion.

(21)  
    a. Causatives of monosyllabic verbs:

        gwa  ‘fall’ > gwɪsya  ‘overturn, throw down’  
        lwa  ‘fight’ > lwɪsya  ‘cause to fight’  
        nwa  ‘drink’ > nwesya  ‘make drink, water’  
        lya  ‘eat’ > lɪɪsya  ‘feed’  
        sya  ‘grind’ > syesya  ‘make grind’

    b. Causatives of bases ending in -ny:

        manya  ‘know’ > manyisya  ‘teach’  
        pinya  ‘bind; detain; fix’ > pinyisya  ‘make bind’  
        kuunya  ‘push, bump’ > kuunyisya  ‘make push, bump’

The suffix -ɪsi may be analysed as consisting of two morphemes -ɪs-i. In combination with the reciprocal/associative it often surfaces as -ɪs-an-i; see also §4.3.1. Also note that any causative followed by the passive -igw surfaces with a short vowel; see p. 94 in §4.2.7.

(22)  
lwɪsania  ‘make fight each other’ < lwa  ‘fight’  
sobesania  ‘loose each other’ < soba  ‘be lost’

Causative2 -ɪsi increases the valency of the verb by one, introducing an agent-causer and demoting the original subject to an object. See (25–27) in §4.2.4 for
4.2 Verbal extensions

numerous examples. Causative\textsubscript{2} can further be used to add an intensive, evaluative meaning without changing the verb’s argument structure (23, 24). Such an intensifying use of the causative has also been reported for neighbouring Ndali (Botne 2003a: 73f) and other Bantu languages such as Chewa N20 (Anonymous 1969: 78f), Bemba M42 (van Sambeek 1955: 83–92) and Kalanga S16 (Mathangwane 2001: 397). For a typological perspective see Kittilä (2009).

(23) \texttt{i-ko-smmw-amul-isy-a} \textit{1-PRS-1-answer-CAUS-FV}

‘1. S/he makes him/her answer.’

‘2. S/he answered him/her snottily.’ [ET]

(24) \texttt{i-ko-ba-hah-isy-a a-ba-kiikolts} \textit{1-PRS-2-persuade-CAUS-FV AUG-2-woman}

‘He goes around proposing to women.’ [ET]

4.2.4 The relationship between the two causatives

As was seen in the preceding sections, Nyakyusa has two causative morphemes: \textit{-i} and \textit{-t\textsubscript{si}}. Their distribution is partly conditioned by phonology. Only \textit{-t\textsubscript{si}} applies with mono-syllabic verbs and following /ny/. These phonological contexts aside, in the variety described by Schumann (1899) and Endemann (1914), causative\textsubscript{1} \textit{-i} figures as the more productive morpheme of the two. For the present-day language, however, Labroussi (1999) observes that causative\textsubscript{2} \textit{-t\textsubscript{si}} has widely replaced causative\textsubscript{1} \textit{-i}. Labroussi’s observations are corroborated in the data. First, in a number of cases, causative\textsubscript{1} \textit{-i} is lexicalized with idiosyncratic meanings, whereas causative\textsubscript{2} \textit{-t\textsubscript{si}} yields a more transparent meaning and syntax. (25) illustrates a few of these.

(25) \texttt{koba} ‘beat; ring; play’ \textgreater \texttt{kufya} ‘cause trouble’ not: ‘make beat’

\texttt{kobisy} ‘make beat, ring, play’

\texttt{osa} ‘bathe (intr.)’ \textgreater \texttt{osya} ‘bathe (tr.); baptize’

\texttt{ogesya} ‘bathe (tr.)’ not: ‘baptize’

\texttt{pona} ‘recover; escape’ \textgreater \texttt{ponia} ‘greet, visit’ not: ‘cure’

\texttt{ponesy} ‘cure, rescue’

\texttt{syala} ‘remain’ \textgreater \texttt{syasy} ‘leave over’ not: ‘make remain’

\texttt{syalisya} ‘make remain’

\texttt{taama} ‘moo’ \textgreater \texttt{taamya} ‘trouble; persecute’

\texttt{taamisy} ‘make moo’
In other cases, both causatives are attested without any apparent difference in meaning. With most of these, there is a preference for the long causative\textsubscript{2}. However, with a few verbs, the short causative\textsubscript{1} is strongly preferred or is the only acceptable form (26). The data at hand suggest that this kind of lexicalization is particularly the case with verbs featuring the separative intransitive (§4.2.11) and the extensive (§4.2.15).

(26) \textit{fulala} ‘be(come) hurt’ \textgreater{} \textit{fulasya} ‘hurt (tr.)’
    \textit{hoboka} ‘be(come) happy’ \textgreater{} \textit{hobosya} ‘amuse
    \textit{kalala} ‘be(come) angry’ \textgreater{} \textit{kalasya} ‘enrage
    \textit{lila} i.a. ‘cry’ \textgreater{} \textit{lisya} ‘make cry’ (preferred)
    \textgreater{} \textit{litisya} ‘make cry’
    \textit{pyespa} i.a. ‘get warm’ \textgreater{} \textit{pyesya} ‘heat, warm up’
    \textit{pyopisya}

Furthermore, causative\textsubscript{2} \textit{tsi} is the only one which is applied productively (27). Causative\textsubscript{1} \textit{i} was rejected with most roots, including a number of those listed by Meinhof (1966)[1910], Schumann (1899), and Endemann (1914).\footnote{\textit{hobokesya} is acceptable nevertheless as the applicativized causative. Felberg (1996) lists \textit{kalalisy} for the variety of the lake-shore plains, so topological differences might also come into play. Some of these forms exist as causatives of other verbs: \textit{baasya} < \textit{baal} ‘increase, thrive’, \textit{piisya} < \textit{pya} ‘be(come) burnt’. Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960b) list \textit{keesya} < \textit{keeta}, which was rejected by the speakers consulted for this study.}

(27) \textit{baaja} ‘kick’ \textgreater{} \textit{baajisy} ‘make kick’ not: *\textit{baasya}
    \textit{bona} ‘see’ \textgreater{} \textit{bonesya} ‘show’ not *\textit{bonia}
    \textit{funja} ‘harvest’ \textgreater{} \textit{funjisy} ‘make harvest’ not: *\textit{fuusya}
    \textit{ikota} ‘be(come) satisfied’ \textgreater{} \textit{iktisy} ‘satisfy’ not: *\textit{ikosya}
    \textit{jaata} ‘walk’ \textgreater{} \textit{jaattsy} ‘make walk’ not: *\textit{jaasya}
    \textit{jeng} ‘build’ \textgreater{} \textit{jengesya} ‘make build’ not: *\textit{jeesya}
    \textit{keeta} ‘look, watch’ \textgreater{} \textit{keettesya} ‘make look’ not: *\textit{keesya}
    \textit{lima} ‘cultivate’ \textgreater{} \textit{lmya} ‘make cultivate’ not: *\textit{lmya}
    \textit{pija} ‘cook’ \textgreater{} \textit{pijisya} ‘make cook’ not: *\textit{pisya}

Lastly, causative\textsubscript{2} \textit{tsi} is found with the same function as causative\textsubscript{1} \textit{i} in the derivation of pluractionals (see §4.3.2). It is also subject to the same templatic requirements as \textit{i} in the formation of applicativized causatives (§4.3.3) and stems
4.2 Verbal extensions

(§6.4.2), both of which can be diachronically traced back to spirantization triggered by causative₁ -i.

Labroussi (1999) regards the loss of productivity of causative₁ -i as an epiphenomenon of the more general decline of spirantization in Nyakyusa, which is also observed in the agent noun suffix -i. The latter is lexicalized with spirantizing forms, but does not productively cause consonant mutation. What Labroussi does not consider is the fossilization of passive *-ʊ (§4.2.8), which has been replaced by the reflex of PB *-ibʊ (§4.2.7). The alternation between these two was historically also triggered by phonological context (Schadeberg 2003a: 78). Thus, apart from a general decline of spirantization, spirantization present-day Nyakyusa also shows a general preference for suffixes of the shape -VCV over -V.

4.2.5 Reciprocal/Associative

The reciprocal/associative extension has the shape -an. With some roots, this extension surfaces with a long vowel, which is maintained in complex derivations (§4.3). The long allomorph is induced predominantly, but not exhaustively, by roots of the shape (C)VNC.

(28) Long reciprocals -aan:

a. Following (C)VNC:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{bongaana} ‘gather, be assembled’ \quad \textless{} *bʊŋga ‘gather up’
  \item \textit{jʊgaania} ‘shake, aggitate’
  \item \textit{ln̂gaania} ‘explain; narrate’ \quad \textless{} \textit{ln̂ga} ‘peep through’
  \item \textit{lŝngaana} ‘join together (intr.)’ \quad \textless{} \textit{lŝng} ‘join; add spice’
  \item \textit{ongaana} ‘be together, be mixed’ \quad \textless{} \textit{onga} ‘suck’
  \item \textit{sangaana} ‘kill each other with blade’ \quad \textless{} \textit{sanga} ‘slaughter’
  \item \textit{tengaana} ‘settle; live in peace’ \quad \textless{} \textit{tenga} ‘make bed’
\end{itemize}

b. Following (C)VC:

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{jʊʊgaania} ‘shake, aggitate’
  \item \textit{jʊʊgaanika} ‘tremble’
  \item \textit{kolaana} ‘grasp, hold e.o.; accuse e.o.’ \quad \textless{} \textit{kola} ‘grasp, hold’
  \item \textit{kolaania} ‘multitask’
  \item \textit{lekaana} ‘leave e.o.; release e.o.’ \quad \textless{} \textit{leka} ‘release; let’
  \item \textit{manyaa\text{\`a}na} ‘be(come) acquainted’ \quad \textless{} \textit{manyaa} ‘know’
\end{itemize}

However, not all (C)VNC roots have the long allomorph (29). Further, one minimal pair -an vs. -aan is attested (30).
4 Verbal Derivation

(29) Short reciprocal -an following (C)VNC:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>andana</td>
<td>'be early'</td>
<td>anda</td>
<td>'start'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kongana</td>
<td>'follow e.o.; depend upon e.o.'</td>
<td>konga</td>
<td>'follow'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ningana</td>
<td>'give e.o.; be opposite e.o.'</td>
<td>wida</td>
<td>'give'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pingana</td>
<td>'debate, disagree'</td>
<td>pinga</td>
<td>'obstruct'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(30) komana 'fight' < koma 'hit'
komaana 'hold a meeting'

Having broached the formal issues of the reciprocal/associative, its function can now be examined. The reciprocal/associative is commonly used with transitive verbs and yields a reciprocal action. The verb's valency in this case decreases by one.

(31) sekana 'make fun of each other' < seka 'laugh (at)'
tʊʊlana 'help each other' < tʊʊla 'help'
titana 'pinch each other' < tita 'pinch'

Another reading of the reciprocal/associative is that of a joint action. Accordingly, valency remains unchanged:

(32) jabana 'divide amongst each other' < jaba 'divide; distribute'
gonana 'sleep together, copulate' < gona 'rest, sleep'

A closer look at examples (28, 29) above shows that the reciprocal/associative often expresses a further range of related meanings in the area of middle voice (Kemmer 1993). A preliminary classification, including some of the above examples, is given in the following:

(33) a. Verbs of being (dis-)connected:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pangʊkana</td>
<td>'break apart'</td>
<td>pangʊka</td>
<td>'collapse'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ongaana</td>
<td>'be together, be mixed'</td>
<td>onga</td>
<td>'suck'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

b. Collective eventualities:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bʊŋgaana</td>
<td>'gather, be assembled'</td>
<td>bʊŋga</td>
<td>'gather up'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>palamana</td>
<td>'be close to each other'</td>
<td>palama</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>papatana</td>
<td>'be squeezed together'</td>
<td>*pát</td>
<td>'hold'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

c. Chaining relation:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>Base Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>kongana</td>
<td>'follow each other'</td>
<td>konga</td>
<td>'follow'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2 Verbal extensions

d. Intransitive, resultative:9

\begin{itemize}
\item \textit{andana} ‘be early’ < \textit{anda} ‘start’
\item \textit{bulungana} ‘be(come) round’ < \textit{bulunga} ‘roll up; knead’
\item \textit{tengaana} ‘be(come) quiet; settle’ < \textit{tenga} ‘make bed’
\end{itemize}

The majority of these readings include a plurality of participants. Thus the grammatical subject is often expressed as plural (34). Depending on the specific verb and on context, other strategies are also encountered. Two conjoined noun phrases may form a plural subject (35). Lastly, conjoined subjects may be expressed discontinuously. In this case, the corresponding plural may be cross-referenced on the verb (36). Alternatively, the first noun phrase or a participant in the context (37) may be cross-referenced. This latter strategy is attested much less frequently in the data.

(34) 1-fi-nyamaana 1-fi \textit{fy-a-many-eene} fiijo
\texttt{AUG-8-animal AUG-PROX.8 8-PST-know-RECP.PFV INTENS n=i-m-bombo sy-abo sy-osa \textit{fy-a-tool-an-aga}}
\texttt{COM=AUG-10-work 10-POS.PL 10-all 8-PST-help-RECP-IPFV}
‘These animals were close friends and helped each other with everything.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(35) \textit{kalʊlʊ} \texttt{n=ʊ-\textit{lu}-bʊbi} \textit{ba-lɪnkʊ-job-an-a} \textit{kʊ-kʊ-mwanya}
\texttt{hare(1) COM=AUG-11-spider 2-NARR-speak-RECP-FV 17-17-high}
\texttt{kʊ-m-piki 17-3-tree}
‘Hare and Spider talked high in the tree.’ [Hare and Spider]

(36) \textit{paapo} \textit{ba-al-ii tik-eene} \texttt{na} \textit{kalʊlʊ} \texttt{u-\textit{kʊ}-bop-a}
\texttt{because 2-PST-agree-RECP.PFV COM hare(1) AUG-15-run-FV}
\texttt{a-ma-eli ma-haano}
\texttt{AUG-6-mile(<EN) 6-five}
‘Because they (Tugutu and Hare) had agreed to run five miles.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

(37) \textit{jʊ-la} \textit{i-\textit{kw-ii tik-an-a}} \texttt{na=nuuswe}
\texttt{1-DIST 1-PRS-agree-RECP-FV COM=COM.IPL}
‘That one agrees with us.’ [ET]

---

9Botne (2008), observing that a number of verbs with \textit{-\(a\)an} in Ndali are aspectually inchoative and have a resultative meaning, stipulates a homophonous “resultative” extension.
4 Verbal Derivation

4.2.6 Applicative

The applicative extension, also called dative (Schadeberg 2003a), has the underlying shape -\(il\). Allomorphs are -el, -il; see §4.2.1. In its most productive use, the applicative increases the valency of the verb by one. The semantic roles of the additional argument can be grossly classified as being beneficiary (38), location or direction/goal (39), instrument (40), manner (41) or reason (42).

(38) Beneficiary:
bo g\-ʊʊl-ile ʊ-lond-e ʊ-mu-ndʊ ʊ-gw-a
as 2SG-buy-PFV 2SG-search-SUBJ AUG-1-person AUG-1-ASSOC
kʊ-kʊ-jeng-el-a
15-2SG-build-APPL-FV
‘When you have bought one [place to build], you should look for a person to build for you.’ [How to build modern houses]

(39) Direction:
ba-lɪnkw-igʊl-a ʊ-tʊ-supə tʊ-la n=ʊ-kʊ-si-sop-el-a
2-NARR-open-FV AUG-13-bottle 13-DIST COM=AUG-15-10-throw-APPL-FV
ɪ-n-gambɪl
AUG-10-monkey
‘They opened those little bottles and threw them at the monkeys.’
[Thieving monkeys]

(40) Instrument:
ʊ-n-nyambala i-kʊ-lond-igw-a ʊ-kʊ-j-a n=ii-kʊmbʊlʊ
AUG-1-man 1-PRS-want-PASS-FV AUG-15-be(com)e-FV COM=5-hoe
ly-ake 1-ly-a kʊ-lɪm-ɪl-a. ɪ-n-gwepi ɪ-j-aa
5-POS.SG AUG-5-ASSOC 15-farm-APPL-FV AUG-9-spear AUG-9-ASSOC
kʊ-las-ɪl-a. ɪi-sengi ɪ-j-aa kʊ-seng-el-a ...
15-stab-APPL-FV AUG-sickle(9) AUG-9-ASSOC 15-chop-APPL-FV
‘A man is required to have his hoe for farming with. A spear for stabbing. A sickle for clearing with …’ [Types of tools in the home]

(41) Manner:\^10
ʊ-swe tu-ka-pɪliike a-ka-jʊni a-ka mu-no
AUG-1PL 1PL-12-hear.PFV AUG-12-bird AUG-PROX.12 18-DEM
4.2 Verbal extensions

ki-\text{-}kw\text{-}imb\text{-}ril\text{-}a
12-PRS-sing-APPL-FV

'\text{We have heard how the little bird is singing.}' \cite{Man and his in-law}

(42) Reason:
Pakyındır a-alır-n-kalal-iile fiijo ü-n-kasi
P. 1-PST-1-be(come)\textunderscore angry\textunderscore APPL\textunderscore PFV INTENS AUG-1\textunderscore wife
ku\text{-}m-bombo i-si a-a-si\text{-}bomb\text{-}ile i-li-sikũ lũ-la
17-10\text{-}work AUG\text{-}PROX.10 1-PST-10\text{-}do\text{-}PFV AUG-5\text{-}day 5\text{-}DIST

'Pakyindi got very angry with his wife for what she had done that day.' \cite{Sokoni and Pakyindi}

An applicative is sometimes found with an indefinite locative or directional meaning 'somewhere; someplace', as in (43–45).

(43) kʊ\text{-}m\text{-}malĩksyo iï\text{-}sofu jĩ\text{-}lnkw\text{-}igal\text{-}a ü-lo\text{-}komaano. po
17-3\text{-}end AUG\text{-}elephant(9) 9-NARR\text{-}close\text{-}FV AUG-11\text{-}meeting then
i-fi\text{-}nyamaana fy\text{-}osa fi\text{-}lnku\text{-}bal\text{-}an\text{-}il\text{-}a
AUG-8\text{-}animal 8-all 8-NARR\text{-}shine\text{-}RECP\text{-}APPL\text{-}FV

'Finally Elephant closed the meeting. All the animals dispersed.' \cite{Hare and Chameleon}

(44) jĩ\text{-}lnkw\text{-}ag\text{-}an\text{-}il\text{-}a n=ĩ\text{-}m\text{-}bwa i-ji jĩ\text{-}l-iile
9-NARR\text{-}find\text{-}RECP\text{-}APPL\text{-}FV COM=AUG-9\text{-}dog AUG\text{-}PROX.9 9\text{-}eat\text{-}PFV
iï\text{-}nyama AUG\text{-}meat(9)

'He [somewhere on his way] met the dog that had eaten the meat.' \cite{Dogs laughed at each other}

(45) ki\text{-}laabo i-ki\text{-}ngi Sokoni a\text{-}lnko\text{-}bůôk\text{-}a kangi kʊ\text{-}kʊ\text{-}kʊng\text{-}il\text{-}a
7\text{-}tomorrow AUG-7\text{-}other S. 1-NARR\text{-}go-FV again 17-15\text{-}tie\text{-}APPL\text{-}FV
iï\text{-}ng\text{'}ombe AUG\text{-}cow(10)

'The next day Sokoni went again to tie the cows [someplace].' \cite{Sokoni and Pakyindi}

In many verbs the applicative has become lexicalized with a divergent meaning, with or without an increase in valency:

\footnote{The expression of manner is a common extension of locative class 18.}
4 Verbal Derivation

(46) angalila ‘tease, mock’ < angala i.a. ‘be well, converse’

imila ‘preside’ < ima ‘stand, stop’

lagila ‘enforce; dictate; rule’ < laga ‘bid farewell’

manyila ‘learn’ < manya ‘know’

sookela ‘appear at; happen’ < sooka ‘leave’

4.2.7 Productive Passive

The productive passive extension has the shape -igw. While the category of passive rather belongs to the inflectional than the derivational domain, it is discussed at this place because it fills the pre-final slot of the verb template, just as other verbal extensions.

(47) bomba ‘do; work’ > bombigwa ‘be done; be worked’

ega ‘take; marry’ > egigwa ‘be taken; be married’

senga ‘chop’ > sengigwa ‘be chopped’

When the passive follows one of the causative extensions, the resultant vowel remains short:

(48) fumusigwa (‘fum-ʊk-i-igw-a) ‘be announced’

sofisgwa (‘sob-i-igw-a) ‘be mislead’

taamisgwa (‘taam-i-igw-a) ‘be troubled’

manyisigwa (‘many-ɪsi-igw-a) ‘be taught sthg.’

The passive of monosyllabic verbs is formed by inserting -ɪl/-el between the root and the passive extension. See §4.2.1 on vowel alternations.

(49) pa ‘give’ > peeligwa

mwa ‘shave’ > mweligwa

nwa ‘drink’ > nweligwa

lya ‘eat’ > liligwa

sya ‘grind’ > syeligwa

For pa ‘give’, a variant peegwa exists, while for lya ‘eat’ there is a variant form ligwa (see §6.4.2.2 for the perfective stems of these verbs).11 The speakers consulted preferred the regular forms peeligwa and liligwa, which are also the only ones found in the textual data.

11 According to Berger (1938: 212f), ligwa is semantically restricted to human beings being eaten by beasts of prey. This could not be confirmed by the present data and is contradicted by Berger’s (1933) own text collection, where on page 122 it is found in reference to beans being eaten by birds.
4.2 Verbal extensions

The original or underlying subject of the passive can be introduced by a proclitic form of the comitative na.\(^{12}\)

(50) jo a-a-pon-ile kūsita kʊ-seng-igw-a n=ʊ-mw-ene
    REF.1 1-PST-save-PFV without 15-chop-PASS-FV COM=AUG-1-owner
    ka-aja ʊ-ju a-a-kol-ile n-sengo
    12-homestead AUG-PROX.1 1-PST-hold-PFV AUG-sickle(9)

‘He was saved without being cut by the owner of the house, who held a sickle.’ [Wage of the thieves]

(51) i-kr-siba i-kyo ki-sisy a kangĩ kr-syʊŋʊʊtɪl-iigwe
    AUG-7-pond AUG-REF-8 8-frightening again 8-surround-PASS.PFV
    n=ɪ-fy-amba na a-m-usi ga-ake ma-sisy na
    AUG-8-mountain AUG-6-water 6-POSS.SG 6-frightening

‘That pond is frightening. It is surrounded by mountains and its water is frightening.’ [Selfishness kills]

With locative subjects, passives of intransitive verbs can be formed. This yields an impersonal meaning:

(52) paa-sokoni pi-kʊ-jweg-igw-a
    16-market(9)<SWA> 16-PRS-shout-PASS-FV

‘At the market, there is shouting.’ [ET]

(53) kʊ-ka-aja kʊ-my-ɪnʊ kʊ-kʊ-hobok-igw-a fiijo
    17-12-homestead 17-4-POSS.1PL 17-PRS-be(come)_happy-PASS-FV INTENS

‘At our home, they rejoice much.’ [ET]

(54) n-nyumba mu-la mu-kʊ-mog-igw-a
    18-house(9) 18-DIST 18-PRS-dance-PASS-FV

‘In that house, there is dancing.’ [ET]

For a discussion of the syntax of the passive see Lusekelo (2012). Nyakyusa has symmetric passives (see e.g. Bresnan & Moshi 1990): Both objects of three-argument-verb can be promoted to subject in passivization. The following examples illustrate this with objects occupying various semantic roles.

\(^{12}\)In the variety described by Schumann (1899: 35) and Endemann (1914: 88), the agent/force of the passive is introduced by the locative class 17 kʊ-. In elicitation this was rejected as agent marking and only accepted with a locational reading.
4 Verbal Derivation

(55)  a. Active voice:
i-ku-ba-pnj-il-a 1-fi-ndu a-ba-heesya
1-PRS-2-cook-APPL-FV AUG-8-food AUG-2-foreigner
’S/he cooks food for the guests.’

b. Passive voice, theme as subject:
i-fi-ndu fi-ku-pnj-il-igw-a a-ba-heesya
AUG-8-food 8-PRS-cook-APPL-PASS-FV AUG-2-foreigner
‘The food is cooked for the guests.’

c. Passive voice, beneficiary as subject:
a-ba-heesya bi-ku-pnj-il-igw-a 1-fi-ndu
AUG-2-foreigner 2-PRS-cook-APPL-PASS-FV AUG-8-food
‘(The) food is cooked for the guests.’\[13\]

(56)  a. Active voice:
i-ku-kolog-el-a u-n-tingo i-fi-ndu
1-PRS-stir-APPL-FV AUG-3-wooden_spoon AUG-8-food
’S/he stirs (the) food with a/the spoon.’

b. Passive voice, theme as subject:
i-fi-ndu fi-ku-kolog-el-igw-a u-n-tingo
AUG-8-food 8-PRS-stir-APPL-PASS-FV AUG-3-wooden_spoon
‘(The) food is stirred with a/the spoon.’

c. Passive voice, instrument as subject:
u-n-tingo gu-ku-kolog-el-igw-a i-fi-ndu
AUG-3-wooden_spoon 3-PRS-stir-APPL-PASS-FV AUG-8-food
‘A/the spoon is used to stir (the) food.’

(57)  a. Active voice:
u-mw-ana i-ku-sop-el-a i-m-bwa a-ma-bwe
AUG-1-child 1-PRS-throw-APPL-FV AUG-9-dog AUG-6-stone
‘A/the child throws stones at a/the dog.’

b. Passive voice, theme as subject:
a-ma-bwe gi-ku-sop-el-igw-a i-m-bwa
AUG-6-stone 6-PRS-throw-APPL-PASS-FV AUG-9-dog
‘Stones are thrown at a/the dog.’
4.2 Verbal extensions

c. Passive voice, goal as subject:

\[
\begin{align*}
1-m-bwa & \quad jr-kw-sop-el-igw-a & a-ma-bwe \\
AUG-9-dog & \quad 9-PRS-throw-APPL-PASS-FV & AUG-6-stone
\end{align*}
\]

‘A/the dog is thrown stones at.’ [all examples elicited]

4.2.8 Fossilized Passive

For Proto-Bantu, the passive extension has been reconstructed with two allo-
morphs *-ʊ/-* ibʊ, the latter of which came to be used only with vowel-final bases
(Schadeberg 2003a: 78). While the reflex of the longer passive extension is pro-
ductive in Nyakyusa (§4.2.7), the short allomorph is only found in a relatively
small number of lexicalized cases. These have in most cases undergone a se-
matic shift, as shown in the following examples.

(58)

\[
\begin{align*}
gogwa & \quad \text{‘dream; have vision’} & < goga & \text{‘kill; destroy’} \\
komwa & \quad \text{‘sob’} & < koma & \text{‘hit’} \\
logwa & \quad \text{‘copulate’} & < loga & \text{‘bewitch’} \\
milwa & \quad \text{‘drown’} & < mila & \text{‘swallow; devour’} \\
podwa & \quad \text{‘fail to; miss’} & < ponda & \text{‘forge’} \\
tolwa & \quad \text{‘be burdened, weak’} & < tola & \text{‘defeat’}
\end{align*}
\]

Some of these fossilized passives are transitive:

(59)

\[
\begin{align*}
ibwa & \quad \text{‘forget (tr.)’} & < iba & \text{‘steal’} \\
ysukwa & \quad \text{‘miss sadly (tr.)’} & < yuka & \text{‘be resurrected’}
\end{align*}
\]

For some of these short passives, no underived base is available, but commu-
tations can be found in most cases (60). With other verbs that appear from their
shape to be fossilized passives, neither is attested and it may be questionable
whether diachronically these verbs constitute passives at all (61). However, all
of these verbs except ilaamwa pattern together with fossilized passives in the
formation of their passive stems; see §6.4.2.2.

---

13. This example created some amusement, as it also allows for a reading of the subject being the
instrument, hence cannibalism.

14. Schumann (1899: 36) observes for a number of stems that “[s]ome verbs are only formally
passives, but also concerning formation of the perfect deviate from the regular passive form
(deponentia)” (translated from the original German, BP). See Good (2007) for a discussion of
dependency in Bantu.
4 Verbal Derivation

(60)  

fukwa  ‘be full beyond capacity’ cf. fukula ‘dig up’
sulwa  ‘dare to, presume’ cf. sulula ‘pour’
keelwa  ‘be plentiful’ no *keela or commutations
kunwa  ‘be in great need’ no *kuna or commutations

(61)  

ilaamwa  ‘disregard, doubt’ no *(i)llaama attested
nyonywa  ‘long for, desire’ no *nyonya attested
miimwa  ‘crave, envy’ < *miim ‘sprinkle’?

The fossilized passive extension often co-occurs with the applicative (62). It is further apparent in a number of deverbal nouns (63).

(62)  

agɪlwa  ‘diminish (by); lack’ < aga  ‘diminish (tr.)’
kʊbɪlwa  ‘suffer’ < kʊba  ‘beat; ring’
lakɪlwa  ‘choke (on)’ cf. ʊlʊlaka  ‘great thirst’
tumukɪlwa  ‘be(come) short on; late for’ cf. tumula  ‘cut; come to decision’
ʊmɪlwa  ‘be thirsty (for)’ < ʊma  ‘dry; wither’

(63)  

ʊmfwalwa  ‘clothing, dress’ < fwala  ‘dress, wear’
iikolwa  ‘shell’ < kola  ‘grasp, hold’
ɪkɪsʊʊjwa  ‘porridge from maize milk’ < sʊʊja  ‘filter, strain’
ʊntʊmwa  ‘slave, servant’ < tʊma  ‘send’

When asked in elicitation to form true passives of fossilized passives, the language assistants replaced the fossilized extension (or what is treated as such) with the productive long passive extension:

(64)  

ibwa  ‘forget’ > ibigwa  ‘be forgotten’
milwa  ‘drown’ > miligwa  ‘be drowned at’ (loc subject)
miimwa  ‘crave, envy’ > miimigwa  ‘be craved for’
ilaamwa  ‘disregard, doubt’ > ilaamigwa  ‘be disregarded, doubted’

However, this was felt to be an artificial device, and with some roots it creates ambiguity (65). Topicalization of the patient/theme through fronting (66) was suggested as more natural for such verb constructions.

(65)  

a.  

ɪngamu jangʊ jɪ-kw-ɪgw-a nagwe  
1. ‘My name is being forgotten by him/her.’
2. ‘My name is being stolen by him/her.’ [ET]

b.  

ɪnjosi jɪ-kʊ-gog-ɪgw-a nagwe  
1. ‘A dream is dreamt by him/her.’
2. ‘A dream is killed by him/her.’ [ET]
4.2 Verbal extensions

(66) a. i-n-gamu j-angʊ i-kʊ-j-iibw-a
    AUG-9-name 9-POS.1SG 1-PRS-9-forget-FV
    '(As for) my name, s/he forgets it.' [ET]

b. i-n-josi i-kʊ-jri-gogw-a
    AUG-9-dream 1-PRS-9-dream-FV
    '(As for) the dream, s/he dreams it.' [ET]

4.2.9 Neuter

The neuter (also commonly called stative) extension has the underlying shape -ɪk (allomorphs -ek, -ik; see §4.2.1). The neuter promotes the object of a transitive verb to the subject of a now intransitive verb, which is construed as potentially or factually experiencing a certain state. (67) gives some examples. Further research is needed to determine the productivity and the semantic and syntactic constraints on the use of the neuter.

(67) malɪka ‘finish (intr.), be finished’ < mala ‘finish (tr.)’
manyɪka ‘be known; be famous’ < manya ‘know’
nweka ‘be drinkable’ < nwa ‘drink’
oneka ‘gush; be spilled, scattered’ < ona ‘spill’
onangɪka ‘be(come) spoiled; perish’ < onanga ‘destroy’
ongeleka ‘increase (intr.)’ < ongela ‘increase (tr.)’
swɪlɪka ‘be(come) tame’ < swɪla ‘feed; rear; tame’

At least the following two verbs derived with the neuter extension have idiosyncratic meanings:

(68) boneka ‘happen; also: appear, be seen’ < bona ‘see’
silɪka ‘faint’ < sila ‘protest by refusal (tr.)’

Unlike with the passive, the original agent or force of a neuter verb cannot be expressed:

(69) *ʊ-n-nyambala i-kʊ-bon-ek-a (na=)a-ba-ndʊ
    AUG-1-man 1-PRS-SEE-NEUT-FV (COM=)AUG-2-Person
    (intended: ‘The man is seen by people.’)

(70) *i-n-jʊni si-la si-kʊ-peeny-ek-a
    AUG-10-bird 10-DIST 10-PRS-REMOVE_FEATHERS-NEUT-FV
4 Verbal Derivation

\[(\text{na=}a\text{-}ba\text{-}kiikʊ\,\,\,\,(\text{com=}\text{aug}\text{-}2\text{-}woman)}\]
(intended: 'Those birds have their feathers plucked by women."

\[(71)\text{ ɪɪ-nyumba } 1\text{-}ji \text{jɪ-kʊ-jeng-ek-a} \]
AUG-house(9) AUG-PROX.9 9-PRS-build-NEUT-FV
\[(\text{na=}a\text{-}ba\text{-}fundi}\]
(intended: 'This house is being built by workers."

With one verb the combination of neuter and passive is attested: malikigwa ‘run out’ < mala ‘finish (tr)."

4.2.10 Intensive

The intensive extension has the underlying shape -\textit{ɪlɪl} (and allomorphs, see §4.2.1). It denotes repetition, greater intensity and/or continuity. As the meaning of this extension is very much dependent on the semantics of the underlying verb as well as on the context, it is best illustrated with some examples from texts.

\[(72)\text{ a-lnkw-and-a } ʊ\text{-}kʊ\text{-pɪɪj-a, } \text{kangɪ a-a-} \text{ɪlɪl-ɪliile} \text{ kanunu} \]
1-NARR-start-FV AUG-15-cook-FV again 1-PST-add_spice-INTS.PFV well
fiijo INTENS
'She started to cook [it] and spiced [it] very well.' [Thieving woman]

\[(73)\text{ ba-kʊ-tuufiifye } fiijo \text{ ʊ-gwe } \text{ ʊkʊtɪ } \text{ ʊ-lɪ } \text{n-nunu, looli fi-fy-ɪma} \]
2-2SG-praise.PFV INTENS AUG-2SG COMP 2SG-COP 1-good but 8-8-thigh
fy-ako fi-kmd-ɪlɪl-e ʊ-bʊ-nywamu
8-POSS.2SG 8-pass-INTS.PFV AUG-14-big
'They have praised you a lot, that you are a good person, but your thighs are too big [lit. have intensively surpassed size].' [Hare and Hippo]

\[(74)\text{ bo muu} \text{~} \text{mo iisib-ɪlɪl-e } ʊ\text{-}n-kasi gw-a\]
as REDUPL-REF.18 1.be(come)_accustomed-INTS.PFV AUG-1-wive 1-ASSOC
Pakyɪndɪ, a-lnku-\text{bʊxʊk-a} kʊ-kw-aganɪl-a n=ʊ-n-nyambala ʊ-jʊ-ngɪ P.
1-NARR-go-FV 17-15-meet-FV COM=AUG-1-man AUG-1-other
kʊ-\text{n-gʊnda} gw-a ma-jabʊ g-a n-dɒme Pakyɪndɪ
17-3-field 3-ASSOC 6-cassava 6-ASSOC 1-husband P.
'Just as she was very accustomed to do, Pakyɪndɪ's wife went to meet with another man in Pakyɪndɪ's cassava field.' [Sokoni and Pakyɪndɪ]
4.2 Verbal extensions

(75) ʊ-ne kʊ-my-angʊ kʊ-no n-gʊ-fuma, n-dɪ malafyale.
     AUG-1SG 17-4-POSS.1SG 17-PROX 1SG-PRS-come_from-FV 1SG-COP chief(1)
     mu-n-geet-elel-e=po panandi!
     2PL-1SG-look-INTS-SUBJ=PART a little
     ‘At my home where I come from I am a king. You should look at me a little!’ [Hare and Hippo]

With a number of verbs, the intensive gives an idiosyncratic reading:

(76) ambɪlɪla ‘receive; entertain guests’ < ambə ‘hold out to receive’
bombelela ‘weed’ < bombə ‘work; do’
endelela ‘continue’ < enda ‘walk, travel’
keetelela ‘take care of; watch’ < keeta ‘watch’
kwɪbɪlɪla ‘fan, flap’ < kwبثa ‘beat; ring’
paatɪlɪla ‘prune’ < paata ‘way of harvesting’
tabɪlɪla ‘stammer’ < taba ‘extend; crawl’

A handful of verbs feature -ɪɪl/-eel (77). Where the underived root is available, a comparison of meaning suggests that these verbs feature lexicalized intensives where the first /l/ has dropped out.

(77) bʊʊkɪɪlwa ‘drown and be carried by water’ < bʊʊka ‘go’
boteela ‘be calm; be settled’ < bota ‘be calm’
eleela ‘float’
embeela ‘wander; prostitute’
obeela ‘rumble, scorn’
ogeela ‘swim’ < oga ‘bathe (intr.)’
tendeela ‘peep’

4.2.11 Separative

There are two separative extensions in Nyakyusa, one yielding transitive verbs (-ʊl) and one yielding intransitive ones (-ʊk). See §4.2.1 for morphophonological processes affecting the vowel quality of these extensions. Schadeberg (2003a: 78) characterizes the abstract semantic core of the separative as “movement out of some original position”. Other common labels in Bantu studies include reversive and inversive. Although the separative extensions are essentially unproductive, derived verbs are frequent in the lexicon. The following list gives some examples:
4 Verbal Derivation

(78) baalola ‘widen (tr.)’ – baaloka ‘bloss, expand’ < baala ‘thrive’
bulutula ‘shell corn’ – bulutuka ‘collapse’
fygola ‘sprain’ – fyogoka ‘be(come) sprained’
hobola ‘free, relax’ – hoboka ‘be(come) happy’
kingola ‘uncover’ – kingoka ‘be(come) uncovered’ < kinga ‘cover’
lumbula ‘expand’ – lumbuka ‘stretch, expand’
pagola ‘force open’ – pagoka ‘be(come) dislocated’
pindola ‘convert’ – pindoka ‘repent’ < pinda ‘bend’
konyola ‘break; harvest’ – konyoka ‘be(come) broken’
tonola ‘dab’ – tonoka ‘bounce’
kuupula ‘uproot’ – kuupuka ‘be uprooted’

As can be observed in (78), there is frequent commutation between the two separative extensions. This is a strong tendency rather than an absolute rule. Other attested commutations are with the impositive (§4.2.14) and positional (§4.2.13) extensions. The separative extensions are also found in denominal derivations. If the underlying stem ends in a first degree vowel, this is elided and the separative extension surfaces with /u/ (i.e., the height feature is maintained).

(79) biibuka ‘be(come) bad, ugly’ < biibi ‘bad, ugly’
gangola ‘treat medically, heal’ < unganga ‘doctor; healer’
niinuka ‘decrease (intr.)’ < niini ‘little’
pimboka ‘be(come) short’ < pimba ‘short’

In a few verbs, two separative extensions are found. With the exception of sʊngʊlʊla (80), the separative intransitive follows the separative transitive (81).

(80) sʊngʊlʊla ‘dissolve’ cf. sʊngola ‘choose; sift’

(81) bululuka ‘scatter (intr.)’ cf. bulula ‘scatter (tr.)’
bunguluka ‘toss and turn’ < *búng ‘wrap up’
kololoka ‘slacken’ < kola ‘grasp, hold’
kunguluka ‘foretell, prophecy’ < kunga ‘pour out’
sololoka ‘descend; appear (spirit)’ < solola ‘prophecy’
sululuka ‘drip’ cf. sulula ‘pour’

4.2.12 Tentive

The tentive extension has the shape -at. It is not productive and relatively few verbs are found that contain this suffix. Schadeberg (2003a: 77) notes that the semantic core for this Bantu extension can be stated as “actively making firm
contact”. This characterization holds for Nyakyusa in most cases, see the list in (82). No noticeable pattern of commutation is attested.

(82)  
- finyatila ‘put close to’
- fumbata ‘enclose in hands or mouth’
- isunyata ‘brood; ponder’
- kambatula ‘grip’
- lalata ‘become paralytic’
- pagata ‘put in lap, pull to chest; hold child’

4.2.13 Positional

The non-productive positional extension has the shape -am. A common semantic element of assuming a physical posture or position can be observed (Schadeberg 2003a: 75). All Nyakyusa verbs derived by means of the positional extension are inchoative. The positional appears not to be productive in Nyakyusa. The following list gives some representative examples.

(83)  
- alama ‘settle at bottom; duck’
- asama ‘gape’
- batama ‘be(come) quiet, silent’
- fugama ‘kneel’
- kupama ‘lie on stomach’
- egama ‘lean’

Some positional verbs have their transitive counterpart formed with the combination of the positional and impositive extensions (84), while others replace the positional with the impositive (85). In a few cases, both devices are attested without any apparent difference in meaning (86). Further commutations include the separative (§4.2.11) (87).

(84) Positional plus impositive:
- bilamika ‘bend (tr.)’ < bilama ‘bend (intr.)’
- gundamika ‘bend over/down’ < gundama ‘stoop, incline’
- telamika ‘lower’ < telama ‘be(come) low’

(85) Commutation between positional and impositive:
- batama ‘be(come) quiet, silent’ cf. batika ‘soothe’
- pingama ‘turn sideways (intr.)’ cf. pingika ‘set across’
4 Verbal Derivation

(86) Commutation as well as additive derivation:

- **egama** ‘lean (intr.)’
- **cf. egeka** ‘lean (tr.)’
  > **egamika** ‘lean (tr.)’
- **sulama** ‘bend’
- **cf. sulika** ‘turn upside down’
  > **sulamika** ‘turn upside down’

(87) Commutation between positional and separative:

- **alama** ‘settle at bottom’
- **cf. alola** ‘remove from top’
- **sulama** ‘bend’
- **cf. suluka** ‘descend’
- **gasama** ‘open mouth in surprise’
- **cf. gasoka** ‘be astonished’

4.2.14 Impositive

The impositive has the underlying shape -ik. Allomorphs are -ek, -ik (see §4.2.1; also note the exceptions below). It is thus homophonous to the neuter extension (§4.2.9). The core meaning of the impositive may be paraphrased as “to put (sth.) into some position” (Schadeberg 2003a: 73). The following list provides some examples.

(88) **bambika** ‘arrange in line’ < **bamba** ‘stand in line’
- **bika** ‘put; store; calve’ < *bá ‘dwell; be; become’
- **jubika** ‘dip, soak’
- **jumbika** ‘praise’ < **jumba** ‘swell (river)’
- **olobeka** ‘soak (tr.)’ < **oloba** ‘get wet’
- **fubika** ‘soak (tr.)’
- **tegeka** ‘set a trap for’ < **tega** ‘trap; catch’

The impositive extension can be considered the transitive counterpart to the positional extension, with which a number of commutations are attested (see §4.2.13). Other commutations include the separative (89). In one verb, the impositive is found as the transitive counterpart to the extensive; see §4.2.15.

(89) **anika** ‘set out to dry’ **cf. anula** ‘remove from drying’
- **baatika** ‘arrange; fix’ **cf. baatola** ‘offload, unload’
- **bambika** ‘arrange’ **cf. bambola** ‘peel’
- **fyika** ‘insert’ **cf. fyola** ‘remove’
- **limbika** ‘accumulate’ **cf. limbola** ‘serve out; gather honey’
- **londika** ‘pile up’ **cf. londola** ‘take cows out; divide’
- **sulika** ‘turn upside down’ **cf. sulula** ‘pour’
4.2 Verbal extensions

In a few cases, what appears to be the impositive extension is found with a first degree vowel /i/ that cannot be accounted for by any regularity:

(90)  

\begin{align*}
\text{imika} & \quad \text{‘erect; bring to halt; respect’} \\
\text{imika} & \quad \text{‘stand (up), stop’} \\
\text{imila} & \quad \text{‘preside’} \\
\text{imila} & \quad \text{‘dry; wither’} \\
\text{imila} & \quad \text{‘dry; wither’} \\
\text{bina} & \quad \text{‘fall sick’?} \\
\text{bina} & \quad \text{‘malicious’?} \\
\text{binaka} & \quad \text{‘spoil, ruin, destroy’} \\
\text{bina} & \quad \text{‘fall sick’?} \\
\text{bina} & \quad \text{‘malicious’?} \\
\text{kitaka} & \quad \text{‘set up; stick into ground’} \\
\end{align*}

4.2.15 Extensive

The extensive extension has the shape -al. It is unproductive in Nyakyusa. There is no overarching semantic element for verbs derived with this extension. As observed by Schadeberg (2003a: 77), there is a certain tendency for it to occur with verbs denoting two semantic fields: being in a spread-out position (91) and debilitation or illness (92). Some verbs with miscellaneous meanings are given in (93). No reoccurring pattern of commutation is attested in the data.

(91)  

\begin{align*}
\text{bagala} & \quad \text{‘carry load on shoulder’} \\
\text{twagalala} & \quad \text{‘get seated, sit; live, inhabit; stay’} \\
\text{twala} & \quad \text{‘carry load, bring’} \\
\text{fulala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) hurt, injured’} \\
\text{kalala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) angry annoyed’} \\
\text{katala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) tired, exhausted’} \\
\text{kangala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) old and worn’} \\
\text{lemala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) crippled, disabled’} \\
\end{align*}

(92)  

\begin{align*}
\text{angala} & \quad \text{‘be well, feel fine; converse, talk, be in good company’} \\
\text{langala} & \quad \text{‘glisten, glitter, shine’} \\
\text{niongala} & \quad \text{‘be(come) bent, crooked, twisted’} \\
\text{syala} & \quad \text{‘remain’} \\
\end{align*}

(93)  

\begin{align*}
\text{lambalala} & \quad \text{‘lie down, sleep’} \\
\text{lambalika} & \quad \text{‘make lie down, put to bed’} \\
\text{tambalala} & \quad \text{‘lie flat’} \\
\end{align*}
4.3 Combinations of verbal extensions

Often more than one verbal extension appears on a single verb base. In the follow-
ing sub-sections, some generalizations over the respective order of morphemes
will be given (§4.3.1), followed by a discussion of the derivation of pluractionals
by means of combining the reciprocal/associative and the causative (§4.3.2) and
a discussion of the shape of applicativized causatives (§4.3.3).

4.3.1 Morpheme order

When several extensions appear in a verbal base, their respective ordering is sub-
ject to several restrictions. The group of unproductive extensions appear closest
to the root and follow the ordering illustrated in Figure 4.1.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Positional</th>
<th>Impositive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Extensive</td>
<td>Separative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tentive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4.1: Order of unproductive verbal extensions

The following examples illustrate the attested combinations of unproductive
extensions:\textsuperscript{15}

(95)  a. Positional and impositive:
    \textit{gundamika} ‘bend over/down (tr.)’
    b. Extensive and impositive:
    \textit{lambalika} ‘put to bed’
    c. Extensive and separative:
    \textit{nyagaliska} ‘get well (health)’

The more productive extensions follow the unproductive ones. The passive
(including the fossilized passive) always occupies the last position.

(96)  a. Fossilized passive:
    \textit{kəbolwa} (‘kəb-ɪl-ʊ-a) ‘suffer’
    \textit{umilwa} (‘um-ɪl-ʊ-a) ‘be thirsty (for)’
    \textit{agɪlwa} (‘ag-ɪl-ʊ-a) ‘diminish (by); lack’
    \textit{tumukɪlwa} (‘tum-ʊk-ɪl-ʊ-a) ‘be(come) short on; late for’

\textsuperscript{15}The verb \textit{pangalatula} ‘destroy by taking part after part out’ (cf. \textit{pangʊlə} ‘dismantle’) has the
sequence -\textit{al-at-oj}, which resembles the combination of extensive plus tentative plus separative.
It is unclear if this is a chance resemblance or a case of three unproductive extensions.
b. Productive passive:

- *bukiligwa* (‘bûk-îl-ɪgʊ-a') ‘be put for’
- *meleligwa* (‘mel-îl-ɪgʊ-a) ‘owe’
- *bombeleligwa* (‘bomb-îlîl-ɪgʊ-a) ‘be weeded’
- *manyisigwa* (‘many-îsî-ɪgʊ-a) ‘be taught’
- *fumusigwa* (‘fum-uk-i-ɪgʊ-a) ‘be announced’
- *îmikigwa* (‘îm-îk-ɪgʊ-a) ‘be respected’
- *saamikisigwa* (‘saam-îsi-il-ɪgʊ-a) ‘be made exile to’

A causative -i, either the short causative1 -i or the last segment of a split-up long causative2 -is-i, normally occupies the last position within the base, unless it is followed by the passive.16

(97) *fulasania* (‘fulal<an>i-a) ‘hurt each other’

*ʊlɪ<isania* (‘ʊl-ɪkɪs<an>i-a) ‘sell each other sthg.’

Apart from these generalizations, the ordering of the productive extensions in Nyakyusa requires a dedicated study of its own, given the high number of logical possibilities and the question of how morpheme order, meaning and syntax relate to each other. As Hyman (2002) points out, in many Bantu languages the relative order of certain verbal extensions follows a default pattern, which can have both a compositional reading (morpheme order reflecting semantic scope) and a non-compositional one, while the opposite order exclusively receives the compositional reading. Further, Lusekelo (2013) indicates that the relative position of the applicative in Nyakyusa may be linked to the semantic role of the argument it licenses.

Lastly, a few cases of doubled verbal extensions are attested in the data. In most cases it is unclear what the semantic and syntactic functions of these are. Doubling of a verbal extension may serve the purpose of fulfilling the requirement for both a default morpheme order and a compositional order at the same time (Hyman 2002),

(98) a. Two applicatives:

- *lu<lanila* ‘eat together with sb.’ < *lya* ‘eat’
- *lw<lanila* ‘fight with each other for’ < *lwa* ‘fight’

b. Two reciprocals/associatives:

- *sop<anilana* ‘throw to each other’ < *sopa* ‘throw’

---

16 See §4.2.2 for the process of spirantization induced by the causative1 -i, and §4.3.3 for the formation of applicativized causatives.
4 Verbal Derivation

c. Two causatives:

\textit{tiimisyansya} ‘make each other herd’$^{17}$ \textit{< tiima} ‘herd’

4.3.2 Complex derivations: pluractional

The combination of the reciprocal and causative extensions often gives a pluractional reading. The range of possible meanings includes re-iteration, intensification or the involvement of multiple subjects or objects (also cf. Schumann 1899: 79). This combination is used on transitive bases and verbs of motion (99a, 99b), the only attested exception being the intransitive \textit{sulumania} ‘afflict, be sorry’. With verbs denoting ‘to return’, this combination gives a cyclic reading. When the short causative -\textit{i} is used, sometimes spirantization takes place. This seems not to be predictable and is probably a function of time depth and lexicalization. Concerning the length of the vocalic segment in the reciprocal, see §4.2.5.

Botne (2008: 86) and Gray (n.d.) observe a similar pluractional function of \textit{an-\textit{y}} / \textit{an-\textit{i}} in neighbouring Ndali and Kisi G67 respectively and Kisseberth (2003: 557) for Makhuwa P30 gives \textit{ú-hòkòl-an-\textit{yàn}-ih-a} ‘to go and come back the same day’. All these suggest that the combination of the causative and the reciprocal yielding pluractionality might have a wider distribution in Bantu.

The intransitive counterpart to the pluractional has the shape -\textit{anik} and can be analysed as consisting of the reciprocal -\textit{an} and neuter -\textit{\textit{tk}} extensions. It is used on transitive as well as intransitive bases (99c).

(99) a. Pluractionals derived from transitive verbs:

\begin{align*}
\textit{buuta} & \quad \text{‘cut; slaughter’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{buutania} \quad \text{‘cut into pieces’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{buutanika} \quad \text{‘break into pieces (intr.)’} \\
\textit{joba} & \quad \text{‘speak to/about’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{jobesania} \quad \text{‘dispute about’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{jobanika} \quad \text{‘speak much’} \\
\textit{longa} & \quad \text{‘add spice; put together’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{longaania} \quad \text{‘join, connect (tr.)’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{longisaania} \quad \text{‘join, connect (tr.)’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{longaanika} \quad \text{‘be confused’} \\
\textit{menya} & \quad \text{‘break; chop’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{menyania} \quad \text{‘chop into pieces’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{menyanika} \quad \text{‘be chopped into pieces’} \\
\textit{nyamba} & \quad \text{‘throw’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{nyambania} \quad \text{‘scatter’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{nyambanika} \quad \text{‘disperse, be scattered’} \\
\textit{pinya} & \quad \text{‘bind; detain; fix’} \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{pinyania} \quad \text{‘splice; tie together’} \\
& \quad \rightarrow \quad \textit{pinyanika} \quad \text{‘be spliced; tied manifold’}
\end{align*}

$^{17}$This example was elicited on the basis of Lusekelo (2012).
4.3 Combinations of verbal extensions

b. Pluractionals derived from verbs of motion:

- **buja** ‘return (to)’ → **bujisania** ‘go & return (same day)’
- **gomoka** ‘return; reprove’ → **gomosania** ‘go & return (same day)’
- **kinda** ‘pass’ → **kisania** ‘pass by’

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pluraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>buja</strong></td>
<td>‘return (to)’ → <strong>bujisania</strong> ‘go &amp; return (same day)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>gomoka</strong></td>
<td>‘return; reprove’ → <strong>gomosania</strong> ‘go &amp; return (same day)’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>kinda</strong></td>
<td>‘pass’ → <strong>kisania</strong> ‘pass by’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pluraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>jeeta</strong></td>
<td>‘turn pale’ → <strong>jeetanika</strong> ‘faint’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lɪla</strong></td>
<td>‘cry; sound; mourn’ → <strong>lɪlanika</strong> ‘complain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tʊʊja</strong></td>
<td>‘pant; breathe out’ → <strong>tʊʊjanika</strong> ‘pant heavily’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Pluraction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>jeeta</strong></td>
<td>‘turn pale’ → <strong>jeetanika</strong> ‘faint’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>lɪla</strong></td>
<td>‘cry; sound; mourn’ → <strong>lɪlanika</strong> ‘complain’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>tʊʊja</strong></td>
<td>‘pant; breathe out’ → <strong>tʊʊjanika</strong> ‘pant heavily’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4.3.3 Applicativized causatives

Applicativized causatives have a special form -(i)kisi / -(i)kɪf. The alternations in vowel height as described in §4.2.1 apply. When they are derived from a causativized base subject to spirantization (see §4.2.2) -kisi / -kɪf is suffixed to the underlying non-causativized base, with /k/ replacing the base-final consonant. The fricative is /f/ if the replaced consonant is a labial, and is /s/ elsewhere. In other words, it is the fricative that causative spirantization would produce.

(100) **buja** ‘return’ → **busya** ‘return (tr.)’ → **bukɪsy-a** ‘return (tr.) + APPL’

- **fulala** ‘be hurt’ → **fulasy-a** ‘hurt’ → **fulakɪsy-a** ‘hurt + APPL’
- **oga** ‘bathe’ → **osya** ‘baptise’ → **okesya** ‘baptise + APPL’
- **pyʊp̥a** ‘get warm’ → **pyʊfya** ‘warm up’ → **pyʊkɪfya** ‘warm up + APPL’

If the causativized base is derived by causative₁ -i following non-spirantizing consonants or if it is derived by causative₂ -isi, a suffix -ikisi is attached to the non-causativized base:

(101) **saama** ‘migrate’ → **saam-y-a** ‘transfer’ → **saam-ikisy-a** ‘transfer + APPL’

- **ʊla** ‘buy’ → **ʊl-isi-a** ‘sell’ → **ʊl-ikisy-a** ‘sell to/for/at’

This uncommon phonological realization of applicativized causatives has been noticed from the first treatments of Nyakyusa on. Meinhof (1966), as well as Schumann (1899), mentions this and Endemann (1900) presents an attempt at a purely phonological explanation. Unfortunately, Endemann does not discuss cases of the suffixing of -ikisi after nasals, which cannot be accounted for by his approach. In his later grammar sketch, he further gives a rather curious explanation in which he tries to link this phenomenon to distal/itive ka- (Endemann 1914: 51).
4 Verbal Derivation

The examples given by Botne (2008: 76) suggest a comparable formation in Ndali. Wolff (1905: 63) describes a similar phenomenon for neighbouring Kinga, where applicativized causativizes take the shape -ihitsa, although without replacing the final consonant.

Although non-transparent from a synchronic point of view, the morphophonology of applicativized causatives finds a diachronic explanation in a sequence of analogy formations, as Hyman (2003) plausibly illustrates (Berger 1938: 266f develops a parallel interpretation). In this scenario, the point of departure would have been a stage in which infixing of the applicative, together with a cyclic application of spirantization (thus e.g. sook-a > soos-i-a > soos-el-i-a > *soos-es-i-a), took place, followed by despirantizationspirantization of the root-final consonant (> sook-es-i-a). See Nyamwezi F22 (Schadeberg & Maganga 1992: 20ff) for a comparable case. In the next stage, despirantizationspirantization to /k/ was generalized; note that spirantization leads to a merger of the six non-labials affected. In the case of non-labials, one possible interpretation of the sequence /kis/ would be that the final consonant spirantized in the first place was being post-posed. This re-analysis was then extended to cases of labials, yielding -ktfi. Once established, this pattern of applicativized causativizes surfacing as /kt[s, f]i/ was extended to non-spirantizing consonants (introducing what Hyman labels an “extra k”) and thus fully generalized.

The main source for Hyman’s interpretation is the chronolect described by Schumann (1899), in which causative1 -i is the most productive of the two derivations. The present data show that Nyakyusa has gone one step further, extending this pattern to causative2 -TSI and thus generalizing the requirement that any applicativized causative must surface with the sequence /k[s, f]/ (and respective vowel alternations).18

4.4 Denominal verbs

A number of verbal stems are derived from nominals (including adjectives) by means of suffixation. This seems not to be a particularly productive process. Three monosegmental suffixes are found in denominal verbs: while -p yields intransitive verbs (102), -l seems to yield only transitives (104). -k (103) is not

18Lusekelo (2012) also discusses the shape of applicativized causatives in Nyakyusa. Though he rejects Hyman’s (2003) analysis, at no point throughout his work does he give either an alternative reconstruction for the diachronic origin of these forms, or a motivated explanation for their spread to non-spirantizing bases and forms containing the long causative2 -TSI.
associated with any specific valency. Further, the separative extensions are employed in noun/adjective to verb derivation; see §4.2.11.

(102) kalipa ‘become fermented, sour’ < kal ‘spicy; strict; sour’
    kiikosipa ‘grow up to puberty (girl)’ < unkiikos ‘woman’
    kusosipa ‘become old and worn’ < kusos ‘old’
    tongoosipa ‘lie’ < ubetongoos ‘lie’
    tungupa ‘lie’ < ulutungu ‘testicle’

(103) bulika ‘hit with the fist’ < ikibuli ‘fist’
    mulika ‘glow’ < umuli ‘light, brightness’
    tolika ‘drip’ < iitoli ‘drop’
    pafuka ‘be greedy’ < pafu ‘greedy’
    tiituka ‘be dark, black’ < tiit ‘black’

(104) heelula ‘abuse’ < iiheelu ‘abusive language’
    tusula ‘shoot’ < indusu ‘gun, rifle’

4.5 Partial reduplication

A number of verbs begin with two identical sequences of consonant and vowel. For many of these, the path of derivation is hard to track down. Possible sources are partial reduplication of a verbal base, reduplicated nouns or ideophones. See also Schadeberg (2003a: 79) for a pan-Bantu perspective and Seidel (2008: 262) for a similar observation in Yeyi R41. For some of these verbs, a semantic element of repetition, oscillation or intensification can be observed. Examples are given in (105), ordered by the attested patterns of reduplication.

(105) a. Shape C(G1)V1.C(G1)V1C2:
    fufula ‘endure, tolerate’ < fula ‘hurt’?
    lelema ‘have shaky voice’
    tetema ‘shake, shiver; be afraid; care for’
    bwabwata ‘blab, talk nonsense’
    bwabwaja ‘blab, talk nonsense’
    mwemweka ‘glitter’ cf. mweka ‘glow’
4 Verbal Derivation

b. Shape $C_1V_1C_1V_1V_2$:

- *boboota*  
  ‘grunt’
- *hohoola*  
  ‘jeer, laugh at’
- *ng’ong’oola*  
  ‘grimace at’
- *ng’ung’uuta*  
  ‘whine’
- *nyinyiila*  
  ‘squint’
- *sisiila*  
  ‘close (eyes)’
- *sosoola*  
  ‘point finger at’

The list in (106) illustrates verbs containing reduplication of the initial syllable as well as further suffixes.

(106)  

a. Shape $C_1(G_1)V_1C_1(G_1)V_1V_2$:

- *kakajʊla*  
  ‘break by chewing’ < *kajʊla*  
  ‘force open’
- *myamyasya*  
  ‘smoothen out’ < *myasya*  
  ‘smear, spread’
- *nyenyemusya*  
  ‘excite’
- *i-ng’weng’wesya*  
  ‘grumble’
- *papatana*  
  ‘be squeezed together’ < *pát*  
  ‘hold’
- *popotoka*  
  ‘bend, twist’ < *pota*  
  ‘steer; twist’
- *popotola*  
  ‘strain; strangle’
- *sasanusya*  
  ‘overturn; annul’ < *sanusya*  
  ‘alter’
- *sosomela*  
  ‘protude’

b. Shape $C_1V_1NC_1V_1V_2$:

- *jenjelʊka*  
  ‘dawn’
- *junjumala*  
  ‘crouch’

c. Shapes $C_1V_1C_1V_1V_2 / C_1V_1C_1V_1NC_2$:

- *bobonjala*  
  ‘be(come) flat’
- *babanjala*  
  ‘be(come) flat’
- *luluutila*  
  ‘ululate’
- *nyonyoofya*  
  ‘attract desire’ < *nyoofya*  
  ‘allure’
- *poposotka*  
  ‘stagger’
5 Verb categorization

This chapter deals with the classification of verbal expressions according to their inherent aspectual potential (Aristotelian aspect). The focus is on lexical verbs, although some observations on the phrasal level are also included. After a short introduction to the distinction between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs (§5.1), the language internal diagnostics for distinguishing verb classes will be presented (§5.2), followed by a discussion of each Nyakyusa verb class (§5.3).

5.1 Introduction

As mentioned in §1.4.3.1, an essential lexical distinction in many, if not all, Bantu languages, is the one between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs, i.e. those verbs that encode a change-of-state as well as a resultant state on the one hand, and those that do not on the other hand. A prototypical case of an inchoative verb in Nyakyusa is kalala ‘be(come) angry’. With the aspectually imperfective (§6.5.1) this verb denotes an ongoing change-of-state (1) (habitual/generic and futurate readings aside). When used with the present perfective (§6.5.3), kalala typically has a stative meaning of being angry (2).

(1)  i-ku-kalal-a  
     1-PRS-be(come)_angry-FV  
     ‘S/he is becoming angry.’

(2)  a-kaleele  
     1-be(come)_angry.PFV  
     (Default reading:) ‘S/he is angry.’

At first sight, this might seem like the result of a conversational implicature: stating that one has become angry normally serves to indicate one’s state of anger. That this resultant state is in fact part of the verb’s lexical meaning becomes clear by contrasting it with a non-inchoative verb like fika ‘arrive’. Like kalala, this verb has a coming-to-be reading in the (3). However, when used in the present perfective it does not denote a state (4).
5 Verb categorization

(3) i-kʊ-fik-a
   1-PRS-arrive-FV
   ‘S/he is arriving.’

(4) a-fik-ile
   1-arrive-PFV
   ‘S/he has arrived.’

The distinction between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs is not a mere question of translation, but has morphosyntactic repercussions. An inchoative like kalala ‘be(come) angry’ that is inflected for perfective aspect can stand as the complement of the persistive auxiliary (§6.6.2), where it denotes a continuing state (5). A non-inchoative verb like fika ‘arrive’ is not licensed in this construction (6), as it does not have a resultant state as part of its lexical meaning. Instead, to denote a persistent state, it is necessary to resort to other grammatical devices, in this case the existential construction (ex. 7; see §10.2.3).

(5) a-kaalɪ a-kaleele
   1-PERS 1-be(come)_angry.PFV
   ‘S/he is still angry.’

(6) * a-kaalɪ a-fik-ile
   1-PERS 1-arrive-PFV
   (intended: ‘S/he is still present due to his/her arrival.’)

(7) a-kaalɪ a-li=po
   1-PERS 1-COP=16
   ‘S/he is still present.’

Botne & Kershner (2000: 165), in a discussison of Zulu S42, summarize inchoative verbs as expressing “a change of condition or location of the experiencer or patient”. For a verb denoting a mental state such as anger, this is fairly transparent from the perspective of English as the metalanguage. It is important to notice, however, that inchoative verbs are not limited to typical experiencer verbs. For instance, ‘to carry’, an activity in English, is expressed by an inchoative verb in Nyakyusa (8). The distinction between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs is thus central to tense and aspect inflection in Nyakyusa.

(8) (a-kaalɪ) a-twele ɪ-kɪ-kapʊ
    (1-PERS) 1-carry.PFV AUG-7-basket
    ‘S/he is (still) carrying a/the basket.’
The basic opposition between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs will serve as a guiding line through most parts of the description of tense and grammatical aspect in Nyakyusa. A closer look, however, reveals more fine-grained distinctions and patternings of verbs. This is the topic of the following sections, which are intended as a first systematic approach towards Aristotelian aspect in Nyakyusa, ultimately to be enhanced by further research, and which is among the first such analyses for Bantu languages.\textsuperscript{1} The analysis presented here is based on some 50 verbs which have been tested in targeted elicitation with at least two speakers each. Where available, uses in texts were also considered.

5.2 Diagnostic criteria

Based on the tenets of radical selection theories of aspect (§1.4.3.1), a combination of various language-specific semantic and syntactic diagnostic criteria have been applied to determine the lexicalized phasal structure of the verbs in question. Some of the diagnostics are adapted from Botne’s (2008) and Kershner’s (2002) work on Ndali and Sukwa, others are taken from the typological literature or have emerged during the course of the present study.

As indicated in the previous section, only inchoative verbs, that is those verbs that lexicalize a Coda state, are compatible with the syntactic frame of the persistive aspect auxiliary plus a complement inflected for perfective aspect. Another diagnostic criterion is the possible readings with the imperfective simple present (§6.5.1), or, more precisely, whether a progressive reading is available. As an extension of this, this study tested whether the verbs in question allow for a single event reading in the syntactic frame of the persistive aspect auxiliary plus the simple present, and if so, which phase of the eventuality this denotes: A persistent process is taken as an indication of an extended Nucleus phase, whereas the lack of such a reading, but the possibility to coerce a reading of a persistently sustained result state is taken as secondary evidence for the lexical encoding of the result state. Related to the possible readings in the simple present is the verb’s behaviour with the periphrastic progressive (§6.6.1), which shows mostly similar, but slightly different selectional properties.

\textsuperscript{1}Lusekelo (2013) includes a short discussion of the topic in Nyakyusa, which unfortunately is highly unsystematic and does not include any diagnostic criteria. Concerning other Bantu languages see Mreta (1998) on Chasu G20, who applies a variation of Breu and Sasse’s framework (§1.4.3.1), Fleisch (2000) on Luchazi K13, also within the Breu-Sasse framework and Kershner (2002), Botne et al. (2006), Seidel (2008), Botne (2008) on Sukwa M301, Saamia JE34, Yeyi R41, Ndali M301, respectively. The latter authors apply Botne and Kershner’s approach to Aristotelian aspect.
A further diagnostic criterion for the classification of a given verb is its compatibility with the time-span phrase ‘take X time’. Only telic verbs, that is, verbs that encode an inherent endpoint or change-of-state, are predicted to appear readily in this construction, although repair readings are available for other types of verbs (see e.g. Dowty 1979: 57).

Further indications of the phasal structure of lexical verbs are found in their behaviour with phasal verbs (‘Aktionsart verbs’ or ‘aspectualizers’), which patterns in significant ways with the tense-aspect constructions presented so far. The ingressive auxiliary anda ‘begin, start’ denotes the beginning of the state-of-affairs encoded in the lexical verb. This can be a subphase of a single occurrence as well as the beginning of multiple occurrences. In the latter sense it can also be used to single out the first of various occurrences (9). Similarly, the auxiliaries mala ‘finish’ (10) and leka ‘cease, stop’ (11) can refer to the termination or cessation of either a single or multiple occurrences.

(9) tw-and ile v-kʊ-mog-a
   1PL-begin-PFV AUG-15-dance-FV
   1. ‘We have (just) started dancing.’
   2. ‘We have begun to dance (e.g. repeatedly or as a new habit).’
   3. ‘We have begun (were the first) to dance.’

(10) tʊ-mal ile v-kʊ-mog-a
   1PL-finish-PFV AUG-15-dance-FV
   1. ‘We have (just) finished dancing.’
   2. ‘We are done dancing (multiple times).’

(11) tu-lek ile v-kʊ-mog-a
   1PL-cease-PFV AUG-15-dance-FV
   1. ‘We have (just) stopped dancing.’
   2. ‘We have given up dancing.’

What is relevant as a diagnostic of the aspectual potential encoded in the lexical verb is the possibility of a single event reading, together with the specific phase of the eventuality that is selected: is there a pre-culmination phase (either Onset or Coda) that can be said to start? If not, is there a resultant state whose early stages anda can refer to? Likewise, is there a process (i.e. an extended Nucleus) that can be said to cease (leka) or finish (mala)? If not, does the behaviour with these phasal verbs give support for the phase structure diagnosed by means of the basic verb inflections? In the following discussion of aspectual classes,
5.2 Diagnostic criteria

it is thus the single event reading that is referred to, without excluding further readings (unless stated otherwise).

Table 5.1 gives an overview of the verb classes identified and their behaviour in the respective constructions. The labels for the individual classes follow Botne (2003a). Values in brackets refer either to criteria that are not directly applicable, but for which the semantic clash can be resolved through repair readings, or to specific readings that are conditioned by semantic factors outside of aspectuality. In both cases, these are discussed in more detail in the sections on the individual verb classes.

Table 5.1: Overview of aspectual classes. Columns with a grey background designate tentative classes; see §5.3.6. The criteria ‘prs as progressive’, ‘Persistive of prs’ and anda/mala/leka refer to a possible single event reading only; see p. 117

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Simple accomplishment</th>
<th>Transitional accomplishment</th>
<th>Transitional achievement</th>
<th>Resultative achievement</th>
<th>Inceptive achievement</th>
<th>Acute achievement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Persistive of PFV</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRS as progressive</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>yes</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistive of PRS</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Periphrastic PROG</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>result state</td>
<td>ongoing</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘take X time’ refers to</td>
<td>(n/a)</td>
<td>culmination</td>
<td>culmination</td>
<td>culmination</td>
<td>culmination</td>
<td>culmination</td>
<td>culmination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anda ‘start’ refers to</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>pre-change</td>
<td>result state</td>
<td>pre-change</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mala ‘finish’ refers to</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>leka ‘cease’ refers to</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>process</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>(result state)</td>
<td>n/a</td>
<td>n/a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5 Verb categorization

5.3 Verb classes

5.3.1 Activities

Activity verbs encode a durative nuclear phase. Their phasal structure can be schematized as in Figure 5.1 for moga ‘dance’.

![Figure 5.1: Phasal structure of activity](image)

The traditional label *activity* has been adopted for reasons of familiarity. It is important to notice that in Nyakyusa this class of verbs not only encompasses actions performed by a volitional agent, such as *kama* ‘milk’, *keeta* ‘look’, *lima* ‘cultivate’ or *lya* ‘eat’, but also dynamisms such as *bala* ‘shine (of sun)’, *timi* ‘rain’ and verbs traditionally subsumed under states, such as *swiga* ‘wonder’ and *tiila* ‘fear, obey, respect’. All of these pattern together in their syntactic and semantic behaviour. Seidel (2008: 271f) makes a similar observation for Yeyi R41. Semelfactives such as *kema* ‘bark’ or *kosomola* ‘cough’ may also be subsumed under the category of activities. These verbs normally give a series reading and otherwise pattern with activities in the relevant diagnostic criteria.

In the simple present, activity verbs denote ongoing activity or process (12), although they may also have a habitual/generic or futurate reading. Similarly, the periphrastic progressive gives an ongoing reading (13).

(12) a. i-ku-mog-a
    1-PRS-dance-FV
    ‘S/he is dancing.’

b. ni-fula    ji-ku-tim-a
    AUG-rain(9) 9-PRS-rain-FV
    ‘It is raining.’

c. i-m-bwa    ji-ku-kem-a
    AUG-9-dog 9-PRS-bark-FV
    ‘A/the dog is barking.’

(13) a. a-li pa-ku-mog-a
    1-COP 16-15-dance-FV
    ‘S/he is dancing.’
5.3 Verb classes

b. ᵇ-fula  jᵢ-lᵢ  pa-kᵢᵩ-tim-a  
   Aug-rain(9) 9-Cop 16-15-rain-fv  
   'It is raining.'  

c. ᵇ-m-bwa  jᵢ-lᵢ  pa-kᵢᵩ-kem-a  
   Aug-9-dog 9-Cop 16-15-bark-fv  
   'A/the dog is barking.'  

The simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary has a reading of a continuing process and can also have a persistent habitual/generic reading:

(14)  
   a. a-kaalᵢ  i-kᵢᵩ-mog-a  
      1-Pers 1-Prs-dance-fv  
      1. 'S/he is still dancing.'  
      2. 'S/he still dances.'  
   b. ᵇ-fula  jᵢ-kaalᵢ  jᵢ-kᵢᵩ-tim-a  
      Aug-rain(9) 9-Pers 9-Prs-rain-fv  
      1. 'It is still raining.'  
      2. 'It still rains.'  
   c. ᵇ-m-bwa  jᵢ-kaalᵢ  jᵢ-kᵢᵩ-kem-a  
      Aug-9-dog 9-Pers 9-Prs-bark-fv  
      1. 'A/the dog is still barking.'  
      2. 'A/the dog still barks.'  

In the present perfective, activity verbs denote a past eventuality (15). Note that this also holds for state-like verbs such as tiila ‘fear’ (15d). As the class of activities does not encode a resultant state, perfective aspect is not licensed in the complement of the persistive (16).

(15)  
   a. a-mog-ile  
      1-dance-PFV  
      'S/he has danced.'  
   b. ᵇ-fula  jᵢ-tim-ile  
      Aug-rain(9) 9-rain-PFV  
      'It has rained.'  
   c. ᵇ-m-bwa  jᵢ-kem-ile  
      Aug-9-dog 9-bark-PFV  
      'A/the dog has barked.'  
   d. a-kᵢᵩ-tiil-ile  
      1-2sg-fear-PFV  
      'S/he has feared you.'
5 Verb categorization

(16)  
a. * a-kaa-li a-mog-ile  
1-PERS 1-dance-PFV  
b. * n-fula jir-kaa-li jir-tim-ile  
AUG-rain(9) 9-PERS 9-rain-PFV  
c. * 1-m-bwa jir-kaa-li jir-kem-ile  
AUG-9-dog 9-PERS 9-bark-PFV  
d. * a-kaa-li a-ko-tiil-ile  
1-PERS 1-2sg-fear-PFV

As activity verbs do not encode an inherent endpoint, they are not directly compatible with the time-span verb phrase ‘take X time’. Two repair readings are available, however, and most activity verbs allow for at least one of the two. The first is a conative reading denoting the time that elapses before the beginning of the lexical act (see Dowty 1979: 57 for a similar observation for English). The second repair reading is that of a quasi-accomplishment; see p. 121 below for discussion.

(17)  
a. eeg-ile a-ka-balilo a-ka-tali ʊ-kʊ-mog-a  
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-dance-fv  
1. ‘S/he took a long time to (begin to) dance.’  
2. ‘S/he took a long time to finish dancing (i.e. at a social event).’

b. eeg-ile a-ka-balilo a-ka-tali ʊ-kʊ-ly-a  
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-eat-fv  
1. ‘S/he took a long time to begin to eat.’  
2. ‘S/he took a long time to eat (i.e. finish the meal).’

c. eeg-ile a-ka-balilo a-ka-pimb-a ʊ-kʊ-kosomol-a  
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-short AUG-15-cough-fv  
‘S/he took a short time to finish coughing (i.e. overcome illness).’

The auxiliary anda ‘begin, start’ refers to the beginning of the activity (18a, 18b), or in the case of semelfactives the beginning of the series (18c).

(18)  
a. and-ile ʊ-kʊ-mog-a  
1.begin-PFV AUG-15-dance-fv  
‘S/he has started to dance.’

b. n-fula jir-and-ile ʊ-kʊ-tim-a  
AUG-rain(9) 9-begin-PFV AUG-15-rain-fv  
‘It has started to rain.’
5.3 Verb classes

c. ɪ-m-bwa j-and-ile ū-kʊ-kem-a
    AUG-9-dog 9-begin-pfv AUG-15-bark-fv
    ’A/the dog has started to bark.’

The terminative auxiliary *mala* can be used with some but not all activity verbs. This is apparently dependent on two factors. First, a “quasi-accomplishment sense” (Binnick 1991: 176) needs to be available. Binnick, on the basis of Dowty (1979: 61), observes that this is the case when one speaks about an activity that forms part of or constitutes a specific task or habit. The second requirement is not one of phasal structure, but of thematic relations, namely that the subject be an agent or force. The latter is in agreement with the findings on simple and transitional accomplishments (§5.3.2, 5.3.3 respectively); see also Freed (1979: 135) on English *finish*. Thus compare (19a, 19b) to (19c, 19d).

(19)

a. a-mal-ile ū-kʊ-mog-a
    1-finish-pfv AUG-15-dance-fv
    ’S/he has finished dancing.’

b. ɪ-m-bwa ji-mal-ile ū-kʊ-kem-a
    AUG-9-dog 9-finish-pfv AUG-15-bark-fv
    ’The dog has finished barking.’

c. * ɪɪ-fula ji-mal-ile ū-kʊ-tim-a
    AUG-rain(9) 9-finish-pfv AUG-15-rain-fv
    (intended: ’The rain has finished.’)

d. * a-mal-ile ū-kʊ-n-diil-a
    1-finish-pfv AUG-15-1sg-fear-fv
    (intended: ’S/he is done fearing me.’)

Lastly, the egressive auxiliary *leka* denotes a cessation or interruption:

(20)

a. a-lek-ile ū-kʊ-mog-a
    1-cease-pfv AUG-15-dance-pfv
    ’S/he has stopped dancing.’

b. ɪɪ-fula ji-lek-ile ū-kʊ-tim-a
    AUG-rain(9) 9-cease-pfv AUG-15-rain-pfv
    ’It has stopped raining.’

c. ɪ-m-bwa ji-lek-ile ū-kʊ-kem-a
    AUG-9-dog 9-cease-pfv AUG-15-bark-fv
    ’A/the dog has stopped barking.’
5 Verb categorization

5.3.2 Simple accomplishments

Simple accomplishments encode an activity that is delimited by an endpoint. That is, they correspond to Vendler’s (1957) accomplishments. Following Botne (2008), the qualification simple has been adopted to distinguish them from their transitional counterpart (§5.3.3). The phasal structure of simple accomplishments can be schematized as in Figure 5.2 for pon'a 'recover'. Other lexical verbs of this class are bifwa 'ripen', lemboka 'wake up, get up' and talalila 'cool (intr.)'. Accomplishments can also be derived from activities, e.g. by means of a quantized primary object, as in lyə ingoɔkɔ soosa 'eat a whole chicken' or kama ung'ombe syoɔa 'milk all cows' (see Verkuyl 1972; Dowty 1979). The derivation of accomplishments through other means, such as measure ('walk a mile') or goal noun phrases ('walk to the park') is open to further research. Note that in Nyakyusa, objects, once they have been introduced into discourse, are often understood from context without repetition or cross-referencing. Lastly, it should be noted that not all simple accomplishments constitute actions performed by a volitional agent. The same is true for activity verbs,

![Figure 5.2: Phasal structure of simple accomplishment](image)

Like activity verbs and transitional accomplishments, simple accomplishments denote an ongoing process in the simple present (21), although they may also have a futurate and habitual or generic reading. In the same vein, the periphrastic progressive refers to the process of change (22).

(21) a. o-m-bine i-kɔ-pon-a
   AUG-1-ill 1-PRS-recover-FV
   'A/the sick person is recovering.'

b. i-kɔ-lembok-a
   1-PRS-awake-FV
   'S/he is waking up.'

c. i-kɔ-ly-a r-n-gɔkɔ j-oosa
   1-PRS-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
   'S/he is eating a whole chicken.'
5.3 Verb classes

(22)  a. ʊ-m̩-bine a-ļ pa-kʊ-pon-a
     AUG-1-ill 1-COP 16-15-recover-FV
     'A/the sick person is recovering.'

  b. a-ļ pa-kʊ-lembʊka-a
     1-COP 16-15-awake-FV
     'S/he is waking up.'

  c. a-ļ pa-kʊ-ly-a 1-n-gʊkʊ j-oosa
     1-COP 16-15-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
     'S/he is eating a whole chicken.'

As expected, the combination of persistive aspect and the simple present denotes the continuation of the process and further allows for a persistent habitu-al/generic reading:

(23)  a. ʊ-m̩-bine a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-pon-a
     AUG-1-ill 1-PERS 1-PRS-recover-FV
     1. 'A/the sick person is still recovering.'
     2. 'A/the sick person still recovers (frequently).'

  b. a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-lembʊk-a
     1-PERS 1-PRS-awake-FV
     1. 'S/he is still waking up.'
     2. 'S/he still wakes up.'

  c. a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-ly-a 1-n-gʊkʊ j-oosa
     1-PERS 1-PRS-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
     1. 'S/he is still [occupied with] eating a whole chicken.'
     2. 'S/he still eats whole chickens.'

In the present perfective, simple accomplishments denote that the eventuality has passed (24). As they do not encode a resultant state, perfective aspect is not licensed in the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (25).

(24)  a. ʊ-m̩-bine a-pon-ile
     AUG-1-ill 1-recover-PFV
     'A/the sick person has recovered.'

  b. a-lembwike
     1-awake.PFV
     'S/he has woken up.'
5 Verb categorization

c. a-l-iile r-n-gökʊ j-oosa
1-eat-PFV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
'S/he has eaten a whole chicken.'

(25) a. * a-kaalɪ a-pon-ile
1-PERS 1-recover-PFV
(intended: -lq S/he is still healed.'

b. * a-kaalɪ a-lembwike
1-PERS 1-awake.PFV
(intended: 'S/he is still awake.'

c. * a-kaalɪ a-1-iile r-n-gökʊ j-oosa
1-PERS 1-eat-PFV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
(intended: 'S/he is still full from eating a whole chicken.'

With simple accomplishments, the time-span verb phrase ‘take X time’ unambiguously refers to the time that elapses before the culmination of the process.

(26) a. u-m̩-bine eeg-ile a-ka-balilo a-ka-tali u-kʊ-pon-a
AUG-1-ill 1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-recover-FV
'A/the sick person has taken a long time to recover.'

b. eeg-ile ɪi-sala j-oosa u-kʊ-lembʊka-a
1.take-PFV AUG-hour(9) 9-all AUG-15-awake-FV
'S/he has taken a whole hour to wake up.'

c. eeg-ile a-ka-balilo a-ka-pimba u-kʊ-ly-a r-n-gökʊ
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-short AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken
j-oosa
9-all
'S/he has taken a short time to eat a whole chicken.'

The ingressive auxiliary anda ‘start, begin’ refers to the beginning of the process.

(27) a. u-m̩-bine and-ile u-kʊ-pon-a
AUG-1-ill 1.begin-PFV AUG-15-recover-FV
'A/the sick person has begun to recover.'

b. and-ile u-kʊ-lembʊka-a
1.begin-PFV AUG-15-awake-FV
'S/he has begun to wake up.'
5.3 Verb classes

c. and-ile ū-kʊ-ly-a ɪ-n-gʊkʊ j-oosa
   1.begin-PFV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
   ‘S/he has started to eat a whole chicken.’

The terminative auxiliary *mala* is compatible with some, but not all, accomplishments and denotes that the process has been completed. As with activity verbs in their quasi-accomplishment reading, and as will be seen for transitional accomplishments (§5.3.3), *mala* requires a subject with the semantic role of agent or force:

(28) a. a-mal-ile ū-kʊ-lembʊk-a
   1-finish-PFV AUG-15-awake-FV
   ‘S/he has finished getting up.’

b. a-mal-ile ū-kʊ-ly-a ɪ-n-gʊkʊ j-oosa
   1-finish-PFV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
   ‘S/he has finished eating a whole chicken.’

c. *ū-m̩-bine a-mal-ile ū-kʊ-pon-a
   AUG-1-ill 1-finish-PFV AUG-15-recover-FV
   (intended: ‘A/the sick person has accomplished recovery.’)

d. *a-ma-tooki ga-mal-ile ū-kʊ-bɪfw-a
   AUG-6-banana 6-finish-PFV AUG-15-ripen-FV
   (intended: ‘The bananas have become completely ripe.’)

Lastly, *leka* ‘cease, stop’ denotes a cessation or interruption of the process:

(29) a. ū-m̩-bine a-lek-ile ū-kʊ-pon-a
   AUG-1-ill 1-cease-PFV AUG-15-recover-FV
   ‘A/the sick person has ceased to recover.’

b. a-lek-ile ū-kʊ-lembʊka-a
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-awake-FV
   ‘S/he has ceased to wake up (viz. fallen asleep again).’

c. a-lek-ile ū-kʊ-ly-a ɪ-n-gʊkʊ j-oosa
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-9-chicken 9-all
   ‘S/he has ceased eating a whole chicken.’

5.3.3 Transitional accomplishments

Transitional accomplishments encode a process that leads to a new state. They thus share characteristics of activity verbs and simple accomplishments on the
5 Verb categorization

one hand and inchoative achievement verbs (§5.3.4, 5.3.5) on the other. Note
that a distinction between transitional achievements and transitional accomplish-
ments has so far only been observed for neighbouring Ndali (Botne 2008). Its
importance for a theory of Aristotelian aspect is highlighted in Persohn (2017a).
More systematic research on Aristotelian aspect in other Bantu languages might
bring to light similar distinctions.

The phasal structure of transitional accomplishments can be schematized as
in Figure 5.3 for gaala ‘get drunk, be drunk’. Other verbs of this class include
fwala ‘dress, wear’, isʊla ‘swell, be full’, and onangɪka ‘be(come) spoiled’. As
becomes most clear with the last two verbs, and as is the case with activity verbs
and simple accomplishments, the lexicalized process need not be dependent on
a volitional agent.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>get drunk</td>
<td>be drunk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5.3: Phasal structure of transitional accomplishment

Like activity verbs and simple accomplishments, transitional accomplishments
denote an ongoing process in the simple present (30), as well as a possible futu-
rate or habitual/generic reading. In the same vein, the periphrastic progressive
refers to the process of change (31).

(30) a. i-kʊ-gaal-a
   1-PRS-be(come)_drunk-FV
   ‘S/he is getting drunk.’

b. i-kʊ-fwal-a (ii-koti)
   1-PRS-dress/wear-FV (5-coat<SWA)
   ‘S/he is dressing (putting on a/the coat).’

(31) a. a-li̱ pa-kʊ-gaal-a
   1-COP 16-15-be(come)_drunk-FV
   ‘S/he is getting drunk.’

b. a-li̱ pa-kʊ-fwal-a (ii-koti)
   1-COP 16-15-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)
   ‘S/he is dressing (putting on a/the coat).’

Also like activities and simple accomplishments, but unlike transitional achieve-
ments, the simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary
denotes the continuation of the pre-culmination process.
5.3 Verb classes

(32)  

(a) a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-gaal-a  
1-PERS 1-PRS-be(come)_drunk-FV  
1. ‘S/he still gets drunk (regularly).’  
2. ‘S/he is still getting drunk.’  
(b) a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-fwal-a  
1-PERS 1-PRS-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)  
1. ‘S/he still dresses (puts on a/the coat).’  
2. ‘S/he is still dressing (putting on a/the coat).’

As with all inchoative verbs, but unlike activities and simple accomplishments, the perfective of transitional accomplishments is licensed as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (33), a combination that denotes a persistent resultant state.

(33)  

(a) a-kaalɪ a-gaal-ile  
1-PERS 1-be(come)_drunk-PFV  
‘S/he is still drunk.’  
(b) a-kaalɪ a-fweele  
1-PERS 1-dress/wear-PFV (5-coat)  
‘S/he is still dressed (with a/the coat).’

The time-span phrase ‘take X time’, as with simple accomplishments, refers to the time elapsing before the culmination:

(34)  

(a) eeg-ile a-ka-balɪlo a-ka-tali u-kʊ-gaal-a  
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-be(come)_drunk-FV  
‘S/he took a long time to get drunk.’  
(b) eeg-ile a-ka-balɪlo a-ka-tali u-kʊ-fwal-a  
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)  
‘S/he took a long time to dress (put on a/the coat).’

The auxiliary anda ‘begin, start’ in the single event reading denotes the beginning of the process of change:

(35)  

(a) and-ile u-kʊ-gaal-a  
1.begin-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_drunk-FV  
‘S/he has begun to get drunk.’  
(b) and-ile u-kʊ-fwal-a  
1.begin-PFV AUG-15-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)  
‘S/he has started to dress (to put on a/the coat).’
5 Verb categorization

The auxiliary *mala* ‘finish’ with transitional accomplishments can have a single event reading, in which case it refers to the culmination of the process. This behaviour is shared with activities and simple accomplishments, but not transitional achievements. To be compatible with *mala* requires the subject to have the semantic role of agent or force, as in (36a, 36b) but not (36c).

(36) a. a-mal-ile u-ku-gaal-a
   1-finish-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_drunk-FV
   ‘S/he has finished getting drunk (purposefully).’

b. a-mal-ile u-ku-fwal-a (ii-koti)
   1-finish-PFV AUG-15-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)
   ‘S/he has finished dressing (putting on a/the coat).’

c. * ii-galɪ 1r-mal-ile u-k-oonangk-a
   5-car 5-finish-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_spoiled-FV
   (intended: ‘A/the car has broken down completely.’)

Lastly, *leka* ‘cease, stop’ in a single event reading refers to a cessation or interruption of the process:

(37) a. a-lek-ile u-ku-gaal-a
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_drunk-FV
   ‘S/he has ceased to get drunk (e.g. stopped drinking).’

b. a-lek-ile u-ku-fwal-a (ii-koti)
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-dress/wear-FV (5-coat)
   ‘S/he has stopped dressing (putting on a/the coat).’

5.3.4 Transitional achievements

Transitional achievements encode a change-of-state as well a pre-culmination state and a resultant state. Their phasal structure can thus be schematized as in Figure 5.4 for *kalala* ‘be(come) angry’. This class of verbs makes up the vast majority of achievements in the sample. Other examples include *fugama* ‘kneel’, *fwa* ‘die’, *gwa paasi* ‘fall down’, *katala* ‘be(come) tired’, *kola* ‘grasp, hold’ and *nyala* ‘be(come) dirty’.

In the simple present, transitional achievements have a coming-to-be reading (38), as well as a habitual/generic and a futurate one. Likewise, the periphrastic progressive refers to the coming-to-be. Typically this is understood as being close to a change-of-state (39).
5.3 Verb classes

Figure 5.4: Phasal structure of transitional achievement

(38) a. i-kʊ-kalal-a
   1-PRS-be(come)_angry-FV
   ‘S/he is becoming angry.’

   b. i-kʊ-fw-a
   1-PRS-die-FV
   ‘S/he is dying.’

(39) a. a-li pa-kʊ-kalal-a
   1-COP 16-15-be(come)_angry-FV
   ‘S/he is about to be angry.’

   b. a-li pa-kʊ-fw-a
   1-COP 16-15-die-FV
   ‘S/he is about to die.’

Some transitional achievements can be used with the simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary, but not all (40). In this case, what is referred to is the continuation of the resultant state. This behaviour is shared with resultative achievements (§5.3.5) but not transitional accomplishments (§5.3.3). However, those language assistants that accepted these readings were either hesitant at first or considered these readings to be less natural than the use of the persistive plus perfective aspect, which makes this look like a clear case of coercion; see Michaelis (2004) for a theory of coercion.

(40) a. a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-fugam-a
   1-PERS 1-PRS-kneel-FV
   1. ‘S/he still kneels.’
   2. ‘S/he is still kneeling.’
   
   b. * a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-fw-a
   1-PERS 1-PRS-die-FV
   (intended: ‘S/he is still being dead.’)

As with all inchoative verbs, the perfective form of transitional achievements is licensed as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (41).

(41) a. a-kaalɪ a-kaleele
   1-PERS 1-be(come)_angry.PFV
   ‘S/he is still angry.’
5 Verb categorization

b. ii-lʊʊka lɪ-kaalɪ lɪ-fw-ile
   5-store 5-PERS 5-die-PFV
   ‘The store is still dead (viz. closed).’

The ingressive auxiliary *anda* ‘begin, start’ refers to the beginning of the development:

(42) a. and-ile ʊ-kʊ-kalal-a
    1.begin-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_angry-FV
    ‘S/he has started to become angry.’

b. and-ile ʊ-kʊ-fw-a
    1.begin-PFV AUG-15-die-FV
    ‘S/he has started to die.’

Some transitional achievements are compatible with *mala* ‘finish’, in which case the reference is to the eventuality as a whole. As observed in §5.3.1–5.3.3, this requires the subject to have the semantic role of agent or force, or to be construable as such. Thus compare (43a, 43b) to (43c, 43d):

(43) a. a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-kol-a   ii-bwe
    1-finish-PFV AUG-15-grasp/hold-FV 5-stone
    ‘S/he has finished holding a/the stone.’

b. a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-fugam-a
    1-finish-PFV AUG-15-kneel-FV
    ‘S/he has finished kneeling.’

c. ? a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-kalal-a
    1-finish-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_angry-FV
    ‘S/he has finished being angry.’

d. * ii-lʊʊka lɪ-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-fw-a
    5-store 5-finish-PFV AUG-15-die-FV
    (intended: ‘The store is not closed anymore (i.e. has opened again).’)

Likewise, a single event reading with the egressive auxiliary *leka* is available for some, but not all, transitional achievements. In accordance with their meaningful focus on the resultant state, this denotes an interruption or cessation of the latter. It is not entirely clear what the determining semantic factors are. The following examples suggest that at least world knowledge comes into play:
5.3 Verb classes

(44) a. a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-fugam-a
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-kneel-FV
   ‘S/he has ceased to be kneeling.’

b. a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-kalal-a
   1-cease-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_angry-FV
   ‘S/he has ceased to be angry.’

c. ? ii-nyumba ji-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-nyala-a
   AUG-house(9) 9-cease-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_dirty-FV
   ‘A/the house has ceased to be dirty.’

d. * ii-lʊʊka ly-a-fw-ile looli lr-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-fw-a
   5-store 5-pst-die-PFV but 5-cease-PFV AUG-15-die-FV
   (intended: ’The store was closed but it is not closed anymore.’)

The language assistants commented that examples such as (44a, 44b) are acceptable but not very natural. A more common way to refer to a state, e.g. of anger, that has come to an end, would be the following:

(45) a-a-kaleele, looli si-mal-iike
    1-pst-be(come)_angry.PFV now/but 10-finish-NEUT.PFV
    ‘S/he was angry, but now it is over.’

Last, the time-span phrase ‘take X time’ refers to the time elapsing before the change-of-state:

(46) eeg-ile a-ka-balɪlo a-ka-pimba fiijo ʊ-kʊ-kalala
    1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-short INTENS AUG-15-be(come)_angry-FV
    ‘S/he got angry in a very short time.’

(47) eeg-ile a-ka-balɪlo a-ka-tali ʊ-kʊ-fugam-a
    1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-short AUG-15-kneel-FV
    ‘S/he took a lot of time to get on his/her knees.’

5.3.5 Resultative achievements

Resultative achievements encode a change-of-state together with the resultant state. Their phasal structure can thus be schematized as in Figure 5.5 for hoboka ‘be(come) happy’. Other examples are benga ‘hate’, gana ‘like, love’, gona ʊtʊlo ‘sleep’ and twala ‘carry, bring’.
5 Verb categorization

![Figure 5.5: Phasal structure of resultative achievement](image)

In the simple present, resultative achievements have a futurate reading as well as a habitual/generic one, but no progressive reading (48).

(48) a. i-ku-hobok-a
   1-PRS-be(come)_happy-FV
   1. ‘S/he will become happy.’
   2. ‘S/he becomes happy (e.g. on each particular occasion).’

b. i-ku-m-beng-a
   1-PRS-1SG-hate-FV
   1. ‘S/he will hate me.’
   2. ‘S/he hates me (e.g. shows it every time we meet).’

The periphrastic progressive construction with resultative achievements refers to the resultant state (49). This is unlike transitional achievements (§5.3.4), which do encode an Onset state.

(49) a. a-li pa-ku-hobok-a
   1-COP 16-15-be(come)_happy-FV
   ‘S/he is happy.’

b. a-li pa-ku-m-beng-a
   1-COP 16-15-1SG-hate-FV
   ‘S/he hates me (e.g. is acting hostile).’

Some, but not all, resultative achievements can be coerced into a progressive reading with the simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (50). As with transitional achievements, what is referred to in this case is the resultant state.

(50) a. a-kaal i-ku-hobok-a
   1-PERS 1-PRS-kneel-FV
   1. ‘S/he still becomes happy.’
   2. ‘S/he is still being happy.’
5.3 Verb classes

b. a-kaalî i-kʊ-m-beng-a
   1-PERS 1-PRS-1SG-hate-fv
1. ‘S/he still hates me (e.g. still shows it every time we meet).’
2. ‘S/he is still hating me (e.g. acting hostile).’
c. a-kaalî i-kʊ-twal-a ɪ-kʊ-kapʊ
   1-PERS 1-PRS-carry-fv AUG-7-basket
   ‘S/he still carries a/the basket (regularly).’
   not: ‘S/he is still carrying a/the basket.’

As with all inchoative verbs, the common way to refer to the resultant state is with the use of the perfective aspect, which is licensed as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (51), a combination that denotes the persistence of the resultant state.

(51) a. a-kaalî a-hobwike
   1-PERS 1-be(come)_happy pfv
   ‘S/he is still happy.’
b. a-kaalî a-m-beng-ile
   1-PERS 1-1SG-hate-pfv
   ‘S/he still hates me.’

The time-span phrase ‘take X time’ refers to the time elapsing before the entry into the new state:

(52) a. eeg-ile a-ka-bahlo a-ka-tali ʊ-kʊ-hobok-a
   1-take-pfv AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-be(come)_happy-fv
   ‘S/he took a long time to become happy.’
b. eeg-ile a-ka-bahlo a-ka-pimba ʊ-kʊ-m-beng-a
   1-take-pfv AUG-12-time AUG-12-short AUG-15-1SG-hate-fv
   ‘S/he came to hate me within a short time.’

Related to the behaviour of resultative achievements with the simple present and periphrastic progressive, the auxiliary anda ‘begin, start’ in the single event reading refers to an initial subphase of the resultant state:

(53) a. and-ile ʊ-kʊ-hobok-a
   1-begin-pfv AUG-15-be(come)_happy-fv
   ‘S/he has begun to be happy.’
5 Verb categorization

b. and-ile ʊ-kʊ-m-beng-a  
1.begin-pfv AUG-15-1sg-hate-fv  
'S/he has begun to hate me.'

Parallel to what has been observed for transitional achievements, at least some resultative achievements can be coerced into a progressive reading of the resultant state in the syntactic frame of the simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary.

(54) a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-hobok-a  
1-pers 1-prs-be(come)_happy-fv  
1. 'S/he still becomes happy (e.g. on each certain occasion).’  
2. 'S/he is still being (behaving) happy.'

(55) a-kaalɪ i-kʊ-m-beng-a  
1-pers 1-prs-1sg-hate-fv  
1. 'S/he still hates me (generally speaking).’  
2. 'S/he is still hating me (i.e. acting hostile).’

The auxiliary *mala* ‘finish’ refers to the resultant state. As has been observed in the preceding sections, mala requires its subject to have the semantic role of agent or force:

(56) a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-twal-a i-ki-kapʊ  
1-finish-pfv AUG-15-cary-fv AUG-7-basket  
'S/he has finished carrying a/the basket.'

(57) a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-gon-a ʊ-tʊ-lo  
1-finish-pfv AUG-15-rest-fv AUG-12-sleep  
'S/he has finished sleeping.’

(58) * a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-hobok-a  
1-finish-pfv AUG-15-be(come)_happy-fv  
(intended: 'S/he is not happy anymore.’)

(59) * a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-m-beng-a  
1-finish-pfv AUG-15-1sg-hate-fv  
(intended: 'S/he does not hate me anymore.’)

As is the case with transitional achievements, a single event reading with the egressive auxiliary *leka* is available for at least some resultative achievements:
5.3 Verb classes

(60) a. a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-gon-a ʊ-tʊ-lo 1-cease-PFV AUG-15-rest-FV AUG-12-sleep
‘S/he has ceased to be sleeping.’
b. a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-ŋ-gan-a 1-cease-PFV AUG-15-like/love-FV
‘S/he has ceased to love him/her.’
c. ? a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-hobok-a 1-cease-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_happy-FV
‘S/he has ceased to be happy.’

One verb in the sample, manya ‘know’, patterns to a large extent with resultative achievements. Unlike the latter, however, manya is incompatible with the periphrastic progressive:

(61) * a-lɪ pa-kʊ-many-a 16-15-know-FV AUG-7-English
(intended: ‘S/he is learning English.’ or ‘S/he knows English.’)

In all other respects, manya ‘know’ behaves no differently from the verbs discussed so far in this section. Thus in the simple present it has a generic (62) as well as a futurate reading (63). To refer to the state of having knowledge, the perfective aspect is employed (64) and its compatibility with persistive aspect shows that this state forms part of its lexical meaning (65).

(62) a-baa-sukuulu bi-kʊ-many-a 1-kr-engelesa AUG-2-student 2-prs-know-FV AUG-7-English
‘Students know English.’

(63) lɪlɪno kʊʊ-many-a, fiki ŋ-ti-kw-amul-a bo now/today 2SG.PRS.1SG-know-FV why 2SG-NEG-PRS-answer-FV as n-gʊ-ku-laanwɔsy-a?
1SG-PRS-2SG-ask-FV
‘Now you’ll get to know me, why don’t you answer when I’m asking you?’ [Saliki and Hare]

(64) a-meenye 1-kr-engelesa 1-know.PFV AUG-7-English(<SWA)
‘S/he knows English.’
5 Verb categorization

(65) a-kaalɪ a-meenye 1-ki-ngelesa
1-PERS 1-know.PFV AUG-7-English
’S/he still knows English.’

The time-span verb phrase ‘take X time’ refers to the time elapsing before entering into the state of knowledge (66). Also note that manya in the narrative tense – see §7.3 – normally yields a change-of-state reading (67).

(66) eeg-ile 1-fy-mja f-ingi ʊ-ku-many-a 1-ki-ngelesa
1-take-PFV AUG-8-year 8-many AUG-15-know-FV AUG-7-English
’S/he took many years to (get to) know English.’ [ET]

(67) ʊ-mw-ene Jesu nakalinga a-linku-many-a mu-n-dumbula j-aake
AUG-1-self J. immediately 1-NARR-know-FV 18-9-heart 9-POS.SG
a-inku-ba-laalʊʊsy-a, a-linku-ti ...
1-NARR-2-ask-FV 1-NARR-say
‘And immediately when Jesus perceived in his spirit that they so reasoned within themselves, he said unto them …[J. immediately understood in his heart …he asked them …]’ (Mark 2: 8)

In their discussion of neighbouring Ndali and Sukwa, Botne (2008) and Kershner (2002), respectively, recognize a separate group of purely static verbs, which among others includes the cognates of Nyakyusa benga ‘hate’, gana ‘love’, and, in the case of Sukwa, manya ‘know’. As seen above, in Nyakyusa the first two pattern with other verbs such as hoboka ‘be(come) happy’ as resultative achievements. It is noteworthy that these putatively static verbs in Ndali and Sukwa pattern with the other classes of inchoatives with respect to their behaviour with perfective aspect (“completive” in Botne & Kershner’s terms; see §6.5.3.2 for discussion), which is unfortunately not further discussed by these authors. The validity of a separate class of states in Nyakyusa remains open to further research. Note that Seidel (2008) does not recognize such a class for Yeyi R41. Concerning the broader Niger-Congo context, Toews (2015: ch. 5.4) finds that Siamou (Kru) entirely lacks state verbs. In order to describe stative situations, other strategies are evoked, namely non-verbal predicates, a stativizing verbal suffix, imperfective aspect with certain non-inchoatives (often as the result of a figurative reading) and perfective aspect with inchoative verbs.
5.3 Verb classes

5.3.6 Other achievement classes

Two verbs in the sample, *fika* ‘arrive’ and *aga* ‘find’, classify as achievements, but they both differ from the achievements classes discussed in the preceding sections in important ways. These two verbs can be taken as representatives of the classes of inceptive and acute achievements (Kershner’s ‘inceptive punctives’ and ‘achievement punctives’), which are well-established classes in neighbouring Ndali and Sukwa. Their scarcity in the sample is most likely due to the limited sample of verbs. As a single verb, however, it is insufficient to justify an achievement class of its own, and this classification thus remains tentative. The two verbs are discussed jointly in this section.

To begin with, *fika* in the simple present has a coming-to-be reading (68) as well as a habitual/generic and a futurate one. Likewise, the periphrastic progressive refers to the coming-to-be (69). This indicates a lexical Onset phase and parallels the transitional achievements (§5.3.4).

(68) i-ko-fik-a
    1-PRS-arrive-FV
    ‘S/he is arriving.’

(69) a-lir pa-ko-fik-a
    1-COP 16-15-arrive-FV
    ‘S/he is arriving.’

*fika* also resembles transitional achievements in that the simple present as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary has a habitual/generic reading, but not one of a progressive change-of-state:

(70) a-kaali i-ko-fik-a
    1-PERS 1-PRS-arrive-FV
    ‘S/he still arrives (regularly).’
    not: ‘S/he is still arriving.’

Further proof of a lexicalized Onset phase is found in the behaviour of *fika* with *anda* ‘begin, start’. This auxiliary has a habitual/generic reading and can also refer to the preliminary phase of a single eventuality with *fika* (71).

(71) and-ile u-ko-fik-a
    1-begin-PFV AUG-15-arrive-FV
    1. ‘S/he has begun to arrive (e.g. get to a place regularly).’
    2. ‘She has begun to arrive (right now).’

As expected, the time-span verb phrase ‘take X time’ with *fika* refers to the time elapsing before the change-of-state:
5 Verb categorization

(72) eeg-ile a-ka-ballo a-ka-tali ʊ-kʊ-fik-a
1.take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-arrive-fv
’S/he took a long time to arrive.’

The perfective aspect with fika denotes that the eventuality has passed (73). The fact that perfective aspect is not licensed in the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (74) provides proof that, unlike transitional and resultative achievements, no Coda state is lexically encoded.

(73) a-fik-ile
1-arrive-PFV
‘S/he has arrived.’

(74) *a-kaalɪ a-fik-ile
1-PERS 1-arrive-PFV

Lastly, mala ‘finish’ is not compatible with fika (75), while leka ‘cease, stop’ denotes the cessation or interruption of a series or habit, but does not have a single event reading with this verb (76).

(75) *a-mal-ile ʊ-kʊ-fik-a
1-finish-PFV AUG-15-arrive-fv
(intended: ‘S/he has arrived completely.’)

(76) a-lek-ile ʊ-kʊ-fik-a a-pa
1-cease-PFV AUG-15-arrive-fv AUG-PROX.16
‘S/he no longer gets here.’
not: ‘S/he has ceased to arrive here.’

To summarize, fika differs from transitional and resultative achievements in that it does not lexicalize a Coda state. Like transitional, but unlike resultative achievements, it does, however, encode an Onset phase. Its phasal structure can thus be schematized as in Figure 5.6.

![Figure 5.6: Phasal structure of fika](image_url)

As for aga ‘find’, in the simple present this verb has a habitual/generic and a futurate reading, but no progressive one (77), which indicates the lack of a lexical Onset phase. Accordingly, the simple present in the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary does not have a single event reading (78).
5.3 Verb classes

(77) tʊ-kw-ag-a ɪɪ-fungulo jɪ-li paa-meesa
      1PL-PRS-find-FV AUG-key(9)(<SWA) 9-COP 16-table(9)(<SWA)
1. 'We will find that a/the key is on a/the table (e.g. thus we have been informed).
2. 'We find that a/the key is on a/the table (e.g. each time we search for it).

(78) tʊ-kaali tʊ-kw-ag-a bi-ku-ly-a
      1PL-PERS 1PL-PRS-find-FV 2-PRS-eat-FV
      bi-kʊ-ly-a
      2-PRS-eat-FV
'We still find them eating (frequently).'
not: 'We are still finding them eating (sic!).'

Further proof of the lack of an Onset phase is found in the facts that aga is incompatible with the periphrastic progressive (79) and that it does not have a single event reading with the ingressive anda (80):

(79) tw-and-ile ʊ-kw-ag-a bi-ku-ly-a
      1PL-start-PFV AUG-15-find-FV 2-PRS-eat-FV
      bi-kʊ-ly-a
      2-PRS-eat-FV
'We have begun to find them eating (e.g. each time we pass).'
not: 'We have begun to find them eating (right now).

(80) * tʊ-li pa-kw-ag-a bi-ku-ly-a
      1PL-COP 16-15-find-FV 2-PRS-eat-FV
(intended: 'We are about to find them eating."

The perfective aspect with aga denotes that the eventuality has passed (81). The incompatibility of perfective aspect with persistive aspect shows that no Coda phase is encoded (82).

(81) tw-ag-ile bi-ku-ly-a
      1PL-find-PFV 2-PRS-eat-FV
'We have found them eating.'

(82) * tʊ-kaali tw-ag-ile bi-ku-ly-a
      1PL-PERS 1PL-find-PFV 2-PRS-eat-FV
(intended: 'We are still informed that they are eating."

The time-span phrase ‘take X time’ denotes the time elapsing before the change-of-state:
5 Verb categorization

(83) tw-eg-ile a-ka-baḥlo a-ka-tali ṭ-kw-ag-a
    1PL-take-PFV AUG-12-time AUG-12-long AUG-15-find-FV
    ṭfungulo jī-li paa-meesa
    AUG-key(9)(<SWA) 9-COP 16-table(9)(<SWA)
‘We took a long time to find that a/the key is on a/the table.’

Lastly, mala ‘finish’ cannot be used with fika (84) and leka ‘cease, stop’ does not have a single event reading (85).

(84) * tʊ-mal-ile ṭ-kw-ag-a ṭfungulo jī-li paa-meesa
    1PL-finish-PFV AUG-15-find-FV AUG-key(9) 9-COP 16-table(9)
    (intended: ‘We’re done finding that a/the key is on the table (sic!).’)

(85) tʊ-lek-ile ṭ-kw-ag-a ṭfungulo jī-li paa-meesa
    1PL-cease-PFV AUG-15-find-FV AUG-key(9) 9-COP 16-table(9)
‘We no longer find that a/the key is on the table’
not: ‘We have ceased to be finding that a/the key is on the table (sic!).’

To summarize, aga differs from the other achievements in that it encodes neither an Onset nor a Coda phase, but only a punctual change-of-state. That is, it corresponds to the Vendlerian definition of achievements; see §1.4.3.1 for discussion. Its phasal structure can be schematized as in Figure 5.7.

```
  N
 /    finding
```

Figure 5.7: Phasal structure of aga
6  Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

6.1 Introduction

In this and the following two chapters, constructions expressing tense and grammatical aspect will be described. This chapter contains a general overview of tense and aspect in Nyakyusa, followed by a discussion of negation (§6.3) and an investigation into two recurring aspectual suffixes, which show considerable morphophonemic alternation (§6.4.1, 6.4.2). Its main body consists of a description of present and past tense constructions. This description is divided into constructions consisting of just the inflected verb (§6.5) and or compound constructions (§6.6). What is for convenience termed 'present tense' throughout this study can be understood as having non-past reference. This is discussed in §6.7. Note that the dedicated narrative markers, though they have past tense reference, will be dealt with separately in §7.

6.2 Overview of tense aspect in Nyakyusa

A key element of the Nyakyusa TMA system in the present (non-past) and past tense is the opposition between imperfective and perfective aspect. The use of grammatical aspect is closely linked to the lexical opposition between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs (see Chapter 5). A central element here is the completion of the Nucleus phase of an eventuality, which is discussed in §6.5.3.2. As each of the major present and past tense construction are also marked for aspect, neither tense nor grammatical aspect can be considered primary. Instead, when linguistically construing a given state-of-affairs, a speaker of Nyakysa has to decide on both the temporal dimension (§1.4.2.1) as well as the aspectual vantage point (§1.4.2.2) in relation to the verb's inherent aspectual potential (§1.4.3.1).

Concerning constructions with future time reference, which build on the simple present, simple present as well as the subjunctive and desiderative moods, Nyakyusa rather has an opposition between aspectually neutral and imperfec-tive aspect, where the latter frequently also adds modal nuances.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

6.3 Negation in Nyakyusa

In §6.5, 6.6, 9.3, the description of each affirmative construction will be followed by its negative counterpart. As has been pointed out by Contini Morava (1989), among others, the semantic relationship between affirmative and negative forms is not a straightforward one. Nevertheless, when language assistants were asked for the negative equivalent of a given form, they responded readily and unanimously (see also Nurse 2008: 196). Negation in Nyakyusa shows some uncommon characteristics, however, which deserve a short discussion.

Nyakyusa has three negative prefixes: *ti-*, *ka-* and *nga-*. All three stand in the post-initial slot. Their distribution is delimited along two major lines: mood and temporal reference. The *nga-* negation is limited to the negative subjunctive (§9.3.4). Of the remaining two negative prefixes, *ka-* is used in constructions that make reference to a point of time prior to the moment of speech, while *ti-* occurs solely in the present and in futurates. The apparent exception is the negative copula, which for the non-generic present is *ka-j-a* (§10.2.1). However, this can clearly be attributed to its origin in the negation of ‘become’, which, depending on the context, is still a possible reading. What has just been outlined is uncommon in two ways. First, in the majority of those Bantu languages having more than one negative marker, these occur in different positions in the verbal word. Second, in those Bantu languages with three negative markers, the typical distribution is main clause vs. subjunctive vs. relative clause (Nurse 2008: 184–191).

A common typological criterion concerning verbal negation is symmetry. As Miestamo (2007: 556) defines it, “symmetric negative constructions do not differ from non-negatives in any other way than by the presence of the negative marker(s)”. While negation in Nyakyusa is mostly symmetric, as can be seen from the sample constructions in Table 6.1, there are several cases of asymmetric negation; see Table 6.2. There are also cases of syncretism, where more than one affirmative paradigm shares a common negative counterpart; see Table 6.3. Miestamo (2005) calls the latter “paradigmatic A/Cat asymmetry”.

---

1 The moment of speech is to be understood here as the default reference point.
2 This contrasts with Ndali, which has *ta-* for non-pasts as well as pasts (Botne 2008; Swilla 1998). The Ngonde varieties described by Kishindo (1999) and Labroussi (1998) seem to exhibit a certain variability and stand between Nyakyusa and Ndali with regards to the negative markers.
3 More precisely, Miestamo in the quoted section is concerned with ‘standard negation’, that is, the negation of declarative verbal main clauses, excluding, for instance, existential or copula clauses or non-declarative ones such as the imperative.
### 6.3 Negation in Nyakyusa

Table 6.1: Cases of symmetric negation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple present</td>
<td>kʊ-(vb)-(a)</td>
<td>ti-kʊ-(vb)-(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past perfective</td>
<td>a(lɪ)-(vb)-ile</td>
<td>ka-a(lɪ)-(vb)-ile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past imperfective</td>
<td>a-(vb)-aga</td>
<td>ka-a-(vb)-aga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.2: Cases of asymmetric negation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present perfective</td>
<td>ø-(vb)-ile</td>
<td>ka-(vb)-(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>ø-(vb)-e(ge)</td>
<td>nga-(vb)-d((ga))</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative tense</td>
<td>linkʊ-(vb)-(a)</td>
<td>linkʊ-sit-(a) + infinitive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 6.3: Syncretism in negation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Affirmative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple present</td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present progressive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past imperfective</td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative past imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past progressive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
<td>Negative subjunctive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal/itive subjunctive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6.4 Morphophonology of common TMA suffixes

6.4.1 Alternations of imperfective -aga

The imperfective suffix surfaces as -aga in those paradigms characterized by the default final vowel -a, and as -ege in the affirmative subjunctive. The defective verb tt (§10.3) occurs as ttgi.

(1)  
twajobaga  ‘we were speaking’
twajobbege  ‘we should be speaking’
twatigi  ‘we were saying’

When one of the clitics (see §3.3.8) =po, =mo or =ko (independent of their specific function) or =ks ‘where’ follows, the velar segment is prenasalized (2). With the enclitic form of ki ‘what’, no prenasalization takes place (3).

(2)  
baaswilangapo  (‘ba-a-sw1-ag=ko)  ‘they were raising there (class 16)’
biigalangako  (‘ba-a-igala-ag=ko)  ‘they were closing there (class 17)’
baasookangamo  (‘ba-a-sook-ag=mo)  ‘they were going outside (class 18)’
ʊswilengeko  (‘ʊ-sw1-ege=po)  ‘you should raise there (class 16)’
gwigalengeko  (‘ʊ-igal-ege=ko)  ‘you should close there (class 17)’
ʊssookengemo  (‘ʊ-sook-ege=mo)  ‘you should go outside (class 18)’
gwabʊʊkangako  (‘ʊ-a-bʊʊk-ag=ko)  ‘Where were you going?’
mbʊʊkengeko  (‘n-bʊʊk-ege=ko)  ‘Where should I go?’

(3)  
gwabombagaki  (‘ʊ-a-bom-ag=ki)  ‘What were you doing?’

6.4.2 Perfective -ile and its variants

Perfective stems in Nyakyusa are subject to complex allomorphic variation. With the widespread Bantu suffix -ile as the underlying form, surface forms are diverse and in many cases show characteristics of fusional morphology. Before going into detail with the numerous shapes perfective stems take and the phonological and morphological factors triggering the choice of these, it should be stated that perfective stem formation can be understood as variation on three re-occurring themes. The first and most straightforward is suffixation of -ile:

(4)  
nwa  ‘drink’  >  nwile
гана  ‘love’  >  ganiле
nyunyuuta  ‘whine’  >  nyunyuuttle
The second theme is called *imbrication*, a term coined by Bastin (1983). In its prototypical form, imbrication consists of infixing -i- before the last base consonant and suffixing -e. The rules of word-internal hiatus solution (§2.2.1.4) apply.

(5) lwasya ‘nurse the sick, care for’ > lwaisye
bukuka ‘flame’ > bukukwe
ambililila ‘receive; entertain guests’ > ambilikile

A third theme will be referred to as *copying*. In its basic form, copying consists of a surface alternation /-CG/ → /-CiiCGe/, where CG stands for the base-final consonant plus a following glide. Although at first this looks like a case of reduction, the discussion below will show that these forms can best be explained by assuming templatic requirements of certain types of stems.

(6) busya ‘return (tr.)’ > busisye
pufya ‘whistle’ > pufiife
ibwa ‘forget’ > ibiibwe

The following in-depth description of perfective stem formation will be structured according to the syllable count of the verbal base, as this is a major conditioning factor and each syllable count can be associated with a default process. Some of the regularities outlined have already been recognized by Berger (1938). However, the present data shows a number of deviations from Berger’s analysis, which in most cases can be attributed to the greater quantity of data considered. This is based on the examination of some 1600 verbal bases for which perfective stems were available at the time of writing this section.

### 6.4.2.1 Monosyllabic verbs

With monosyllabic verbs, -ile is suffixed. The general rules of vowel juxtaposition apply (§2.2.1.4). Defective ti (§10.3) yields tile, which is often reduced to [tʰi̯ɛ]. Likewise, jile is often heard as [ji̯ɛ]. In both cases, stress remains on the stem syllable.

(7) pa ‘give’ > peele
ja ‘be(come)’ > jile
ti ‘say’ > tile

---

Berger himself recognizes the limits of his corpus and that the transcription of some of his second-hand data is rather dubious. Nevertheless, his work is a valuable point of departure. Apart from Berger (1938), the forms cited in Felberg (1996) have been taken as an indication of where to look for regularity and variation. All forms stemming from those sources that were felt to be suspicious have been checked in elicitation.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

\[ fwa \ 'die' \ > \ fwile \]
\[ gwa \ 'fall' \ > \ gwile \]
\[ kwa \ 'pay dowry' \ > \ kwile \]
\[ lwa \ 'fight' \ > \ lwile \]
\[ mwa \ 'shave' \ > \ mwile \]
\[ nwa \ 'drink' \ > \ nwile \]
\[ swa \ 'spit; forgive' \ > \ swile \]
\[ twa \ 'be plenty (esp. fish)' \ > \ twile \]
\[ kya \ 'dawn; cease to rain' \ > \ kiile \]
\[ lya \ 'eat' \ > \ liile \]
\[ nia \ 'defecate' \ > \ niile \]
\[ pya \ 'be(come) burnt' \ > \ piile \]
\[ sya \ 'grind' \ > \ siile \]

6.4.2.2 Disyllabic verbs

Disyllabic verbs show by far the most complex variation. Suffixation of -ile can be considered the default case:

(8)  
\[ goga \ 'kill' \ > \ gogile \]
\[ keeta \ 'watch' \ > \ keetile \]
\[ konga \ 'follow' \ > \ kongile \]
\[ ola \ 'buy' \ > \ ollile \]

With disyllabic applicatives (that is, applicatives of monosyllabic roots) -iile, with a long morpheme-initial vowel, is suffixed.

(9)  
\[ peela \ 'give off' \ > \ peeliile \]
\[ jila \ 'be in a condition' \ > \ jiliile \]
\[ lila \ 'eat with/at/for' \ > \ liliile \]
\[ niela \ 'defecate with/at/for' \ > \ nieliile \]
\[ syela \ 'grind with/at/for' \ > \ syeliile \]
\[ gwila \ 'fall with/to/for' \ > \ gwiile \]
\[ nwela \ 'drink with/at/for' \ > \ nwiile \]

With disyllabic fossilized passives (§4.2.8), -il- is infixed before the glide and -e is suffixed (10). These verbs thus occupy an intermediate position between suffixing and imbrication in the strict sense. The same holds for one of the perfective stem variants of lugwa 'be eaten'. (11)

\[ ^5 \text{Schumann (1899) and Berger (1938) note that these verbs form their perfective stem with long } -iliwe. \text{ This could not be confirmed and might be due to diatopic variation or confusion with their applicativized forms.} \]
6.4 Morphophonology of common TMA suffixes

(10)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>New Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>babwa</td>
<td>‘be in pain’</td>
<td>babilwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gogwa</td>
<td>‘dream’</td>
<td>gogilwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milwa</td>
<td>‘drown’</td>
<td>mililwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nyonywa</td>
<td>‘desire’</td>
<td>nyonyilwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syʊkwa</td>
<td>‘miss sadly’</td>
<td>syʊkilwe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tolwa</td>
<td>‘be burdened’</td>
<td>tolilwe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(11)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ḋɪɪgwa</td>
<td>‘be eaten’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(12)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>New Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fwalta</td>
<td>‘wear; receive salary’</td>
<td>fwele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syala</td>
<td>‘remain’</td>
<td>syele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fwana</td>
<td>‘resemble; be enough’</td>
<td>fwene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lwana</td>
<td>‘quarrel’</td>
<td>lwene</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(13)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ng’wa</td>
<td>‘scratch with claws’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(14)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nywama</td>
<td>‘enlarge (intr.); chase’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(15)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fyata</td>
<td>‘fasten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwaba</td>
<td>‘take’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Verbs of the shapes CGal and CGan induce imbrication (12). One exception to this rule is attested (13). The unusual sequence /yw/ indicates that the verb ng’wa| might be a Ndali loan. Berger (1938) further lists nywama > nyweme, thus CGam. Of the speakers consulted, several did not know this verb at all. Those familiar with it unanimously gave nywamile as their first answer. Some accepted nyweme as a variant perfective stem, whereas it was rejected by others (14). The only other verb of the shape in question is kwama ‘become) stuck’, an obvious loan from Swahili, which has the perfective stem kwamile not *kweme. As the examples in (15) illustrate, other CGaC shapes do not induce imbrication.

(12)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>New Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fwalta</td>
<td>‘wear; receive salary’</td>
<td>fwele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>syala</td>
<td>‘remain’</td>
<td>syele</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fwana</td>
<td>‘resemble; be enough’</td>
<td>fwene</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lwana</td>
<td>‘quarrel’</td>
<td>lwene</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(13)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ng’wa</td>
<td>‘scratch with claws’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(14)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nywama</td>
<td>‘enlarge (intr.); chase’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(15)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fyata</td>
<td>‘fasten’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kwaba</td>
<td>‘take’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The verb baala ‘increase, thrive’ shows variation between an imbricating and a suffixing form (16). This must be considered an idiosyncrasy, as no other verb of the shape /Caal/ has an imbricating perfective stem (17).

(16)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>New Verb</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>baala</td>
<td>‘increase; thrive’</td>
<td>beele</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(17)  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Verb</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>gaala</td>
<td>‘get drunk, be drunk’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paala</td>
<td>‘invite’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>saala</td>
<td>‘be(come) happy’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

6Cf. pairs such as Nyakyusa nwa, Ndali ɲwa ‘drink’ < PB *ɲwó.
Two further disyllabic verbs must be considered irregular: *manyá ‘know’ and *bóna ‘see’. These trigger imbrication although no other regularity can account for this. Further, *bóna does not yield *bwine as would be expected from the rules of vowel coalescence.

(18) *manyá ‘know’ > meenye
    *bóna ‘see’ > bwene

Disyllabic causatives trigger copying, yielding (C)(G)Vsiisye if the base ends in /sy/ and (C)(G)Vfiifye if the base ends in /fy/. This holds for causatives of monosyllabic roots formed with the long causative₂ -rsi (19), as well as for those causatives formed with the short causative₁ -i on disyllabic verbs (20); see §4.2.4 for a discussion of the two causatives. Causatives with base-final nasals also have a perfective stem of the shape (C)VNiisye (21), which shows that synchronically speaking this is not a rule of reduplication, as it might appear at first sight. A historic scenario for this alternation is provided by Hyman (2003). He argues that its origin most probably lies in imbrication plus a cyclic application of spirantization through the causative₁ -i (§4.2.2), thus yielding (C)(G)Vsiisye for base-final spirantizing oral linguals. This then came to be re-analysed as a process of reduplication, yielding (C)(G)Vfiifye with base-final oral labials. Lastly, this turned into a phonological pattern requirement for disyllabic causative stems to end in -i[ś,ś]ye, hence the extension to final nasals (and causatives of monosyllabic verbs, which are not discussed by Hyman).

Note that disyllabic causatives derived from the verbs of the shape CGa{l, n} discussed above are excluded from this process. As with their underlying bases, imbrication takes place (22). The causative of *baala, *baasya ‘increase (tr.)’ shows variation just like its underlying root, and is attested with both imbricating and copying forms (23).

(19) Causatives of monosyllabic roots:
    lw-ısi-a ‘make fight’ > lwısiisye
gw-ısi-a ‘overturn; throw down’ > gwısiisye

(20) Disyllabic causatives with -i:
    bosıya (‘bol-i-a) ‘cause to rot’ > bosısiisye
    pyeфия (‘pyıp-i-a) ‘warm, heat up’ > pyефиifye

(21) Disyllabic causatives with final nasal:
    pon-i-a ‘greet; visit’ > ponısiisye
    an-i-a ‘ask’ > aniisye
    sim-y-a ‘put out, switch off’ > simısiisye
    taam-y-a ‘trouble, persecute’ > taamiisye
6.4 Morphophonology of common TMA suffixes

Disyllabic causatives CG\{l, n\}-i:
- \textit{lwasya} (°lwal-i-a) ‘nurse the sick, care for’ > \textit{lwesye}
- \textit{syasya} (°syal-i-a) ‘leave over’ > \textit{sysye}
- \textit{fwania} (°fwan-i-a) ‘match; reconcile’ > \textit{fwenie}
- \textit{lwania} (°lwan-i-a) ‘confront; make quarrel’ > \textit{lwenie}

Causative of \textit{baala}:
- \textit{baasya} (°baal-i-a) ‘increase (tr.)’ > \textit{beesy} / \textit{baasiisye}

Some other verbs of the shape (C)VCG form their perfective stems by copying (C\_1)VC\_2G \rightarrow (C\_1)VC\_2-ii-C\_2G-e.\textsuperscript{7}

- \textit{bɪfwa} ‘ripen’ > \textit{bɪfiifwe}
- \textit{ibwa} ‘forget’ > \textit{ibiibwe}
- \textit{ikya} ‘be(come) confident’ > \textit{ikiikye}
- \textit{okya} ‘grill, burn’ > \textit{okiikye}
- \textit{litgwa} ‘be eaten’ > \textit{litgiigwe} (also \textit{litgilwe}; see above)
- \textit{peegwa} ‘be given’ > \textit{peegiigwe}

6.4.2.3 Tri- and polysyllabic verbs

With verbs that have three or more syllables, imbrication is the default.

- \textit{aganila} ‘meet’ > \textit{aganiile}
- \textit{gundamika} ‘bend over’ > \textit{gundamiike}
- \textit{guulɪla} ‘wait for’ > \textit{guuliile}
- \textit{ittikɪla} ‘answer; approve’ > \textit{ittikiile}
- \textit{geleka} ‘thatch, pile’ > \textit{ geliike}
- \textit{koolɪla} ‘call; name; bid’ > \textit{kooliile}
- \textit{bagala} ‘carry on shoulder’ > \textit{bageele}
- \textit{fumbata} ‘(en)close’ > \textit{fumbeete}
- \textit{jobana} ‘converse’ > \textit{jobeene}
- \textit{honyoka} ‘be slackened; give in’ > \textit{honywike}
- \textit{kosomola} ‘cough’ > \textit{kosomwile}
- \textit{bʊmbʊlʊka} ‘get well, be healed’ > \textit{bʊmbʊlwike}

\textsuperscript{7}For \textit{bɪfwa}, Berger (1938) and Felberg (1996) list \textit{bɪfwifwe} as a variant, while for \textit{ibwa} Berger (1938) also has \textit{ibwibwe}; Nurse (1979) has \textit{okya} > \textit{okyokye}, thus (C\_1)(G)VC\_2G \rightarrow (C\_1)VC\_2GV-i\_C\_2G-e. All the speakers consulted in the present study rejected these forms, which seems to be a case of diatopic variation (both Felberg’s and Berger’s main sources stem from more southern varieties). Felberg (1996) further lists a copying stem for \textit{miimwa} ‘crave; envy’, which was also rejected.

149
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

fyotsla ‘pull out’ > fyostwile
fujula ‘humiliate, dishonour’ > fujwile
amula ‘answer’ > amwile

With the long allomorph of the reciprocal -aan and its causativized/plurational form -(is)aani, imbrication takes place:

(26) bʊngaana ‘(be) assemble(d)’ > bʊngeene
bʊngaania ‘gather’ > bʊngeenie
lʊngaana ‘join together (intr.)’ > lʊngeene
lʊngiṣaania ‘put together, arrange’ > lʊngiṣeenie
ongaana ‘be together, mixed’ > ongeene
ongaania ‘mix, sum up’ > ongeenie

The verb ilaamwa ‘disregard, doubt’ shows some variation. An imbricating stem ileemwe, as well as ilaamwisye was observed. Berger (1938) observes a third hybrid variant ileemwisye. With the speakers consulted, ileemwe is the most frequent form.

All other verbs which have more than two syllables, a long rightmost vowel and that are not causatives form their perfective stems by suffixation of -ile:

(27) jɪgɪɪla ‘shake (intr.)’ > jɪgɪɪlile
ogeela ‘swim’ > ogeelile
niembeteela ‘wrap, conceal’ > niembeteelile
tendeela ‘peep, peek’ > tendeelile
kolooma ‘grown’ > koloomile

With verbs that feature a base-final prenasalized plosive (recall that these predictably induce lengthening in the preceding vowel), as well as with causatives having a long vowel in the rightmost position (minus those containing the reciprocal plus causative, as discussed above), variation is found. Typically, the former trigger suffixing of -ile while the latter trigger copying, which yields -Ciisye/-Ciifye. These are the only formations given by Schumann (1899) and Berger (1938) that are attested in the textual data. However, at least for the verbs given in (29, 30), some speakers also have imbricating forms.∗

∗Given this variation and the variant forms of ilaamwa, together with the fact that tri- and polysyllabic verbs ending in -aan(i) induce imbrication, one might suspect a loosening constraint against imbrication with long and lengthened vowels (in terms of moraic phonology: bimoraic vowels). Felberg (1996) lists bulunga > bulungile / bulwinge, [a]alsysya / [a]alwsyye (indication of vowel length missing) and palamaasya > palamaasiisye / palameesye.
6.4 Morphophonology of common TMA suffixes

(28) Copying with -VV{s, f}y:
- *malîsya* ‘end, eliminate’ → *malîsiisye*
- *eneesya* ‘inspect, visit’ → *eneesiisye*
- *balabaasya* ‘spread out (tr.); pretend’ → *balabaasiisye*
- *syʊngʊʊsya* ‘rotate (tr.)’ → *syʊngʊʊsiisye*
- *nyonyoofya* ‘attract, rouse desire’ → *nyonyoofiifye*

(29) Variation with -VNC:
- *onanga* ‘destroy’ → *onangile / onenge*
- *tononda* ‘peck; dot up’ → *tonondile / tonwinde*
- *kung’unda* ‘shake off; beat up’ → *kung’undile / kung’winde*
- *bulunga* ‘roll up, make round’ → *bulungile / bulwinge*

(30) Variation with -VVsy:
- *palamaasya* ‘touch; grope’ → *palamaasiisye / palameesye*
- *tangaasya* ‘proclaim (<SWA)’ → *tangaasiisye / tangeesye*
- *laalʊʊsya* ‘ask’ → *laalʊʊsiisye / laalwisye*

Lastly, partially reduplicated that have one of the shapes C₁V₁V₁V₂C₂ or C₂G₁V₁C₁G₁V₁C₂, where C₂ is an approximant or plosive, are treated as if disyllabic. The same holds for spirantized causatives (§4.2.2) thereof. Although for the first pattern this behaviour could also be motivated by the rightmost long vowel, the second group shows that this is rather a function of the overall phonemic shape. It is a noteworthy fact that all the attested verbs in question can be considered onomatopoetic or de-ideophonic. A similar rule that blocks imbrication holds in Yao P21 (Berger 1938: 112, 120). This suggests itself to be functionally motivated, in order to preserve the sound symbolism. For a discussion of how sound symbolism can motivate exceptions on the diachronic axis, see Dimmendaal (2011: 55f).

(31) Shape C₁V₁C₁V₁V₂C₂:
- *boboota* ‘grunt’ → *bobootile*
- *hohoola* ‘jeer’ → *hohoolile*
- *ng’ong’oola* ‘grimace at’ → *ng’ong’oolile*
- *nyunyuuta* ‘whine’ → *nyunyuutile*
- *nyinyiila* ‘squint’ → *nyinyiilile*

(32) Shape C₂G₁V₁C₁G₁V₁C₂:
- *bwabwata* ‘blab, talk nonsense’ → *bwabwatile*
- *bwabwaja* ‘blab, talk nonsense’ → *bwabwajile*
- *mwemweka* ‘glitter’ → *mwemwekile*
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

(33) Shape C₁G₁V₁C₁G₁V₂⁻𝑖CAUS:

mwemwesya ‘move around light’ > mwemwesiiseye
myamyasya ‘smoothen out’ > myamyasiiseye
i-ng’weng’wesya ‘grumble’ > i-ng’weng’wesiiseye
ng’wang’wasya ‘not do thoroughly’ > ng’wang’wasiiseye

6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

In the following, present (non-past) and past tense constructions consisting of solely the inflected verb will be described. These are listed in Table 6.4.

Table 6.4: Synthetic non-past/present and past tense constructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple present</td>
<td>sm₂⁻kʊ⁻vb⁻a</td>
<td>tʊkʊjoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative present</td>
<td>sm⁻ti⁻kʊ⁻vb⁻a</td>
<td>tʊtikʊjoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfective</td>
<td>sm⁻vb⁻ile</td>
<td>tʊjobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. present perfective</td>
<td>sm⁻ka⁻vb⁻a</td>
<td>tʊkajoba</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past perfective</td>
<td>sm⁻a(l)⁻vb⁻ile</td>
<td>twajobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. past perfective</td>
<td>sm⁻ka⁻a(l)⁻vb⁻ile</td>
<td>tʊkaajobile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past imperfective</td>
<td>sm⁻a⁻vb⁻aga</td>
<td>twajobaga</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. past imperfective</td>
<td>sm⁻ka⁻a⁻vb⁻aga</td>
<td>tʊkaajobaga</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.5.1 Simple present

The simple present is formed by a subject prefix from the second series (see §3.3.2) followed by a prefix kʊ- in post-initial position, together with the final vowel -a.

(34) tʊkʊjoba ‘we speak / are speaking’

The familiar label simple present is applied to this construction for reasons of convenience. More precisely, this construction can be understood as the imperfective counterpart to the present perfective (§6.5.3). Depending on context and co-text, the simple present can have a continuous/progressive reading (35). For a discussion of this reading vis-à-vis the periphrastic progressive, see §6.6.1.
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

(35) tʊ-kʊ-fw-a, ji-kʊ-tʊ-gog-a 1-n-galamu
1PL-PRS-die-FV 9-PRS-1PL-kill-FV AUG-9-lion

'We’re dying, the lion is killing us.' [Chief Kapyungu]

The availability of this continuous reading hinges on the availability of a pre-
culminative phase, i.e. an extended Onset or Nucleus phase (see Chapter 5), or
alternatively, as in (35), the availability of a series reading.

The simple present is found in some further functions that can be related to its
continuous reading. These are illustrated in the following examples (terminology
following Binnick 1991: 247). For use of the simple present as a narrative present,
see §6.7.1.

(36) Reportative:
ii-peasi lɪ-mo li-ko-satuk-a paa-si. i-ko-sal-a
5-pear(<SWA) 5-one 5-PRS-fall-FV 16-down 1-PRS-pick-FV
n=ʊ-kʊ-pugut-a n=ɪ-ki-tambala. i-ko-bruk-a kangɪ
COM=AUG-15-shake_off-FV COM=AUG-7-cloth 1-PRS-put-FV again
n-kt-kapʊ
17-8-basket

‘One pear falls on the ground. He picks it up and cleans it with a cloth.
He puts it back into the basket.’ [Elisha Pear Story]

(37) Performative:
n-gʊ-mm-oosy-a ʊ-mw-ana ʊ-jʊ Joni
1SG-PRS-1-baptize-FV AUG-1-child AUG-PROX.1 J.

‘I baptize [name] this child John.’ [ET]

The simple present is further used in habitual and generic statements:

(38) i-ŋ-gambilɪ si-ti-kʊ-j-a n=ɪ-n-dumbula
AUG-10-monkey 10-NEG-PRS-be(com)me-FV COM=AUG-10-heart
m-mu-nda. i-ŋ-gambilɪ tʊ-kʊ-si-lek-a m-mi-piki
18-3?-inside_of_body AUG-10-monkey 1PL-PRS-10-let-FV 18-4-tree

‘Monkeys don’t have their hearts inside the body. Us monkeys, we leave
them in the trees.’ [Crocodile and Monkey]

(39) po na lilino li-kʊ-kol-a kʊkɔti i-sɪku. looli i-ngukʊ
then COM now/today 5-PRS-grasp-FV every 5-day but AUG-10-chicken
kw-ag-a kʊkɔti ka-balɪlo si-li paa-si, si-kʊ-lond-a
2SG-PRS-find-FV every 12-time 10-COP 16-down 10-PRS-search-FV
The simple present can also be used to refer to future eventualities, often within the same day. In (40), the speaker, Monkey, angrily soliloquises, announcing that Tortoise will pay back his overdue debts this very same day. In (41), a strange woman has visited the speaker’s wife and asked for breast milk. She was told to come back later and now the husband explain his plans to trap her, using the simple present with future reference.

(40) ii-sikʊ lɪ-hi-ngi po a-al-iis-ile mwa=n-gambɪlɪ, 5-day 5-5-other then 1-pst-come-pfv matronym=9-monkey a-al-iis-ile n=i-ly-ojo “lilmo kʊ-m-b-a=kʊ 1-pst-come-pfv com=aug-5-anger now/today 2sg.prs-1sg-give-fv=17 n-heela j-ango, kʊ-m-b-a=kʊ n-heela aug-money(9) 9-poss.1sg 2sg.prs-1sg-give-fv=17 aug-money(9) j-ango” i-kʊ-job-a mu-n-jila 9-poss.1sg 1-prs-speak-fv 18-9-path ‘Another day Mr. Monkey came, he came with anger. “Today you’re giving me my money, you’re giving me my money” he is saying on the way.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

(41) lɪnga iis-ile u-ne n-gw-i-fis-a n-gʊ-j-a if/when 1.come-pfv aug-1sg 1sg-prs-refl-hide-fv 1sg-prs-be(com) fv kʊʊ-sofu, u-gwe u-job-ege nagwe ukʊtɪ a-kʊ-p-e 17-room.9 aug-2sg 2sg-speak-ipfv.subj com.1 comp 1-2sg-give-subj i-ki-kombe gʊ-n-kam-il-e. u-ne n-gʊ-n-kol-a ukʊtɪ aug-7-cup 2sg-1-milk-appl-subj aug-1sg 1sg-prs-1-hold-fv comp a-m-bʊʊl-e i-fi i-kʊ-bomb-el-a! 1-1sg-tell-subj aug-prox.8 1-prs-do-appl-fv ‘When she comes, I’ll hide, I’ll be in the bedroom, you talk with her so that she gives you the cup so that you can express milk for her. I’ll catch her so that she tells me what she does with it!’ [Killer woman]

Rather than being a calendric constraint, the present day is the default for the futurate use of the simple present. However, the simple present can also be used to talk about eventualities later than the same day. This is common with plans
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

(42) and regular or scheduled eventualities (43). What is more, the simple present can be used to talk about a future eventuality with certainty (44); see also (10) on p. 253.

(42) Context: The household help informs that she will not be present the next day.
  kr-laabo n-gʊ-sumuk-a kʊ-Tʊkʊjʊ
  7-tomorrow 1sgprs-depart-fv 17-T.
  ‘Tomorrow I am heading to Tukuyu.’ [overheard]

(43) kr-laabo n=ʊ-lʊ-bʊnjʊ fiijo iš-ʊba li-kʊ-sook-a
  7-tomorrow com=aug-11-morning intens 5-sun 5-prs-leave-fv
  ‘The sun rises early tomorrow morning.’ [ET]

(44) Context: Mbeya FC is playing against Simba SC tomorrow. You are sure that Mbeya FC will win.
  tʊ-kʊ-ba-tol-a kr-laabo
  1plprs-2-defeat-fv 7-tomorrow
  ‘We are defeating them tomorrow (sic!).’ [ET]

Conversely, when specifically evoking a later period of the same day as the reference frame, the future proclitic aa= (§8.2) is used. (45) illustrates this. Note that the proclitic is represented as a= in this example, as it is followed by a prenasalized plosive and its length is thus predictable. Likewise, addition of the future proclitic changes (44) above to a mere prediction (46).

(45) Context: Talking about the speaker’s plans for the evening.
  na=a-ma-jolo a=n-gʊ-j-a pa-kʊ-bomb-a pa-ky-alo
  com=aug-6-evening fut=1sgprs-be(come)-fv 16-15-work-fv 16-8-field
  ‘In the evening I will be working in the field.’ [ET]

(46) Context: Mbeya FC is playing against Simba SC tomorrow. You think that Mbeya FC will win.
  aa=tʊ-kʊ-ba-tol-a kr-laabo
  fut=1plprs-2-defeat-fv 7-tomorrow
  ‘We will defeat them tomorrow.’ [ET]

In past narrative discourse, the simple present features as a narrative present and in subordinate contexts; see §6.7. It is also found in the coda section of some narratives, with reference to the speaker-now, as in (39) above.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

6.5.2 Negative present

The negative counterpart to the simple present consists of the post-initial negative prefix ti followed by the present prefix kʊ- and the final vowel -a. As the subject prefix is not directly adjacent to the present prefix, the series 1 prefixes are used; see §3.3.2. Diachronically speaking, ti-kʊ- most likely goes back to the fusion of ta- and ikʊ-; see §3.3.2 on the vowel /i/ preceding the present prefix. The negative prefix is ta- in all indicative constructions in neighbouring Ngonde (Kishindo 1999: 77), as well as in Ndali (Botne 2008: 108–116) and Sukwa (Kershner 2002: 45–51).

(47) totikʊjoba ‘we do not speak / we are not speaking’

Like its affirmative counterpart, the negative present has a continuous reading (48), which also serves as the negative counterpart to the present progresive (§6.6.1). It is also used for negative habituals and generics (49, 50).

(48) bole, a-li pa-kʊ-ly-a? – mma, a-ti-kʊ-ly-a
    Q 1-COP 16-15-eat-FV no 1-NEG-PRS-eat-FV
    ‘Is s/he eating?’ – ‘No, s/he is not eating.’ [ET]

(49) u-gʊʊso m-oolo. a-ti-kʊ-bomb-a n=ɪ-m-bombo
    AUG-your_father(1) 1-lazy 1-NEG-PRS-work-FV COM=AUG-9-work
    na=jɪ-mo. i-kʊ-syʊngʊʊtɪ-a itol?
    COM=9-one 1-PRS-surround-FV just
    ‘Your father is lazy. He doesn’t do any work. He just wanders around.’
    [Monkey and Tortoise]

(50) n=ɪ-swi 1-si si-li=mo n-ki-siba mu-la,
    COM=AUG-fish(10) AUG-PROX.10 10-COP=18 18-7-pond 18-DIST
    a-b-eene ka-aja a-ba ba-li kifuki ba-ti-kʊ-ly-a,
    AUG-2-owner 12-homestead AUG-PROX.2 2-COP near 2-NEG-PRS-eat-FV
    paapo a-ba-ndʊ ba-al-ibiile ba-a-jonjiile
    because AUG-2-person 2-PST-sink,PFV 2-PST-disappear,PFV
    paa~po
    REDUPL~REF.16
    ‘And as for the fish in that pond, the people living near do not eat them, because people sank and disappeared there.’ [Selfishness kills]

The following examples illustrate the use of the negative present in negative futurates.
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

(51) n-sulumeenie fiijo paapo ʊlʊ n-iis-ile n-kʊ-kw-eg-a
1SG-afflict.PFV INTENS because now 1SG-come-PFV 18-15-2SG-take-FV
fiijo intens paapo
ʊlʊ now
n-iis-ile 1sg-come-PFV
n-kʊ-kw-eg-a 18-15-2sg-take-FV
‘I’m very sad, because this time that I’ve come to pick you up you won’t return.’ [Crocodile and Monkey]

(52) Context: According to contract we do not work the next day.
kr-laabo tu-ti-kʊ-bomok-a ɪ-m-bombo
7-tomorow 1PL-NEG-PRS-work-FV AUG-9-work
‘Tomorrow we do not work.’ [ET]

6.5.3 Present perfective

6.5.3.1 Formal makeup and overview of meaning

The present perfective is formed with the perfective final suffix -ile or one of its allomorphs; see §6.4.2.

(53) tojobile ‘we have spoken’

The meaning of the present perfective depends on the aspectual class of the lexical verb. When used with non-inchoative verbs, it refers to a completed act (54). With inchoative verbs, the default reading of the present perfective is one of a present state (55).

(54) mu-keet-ile leelo, mu-keet-ile leelo! n-iis-ile ne
2PL-watch-PFV now/but 2PL-watch-PFV now/but 1SG-COME-PFV 1SG
malafyale
chief(1)
‘You have seen now! You have seen now! I have come as a king.’ [Hare and Hippo]

(55) a-kaleele
1-be(come)_angry.PFV

(Defualt reading:) ‘S/he is angry.’ [ET]

Accordingly, the present perfective is used with inchoative verbs in a number of cases that translate as a simple present or present progressive in English. The following are a few examples; for narrative present uses see §6.7.1.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

(56) Stative:

\text{ee, nalooli n-\text{\-}do\text{-}gan-ile}
\text{yes really 1sg-11-love-PFV}

“Yes, I really love him [spider].” [Hare and Spider]

(57) Stative:

\text{a-tougeele pa-ki-kota, a-l\text{\-}t\text{\-}kwa\text{-}mb\text{\-}a 1-ki\text{-}tab\text{\-}a}
\text{1-get\text{-}seated/sit.PFV 16-7\text{-}chair 1-COP 16-15\text{-}read-PFV AUG-7\text{-}book(<SWA)}

“He is sitting in a chair, reading a book.” [ET]

(58) Reportative:

\text{i-ku-kmd-a o-n-nyambala n\text{=}1-m-bene. a-kol-ile}
\text{1-PRS\text{-}pass-PFV AUG-1\text{-}man COM\text{=}AUG-9\text{-}goat 1-grasp/hold-PFV}
\text{\text{\text\text{-}kamba AUG\text{-}rope(9)(<SWA)}

“A man with a goat passes. He holds a rope.” [Elisha Pear Story]

Although a present state reading is more common with inchoative verbs, the present perfective also allows for a change-of-state reading (59). However, to express that the resultant state of an inchoative verb held at a certain time in the past, the past perfective has to be used (60).

(59) Context: How did your father react when he heard the news this morning?

\text{pa-bw-andilo a-kaleele fiijo, ul\text{\-}o si-maliike}
\text{16-14\text{-}beginning 1-be(come)_angry.PFV INTENS now 10\text{-}finish.PFV}

“First he got angry, but now the anger is gone.” [ET]

(60)

\text{a-a-kaleele}
\text{1-PST\text{-}be\text{(come)}\_angry.PFV}

(Default reading:) ‘S/he was angry.’ [ET]

\footnote{Crane (2011: 127) gives a pragmatic explanation as to why the stative reading is the default for inchoative verbs: “With change-of-state verbs [inchoatives, BP], the implicature of continued resultant state is particularly salient. This implicature is easy to derive from general conversational principles of relevance. Use of a verb describing entry into a state, in general, is most relevant if the state holds at perspective time. For example, [in Totela K41, BP] a verb like -taba ‘become happy’, requires no direct reference to the situation resulting in happiness, although the context may provide such information. Thus, when uttering ndataba without much other context, a speaker is less likely to be referring to the rather ethereal process of obtaining happiness than to the ensuing happy state.”}
Like all present tense paradigms, the present perfective can be used with relative time reference in a number of subordinate contexts and as a narrative present (§6.7). Given the right context, it can also be used to refer to a completed eventuality situated in future time. In (61) the future reference anchor established by the adverbial clause is re-introduced through a stressed form of the class 14 referential demonstrative bo. In (62), context plus tajali ‘already’ (a Swahili loan) licenses a future reading. Note that in many cases this is the only way of depicting a future state without referring to its inception.

(61) ʊ-lɪ n-sekele fiijo, kangi lmga ga-kmd-ile a-ma-sikʊ ma-nandi, 2SG-COP 1-thin INTENS again if/when 6-pass-PFV AUG-6-day 6-little
ʊ-gwe bo ʊ-fw-ile
AUG-2SG ref.14 2SG-die-PFV
‘You are very tiny, also, when few days have passed, then you’ll be dead.’
[Mosquito and Ear]

(62) Context: Your brother is late for dinner.
LMGA a-fik-ile 1-fi-ndʊ tajalɪ fi-talaliile
if/when 1-arrive-PFV AUG-8-food already(<SWA) 8-cool.PFV
‘When he arrives, the food will be cold.’ [ET]

6.5.3.2 Perfectivity as completion of the Nucleus

The question now arises as to whether there is a common semantic core to the different readings and uses of the present perfective. Botne (2010: 43) defines perfectivity in Bantu as “an assertion about a time of the event subsequent to the endpoint of the event nucleus”. Recall from §1.4.3.1 that Nucleus in Botne & Kershner’s framework is the characteristic act encoded in the verb. With inchoative verbs this is the change-of-state; with most types of non-inchoatives it is the eventuality as such.

Botne’s definition of perfectivity obviously differs from the more widespread one in theories of grammatical aspect, according to which “perfectivity indicates the view of a situation as a whole, without distinction of the various separate phases that make up the situation” (Comrie 1976: 16). It does, however, correspond to what Botne & Kershner (2000) call “completive” for the Zulu S42 suffix -ile, a label that is also employed by Botne (2008) and Kershner (2002) for -ite (allomorphs i.a. -ile) in Nyakyusa’s neighbours Ndali and Sukwa. A comparable use of completive is already found in Welmers (1974). Crane (2011: 118–142), in a lengthy discussion of the subject in Totela K41, speaks of “nuclear completion”.

159
Botne’s definition also comes close to Johanson’s (2000: 29) “postterminal viewpoint”, that “envisag[es] the event after the transgression of its relevant limit”. Johnson’s “relevant limit”, however, hinges upon a conception of Aristotelian aspect similar to Sasse & Breu’s (see §1.4.3.1). In the present study, the term perfective is preferred over completive, as the latter is commonly used with a sense of “to do something thoroughly and to completion, e.g. to shoot someone dead, to eat up” (Bybee et al. 1994: 318). What is more, the term perfective stresses the opposition to a clearly imperfective category, opposition which is central to the Nyakyusa TMA system.

Adopting the above definition of perfectivity, the different readings of the perfective in Nyakyusa find a unified explanation. With non-inchoatives, a post-Nucleus vantage point equals a vantage point following the situation as a whole. This is depicted in Figure 6.1 for the activity verb moga ‘dance’. As for inchoative verbs, both the stative and the change-of-state reading can be explained by a post-Nucleus vantage point. In the more common stative reading, the vantage point falls within the stative coda phase. For the present perfective used in main clauses this normally coincides with the time of speech, thus giving a present state reading. A change-of-state reading arises from a vantage point following the eventuality as a whole. That is to say, the perfective selects a time as following the Nucleus as the vantage point, but is vague as to the exact position of the eventuality. Figure 6.2 depicts the two perspectives for the transitional achievement kalala ‘be(come) angry’.

---

10The following argumentation owes much to Crane’s (2011) ample discussion of the concept of completion of the Nucleus phase in Totela K41, which shares a number of similarities with Nyakyusa.
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

6.5.3.3 Present perfective vs. anterior

It is opportune at this point to consider an alternative analysis of present perfective construction. At first glance, the Nyakyusa configuration \( \emptyset \text{vb}-\text{ile} \) resembles an anterior or perfect.\(^{11}\) This is how it has been labelled in some of the previous accounts of Nyakyusa: Schumann (1899) speaks of a “Perfectum” and Endemann (1914) of a “Perfekt”. Likewise, Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960c) use the label “recent perfect”. The anterior (perfect) is also how this construction is in many cases conveniently translated into English. In fact, the Nyakyusa present perfective covers all of the sentences in Dahl’s (1985) tense and aspect questionnaire that are identified as prototypical for the employment of the crosslinguistic category of anteriors.

An analysis as an anterior is also suggested by the criteria proposed in Nurse’s pan-Bantu study of tense and aspect, in which he identifies the configuration \( \emptyset \text{vb}-\text{ile} \) as the most common marker of anteriors in his sample of Bantu languages (Nurse 2008: 156). More importantly, Nurse (2008: 95–99) proposes a number of criteria specific to the morphosyntactic make-up of Bantu languages in order to distinguish between anteriors on the one hand and near past perfectives on the other. Two of these criteria can readily be applied to Nyakyusa. The first one concerns the interaction of grammatical aspect with the aspectual potential of the lexical verb. Drawing on the concepts of consequent state and relevance, which are widely considered core components of anteriors, Nurse states:

For an action verb, for example, anterior represents a situation that is completed but relevant, whereas for a stative verb anterior represents the continuing state resulting from an action initiated in the past. (Nurse 2008: 73)

---

\(^{11}\)The term anterior, as used by among others Bybee et al. (1994), is synonymous with the traditional perfect, but has the advantage of not being easily confused with perfective.
As has been seen in §6.5.3.1, while a resultant state reading is indeed the default for the Nyakyusa present perfective with inchoative verbs (Nurse’s statives), a dynamic change-of-state reading is also available. More example cases are given in the following. In (63) the resultant state is explicitly cancelled for utterance time, leaving only the dynamic reading. In (64), the question is about a previous event of turning angry, not a present state.\(^{12}\) Lastly, in (65) the event time adverbia! phrase ‘last year’ allows only for a change-of-state reading. While ‘to die’ in English is often considered a punctual achievement (e.g. Dowty 1979: 54), its Nyakyusa equivalent fwa is an inchoative verb inchoative verbs best translated as ‘to be moribund/die/be dead’; see §5.3.4. Also note that lexical verbs which are non-inchoative but suggest entry into a state do not depend upon a result persisting at utterance time, as with isa ‘come’ in (67) below.

(63) \(\text{ii-treni ly-m-ile, lmo li-kw-end-a kang\texti{i}}\)
\(5\text{-train(<SWA)} \> 5\text{-stand/stop-Pfv now 5-PRS-walk/travel-fv again}\)
‘The train stopped, but now it is moving again.’ [ET]

(64) \(\text{a-kaleele=mo sik\texti{o baaba gw-ako?}}\)
\(1\text{-be(come)}\_\textit{angry.Pfv}=\textit{some ever father(<SWA)} 1\text{-poss.2sg}\)
‘Has your father ever become angry?’ [ET]

(65) \(\text{a-fw-ile r-ky-inja r-ki ki-knd-ile}\)
\(1\text{-die-Pfv AUG-7-year AUG-PROX.7 7-pass-Pfv}\)
‘He died last year.’ [ET]

What is more, the present perfective does not feature a strong relevance component. Instead it is the default paradigm for relating recent non-progressive states-of-affairs. In doing so it can be freely used with sequential eventualities, which is a negative criterion for anteriors (Dahl 1985: 138; Bybee et al. 1994: 54; Lindsted 2000: 371). The following examples illustrate both points. In (66) Tortoise asks his child for the whereabouts of a grindstone. Tortoise’s child’s answer consists of three clauses. In the first, the past perfective with inchoative kalala ‘be(come) angry’ refers to Mr. Monkey’s previous state of mind, which has not only passed but is background information. In the two following clauses, the eventualities affecting the discourse topic (the grindstone) are summarized in the form of a minimal narrative using the present perfective. In (67) a woman reports to her husband the recent happenings, again using two narrative clauses with the present perfective.

\(^{12}\) See §3.3.8.4 on the enclitic =\textit{mo}. 

162
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

(66) mw-anangʊ, kʊ-lɪ koo=kʊʊɡʊ Ṽ-lw-ala lw-angʊ?
1-my_child 11-COP REF.17=where AUG-11-grindstone 11-POS.1SG
‘[Tortoise:] My child, where is my grindstone?’

aah, mwa=n-gambɪlɪ a-a-kaleele fiijo.
INTERJ matronym=9-monkey 1-PST-be(come)_angry.PFV INTENS
ee-g-ile Ṽ-lw-ala kʊ-la, a-taag-ile m-mi-syanjʊ
1.take-PFV AUG-11-grindstone 11-DIST 1-throw-PFV 18-4-bush
‘[Tortoise’s child:] Aah, Mr. Monkey was very angry. He took that grindstone, he threw it into the bush.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

(67) iis-ile=po Ṽ-mu-ndʊ ju-mo, a-a-soʊm-ag a-ma-beele.
1.come-PFV=16 AUG-1-person 1-one 1-PST-beg-IPFV AUG-6-breast_milk
leelo n-um-boʊl-ile ʊkɔtɪ iis-e na=a-ma-jolo
now/but 1SG-1-tell-PFV COMP 1.come-SUBJ COM=AUG-6-evening
‘Somebody came by, she was asking for breast milk. I told her to come back in the evening.’ [Killer woman]

To sum up so far, the Nyakyusa present perfective neither necessarily brings about a persistent result, nor does it feature a strong relevance component. Now, recall from §1.4.2 that Botne & Kershner define tense in terms of inclusion and exclusion of the deictic locus. Being a present tense construction, not only does the vantage point evoked by the present perfective by default coincide with the time of speech, but the eventuality depicted is also situated within the same reference frame. Any notion of prevailing effects can thus be understood as a mere function of the eventuality being included within the here-and-now reality of the speech event, particularly when taking into consideration the opposition to its past tense counterpart a(ɪ)-vb-ile. There is thus no need to assume any of the further components of meaning commonly assumed in the literature on anteriors such as the introduction of a “perfect state” (Moens 1987; Moens & Steedman 1988), “result state” (Kamp & Reyle 1993) or a modal presupposition (Portner 2003),13 see Ritz (2012) for an overview of common theories of anteriors.

Nurse’s second criterion concerns compound verb constructions. Anteriors, but not perfectives, should be found in these. The present perfective with inchoative verbs can serve as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (§6.6.2), which would speak in favour of a classification as an anterior. However,

13 Also note that these authors, in drawing on Reichenbach (1947), take as a starting point the temporal ordering of an eventualty relative to a reference point (which for a present anterior equals time of speech), as in Reichenbach’s famous formalisation “E–R,S”. As seen in §6.5.3.2, the vantage point evoked rather follows the characteristic act (Nucleus) which may be followed by a resultant state phase (Coda).
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

the same combinatory possibility also holds for the past perfective, which itself is most likely derived historically from a compound verb construction consisting of the copula plus the present perfective (§6.5.5).

Furthermore, the notion of ‘still’, as expressed through the persistive in Nyakyusa, is typically incompatible with anteriors (see Nedjalkov & Jaxontov 1988, among others). To combine with ‘still’ is instead said to be a hallmark of resultatives. These are grammatical constructions that express a state brought about by a past situation. In this they differ from anteriors, which focus on the past situation itself (Dahl 1985: 134; Bybee et al. 1994: 69). The Nyakyusa perfective in its stative reading asserts that the subject is in the resultant state of the act lexically encoded as the Nucleus, and thus comes closer to a resultative than to an anterior. As seen in §6.5.3.2 above, this resultative-like reading falls out naturally from the analysis of -ile as a marker of nuclear completion.

Lastly, consider the organization of the Nyakyusa TAM system. Within the present tense, the perfective contrasts primarily with the simple present. While the perfective selects a time posterior to the right edge of the Nucleus phase, the simple present denotes the unfolding or future occurrence of a single eventuality. That is, it denotes a time before the endpoint of the Nucleus. In the past tense, the very same opposition is found between the past perfective – which shows the same interaction with the lexical dimension – and the past imperfective.

In sum, an analysis of the configuration ø-vb-ile as an anterior is contradicted by its semantics and distribution. Instead, its meaning and use, including any overlap with the crosslinguistic category of anterior, are readily explained by the aspectual notion of a post-Nucleus vantage point, together with the present tense “denoting a primary, prevailing [...] perspective” (Botne & Kershner 2008: 153). What is more, postulating an analysis of ø-vb-ile as an anterior would preclude a compositional analysis of its past-marked counterpart a(lt)-vb-ile.14 It would also miss the systematic parallel between the aspectual oppositions in the present and past tenses.

6.5.3.4 Summary

To sum up, the Nyakyusa present perfective depicts the completion of an eventuality’s Nucleus without dissociation to a distant reference frame. In this it forms part of a coherent grammatical system, centred around the notions of perfectiv-

14Unless both are analysed as anteriors, which would not only render this label vacuous, but is contradicted by the negative criteria of their compatibility with sequential events and persistive aspect.
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

ity as completion of the Nucleus phase in the dimension of grammatical aspect, and association vs. dissociation in the dimension of tense.

Consistent with this analysis, in past tense narrative discourse the present perfective is found in a few clearly determined environments: first, as a narrative present, where it provides information ancillary to the storyline and patterns with the simple present and present copula; and second, with relative time reference in subordinate clauses. These two kinds of uses are discussed separately in §6.7. Lastly, it features in the coda section of some narratives (68), where it refers to the speaker-now and is again in predictable alternation with the other present-tense paradigms.

(68) a-ka-pango ka-mal-iike
     AUG-12-story 12-finish-NEUT.PFV
     ‘The story is over.’ [Monster with Guitar]

6.5.4 Negative present perfective

The negative counterpart to the present perfective consists of the negative post-initial prefix ka- and the default final vowel -a.

(69) tskajoba ‘we have not spoken’

With inchoative verbs, this construction typically negates the resultant state (70), while with non-inchoatives, the eventuality is typically understood not to have occurred (71).

(70) ba-ki-gan-a u-kʊ-bomb-el-a i-fy-ombo i-fy-a
     2-NEG-REFL-like-FV AUG-15-work-APPL-FV AUG-8-tool AUG-8-ASSOC
     kw-asim-a ku-ba-palamani
     15-borrow-FV 17-2-neighbour
     ‘They do not like to work with tools borrowed from neighbours’ [Types of tools in the home]

(71) mma, a-ka-job-a bo u-łʊ. a-t-ile “kalʊtʊ u-ju
     no, 1-NEG-speak-FV as AUG-PROX.11 1-say-PFV hare(1) AUG-PROX.1
     n-heesya gw-ɪtʊ”
     1-foreigner 1-POS.1PL
     ‘No, he didn’t speak like that. He said “This hare’s our guest.”’ [Saliki and Hare]
Examples such as (72, 73) constitute a variation on Dowty’s (1979) “imperfective paradox”. These were judged redundant but not contradictory. This suggests that what is actually negated is the completion of the Nucleus phase.

(72)  a-ka-fik-a,  leelo  a-li  pa-ku-fik-a  
1-NEG-arrive-fv  now/but  1-COP  16-15-arrive-fv  
‘He has not arrived (yet), but he is arriving.’ [ET]

(73)  a-ka-kalal-a,  leelo  a-li  pa-ku-kalala-a  
1-NEG-be(come)_angry-fv  now/but  1-COP  16-15-be(come)_angry-fv  
‘He is not angry (yet), but he is about to get angry.’ [ET]

6.5.5 Past perfective

6.5.5.1 Formal makeup

The past perfective consists of a prefix a- and the suffix -ile (74); see §6.4.2 on the allomorphs of -ile. Preceding a vowel, i.e. in vowel-initial stems (75) or the reflexive object marker (76), the prefix of the past perfective has the allomorph alɪ-. The usual rules of pre-stem vowel contact apply; see §2.2.1.4.

(74)  twabombile  (°tʊ-a-bomb-ile)  ‘we worked’  
     twakeetile  (°tʊ-a-keet-ile)  ‘we watched’

(75)  twaliisile  (°tʊ-alɪ-is-ile)  ‘we came’  
     twalyymile  (°tʊ-alɪ-ym-ile)  ‘we stopped’  
     twalyegile  (°tʊ-alɪ-eg-ile)  ‘we took’  
     twalyagile  (°tʊ-alɪ-ag-ile)  ‘we found’  
     twalyogile  (°tʊ-alɪ-oğ-ile)  ‘we bathed’  
     twalyʊmile  (°tʊ-alɪ-ʊm-ile)  ‘we dried’

(76)  twaliikeetile  (°tʊ-alɪ-i-keet-ile)  ‘we looked at ourselves’  
     twaliipakile  (°tʊ-alɪ-i-pak-ile)  ‘we painted ourselves’

The same allomorph alɪ- also surfaces preceding the object markers of the first person singular (77) and noun class 1 (78), regardless of their respective allomorphs.15

(77)  mwalɪndaagile  (°mu-alɪ-ny-taag-ile)  ‘you (pl.) threw me’  
     mwalimboxile  (°mu-alɪ-ny-box-ile)  ‘you (pl.) told me’

15See §3.3.4.1, 3.3.4.2 on the morphophonemics of these prefixes.
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

mwalumetile (‘mu-al-ny-met-ile) ‘you (pl.) shaved me’
mwalusalile (‘mu-al-ny-sal-ile) ‘you (pl.) chose me’
mwalunyaagle (‘mu-al-ny-ag-ile) ‘you (pl.) found me’

(78) twalmtaagle (‘to-al-mu-taag-ile) ‘we threw him/her’
twalmboogle (‘to-al-mu-bʊʊl-ile) ‘we told him/her’
twalmmetile (‘to-al-mu-met-ile) ‘we shaved him/her’
twalmsalile (‘to-al-mu-sal-ile) ‘we chose him/her’
twalmmmwagile (‘to-al-mu-ag-ile) ‘we found him/her’
twalmmoottle (‘to-al-mu-ot-ile) ‘we invited him/her’

The sequence /lɪ/ indicates that diachronically the longer form of the prefix is derived from a serial construction involving the copula lɪ (see Botne 1986). From a synchronic perspective, this allomorphy finds a functional explanation: due to the rules of vowel coalescence (§2.2.1.4), a prefix a- would assimilate to the vowel of vowel-initial stems and the reflexive prefix, resulting in forms homophonous with the present perfective. Similarly, any vowel preceding the first person singular object prefix surfaces as long (§3.3.4.1), while any vowel preceding the class 1 object prefix surfaces as short (§3.3.4.2). Again, without the alternation a-/alɪ- this would result in formal identity of the present and past perfective with subjects of 1, 2, 6, 12 and 16. Note that classes 1 and 2 include all human beings. Thus the alternation between a- and alɪ- serves to avoid a high degree of ambiguity.16

6.5.5.2 Overview of meaning

The past perfective construes a state-of-affairs as situated in the conceptual past (i.e. past D-domain in Botne & Kershner’s framework; see §1.4.2.1) with its Nucleus phase completed. The aspectual notion of completion is discussed in more detail in §6.5.3.2. As (77, 78) show, with non-inchoative verbs this gives a typical posterior reading. With inchoative verbs, the default reading is one of a state holding at some contextually defined past moment:

(79) a-a-kaleele
1-PST-be(come)_angry.PFV

(Default reading:) ‘S/he was angry.’ [ET]

However, a posterior, holistic perspective is also possible with inchoative verbs. In the opening of a given in (80), the past perfective with the inchoative verb lam-balala ‘lie down, sleep’ depicts the eventuality as a whole, rather than the state

---

16Interestingly, where Nyakyusa has ø-vb-ile vs. a(li)-vb-ile, the Ngonde variety described by Kishindo (1999: 76f) has an opposition between a-vb-ile and ali-vb-ile.
of being asleep at a certain point in time. The same holds for the inchoative verb 
gona 'rest, sleep' in (81).

(80) po leelo i-n-galamu j-aa-lit m-bine. j-aa-lambaleele
then now/but AUG-9-lion 9-PST-COP 9-ill 9-PST-lie_down.PFV
a-ma-siku ma-tatu n-nyumba
AUG-6-day 6-three 18-house(9)
'Lion was ill. He slept for three days in his house.' [Lion and Tortoise]

(81) bo a-fik-ile ku-ka-aja a-a-gon-ile. n=u-lo-bunju
as 1-arrive-PFV 17-12-homestead 1-PST-rest-PFV COM=AUG-11-morning
a-lnku-buuk-a m-ma-tengele
1-NARR-GO-FV 18-6-bush
'When she arrived home, she slept. In the morning she went into the bush.' [Mfyage turns into a lion]

Note that the past perfective by itself does not denote sequential events. Con-
sider the following plot summary of a story, which was given subsequent to the
itself; Hare’s running alone, mentioned for the first time in (82a), only takes place
after Tugutu’s preparations (82c, 82d). The flowchart in Figure 6.3 illustrates the
relative order of events. The shunt to the right symbolizes that the negative verb
in (82b) remains outside the sequence as a function of its negative polarity.

(82) a. a-a-bop-ile mw-ene, a-a-bop-ile mw-ene kalulù
1-PST-run-PFV 1-self 1-PST-run-PFV 1-self hare(1)
‘He ran alone, Hare ran alone.’
b. mwa=n-dugutu a-ka-a-bop-ile=po
matronym=9-type_of_bird 1-NEG-PST-run-PFV=PART
‘Mr. Tugutu did not run at all.’
c. a-a-ba-paal-ile a-ba-nine
1-PST-2-invite-PFV AUG-2-colleague
‘He had gathered companions.’
d. bo a-ba a-a-ba-bük-ile u-kw-ti maelù ji-mo,
REF.2 AUG-PROX.2 1-PST-2-put-PFV AUG-15-say mile(9)(<EN) 9-one
maelù ji-mo, maelù ji-mo
mile(9) 9-one mile(9) 9-one
‘Those are the ones he placed, like one mile, one mile, one mile.’
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

e. po kalõlõ a-a-bop-ile mw-ene  
  then hare(1) 1-PST-run-PFV 1-self  
  'So Hare ran alone.' [Hare and Tugutu]

Figure 6.3: Relative event order of (82)

6.5.5.3 The past perfective in narrative discourse

6.5.5.3.1 Introduction  While in many languages a perfective form is the principle paradigm for relating the storyline in narrative discourse (see i.a. Hopper 1979; Fleischman 1990), this does not hold for Nyakyusa.\(^{17}\) As discussed in §7.2.2, none of the narrative texts in the corpus exclusively features the past perfective in the recollection of storyline eventualities. Instead, Nyakyusa possesses two dedicated narrative markers – see §7.2 for an introduction – which are employed in a collaborative manner together with the past perfective to fulfil this function.

As was observed in the discussion of (82) above, the past perfective may be used with sequential events, but does not inherently encode any chronological ordering. Further, what is construed with the past perfective has an independent existence in discourse, quite contrary to the narrative tense an subsecutive, which are pragmatically dependent and thus embedded in a situation established by other means, usually through the use of a preceding past tense verb (§7.2.2). A series of mere past perfectives, such as the plot summary in (82) above, thus results in a loose enumeration of discrete events rather than forming a coherent narrative discourse of its own.

In the following, the usage of the past perfective in Nyakyusa narrative discourse will be outlined. In order to identify patterns of usage, it is necessary to

\(^{17}\)For a recent discussion of the relationship between TMA constructions and narrating in African languages see Payne & Shirtz (2015).
first take a look at the typical composition of Nyakyusa narratives (§6.5.5.3.2–6.5.5.3.4). Considering a set of occurrences not readily explained by notions of textual macro-structure (§6.5.5.3.5), it will then be shown that the various uses of the past perfective in discourse form part of a larger coherent pattern of tense usage, whose common denominator is the notion of thematic continuity (§6.5.5.3.6). The following analysis is based mainly on the oral narratives in the corpus, but some additional examples were taken from written texts.

6.5.5.3.2 Opening a narrative  A narrative in Nyakyusa typically opens with an orientation section of varying length. By definition – see §1.4.4.2 – the orientation section depicts states-of-affairs that hold throughout the whole text and orient the listener in respect to the setting. In the expected division of labour with the other past tense paradigms, the past perfective is used here with inchoative verbs, giving a stative reading (83), as well as with non-inchoatives, which have a pluperfect reading (84).

(83) a-a-li=ko kalolo n=n-fubu. ba-a-many-eene fiijo.
1-PST-COP=17 hare(1) COM=AUG-hippo(9) 2-PST-know-RECP.PFV INTENS
kangi b-angal-aga pamopeene u-bu-siku b-oosa
again 2-PST.be_well-IPFV together AUG-14-time 14-all
‘Once upon a time, Hare and Hippo were very much friends. And they used to be together the whole time.’ [Hare and Hippo]

(84) ijolo ky-a-li=ko i-ky-amba. pa-mwanya pa-ky-amba
old_times 7-PST-COP=17 AUG-7-mountain 16-high 16-7-mountain
pa-a-lir pa-tengaamu itolo. ba-a-jeng-ile=po a-ba-nedu ba-tatido
16-PST-COP 16-peaceful just 2-PST-build-PFV=16 AUG-2-person 2-three
‘Long ago there was a mountain. On top of the mountain it was all peaceful. Three people had built there.’ [Selfishness kills]

Following the orientation section, one commonly finds a verb in one of the past tense paradigms that sets the stage for the first episode. In cases where there is no orientation section, this constitutes the opening of the text. For an example of the past perfective in this environment, see (9) on p. 215.

6.5.5.3.3 Textual boundaries  In longer narratives, subsequent major units are commonly also delimited by one or more past tense verbs. This often implies a shift away from one of the narrative markers. These verbs depict the state-of-affairs out of which the following course of events develops. Again, the past
perfective, imperfective and copula pattern together, depending on the aspectual profile of the state-of-affairs and the verb’s Aristotelian aspect.

It is important to note at this point that the notions of boundary marking and staging operate within the textual component. An event that forms part of the semantic storyline may additionally be construed as the setting of a unit within the text if it depicts the circumstances under which following eventualities take place (Payne 1992). By virtue of its aspectual semantics, it is the past perfective that is employed in these cases. Further, it is typically not every episode within longer texts that starts out with a past tense. The following examples will illustrate both points.

In the text “Monkey and Tortoise”, lazy but witty Tortoise sends his child to Monkey’s to get food, pretending to buy it on credit. After obtaining the food, little Tortoise returns home. They enjoy their meals and never make the agreed payment (85). Clause (85a) is the last one in the food-obtaining episode. The following clauses (85b–85e) are all marked for past tense and group together to describe a major discontinuity in action and time. Of these, (85d, 85e), by virtue of the states-of-affairs they depict, as well as the fact that they include two negatives, give information that diverges from the main storyline. The eating in (85b), however, is no less eventive than the preceding walk home. Nevertheless, it is construed as part of the upcoming episode’s setting.

(85)

a. po mw-ene jʊ-la gw-a kajamba a-lnku-bʊʊk-a then 1-self 1-DIST 1-ASSOC tortoise(1) 1-NARR-go-PFV
ku-ka-a-ja n=1-fi-ndu fi-la
17-12-homestead com=AUG-8-food 8-DIST
‘Tortoise’s child went home with that food.’

b. po n=ʊ-gwise po ba-a-l-iɪle then com=AUG-his_father(1) then 2-PST-eat-PFV
‘He and his father ate.’

c. po ba-a-hobwike fiijo a-ma-sikʊ ma-bɪlɪ then 2-PST-be(come)_happy.PFV INTENS AUG-6-day 6-two
‘They were very happy for two days.’

d. leelo bo gi-kind-ile 1-mi-lʊŋʊs mi-bɪlɪ, kajamba now/but as 4-pass-PFV AUG-4-week 4-two tortoise(1)
a-ka-a-buj-iisye. a-ka-a-bʊʊk-ile kw-a
1-NEG-PST-return-CAUS.PFV 1-NEG-PST-go-PFV 17-ASSOC

171
mwa=n-gambɪlɪ kʊ-kʊ-buk-a ni-heela matronym=9-monkey 17-15-put-FV AUG-money(9)

‘When two weeks passed, Tortoise had not paid. He had not gone to Monkey’s to hand over the money.’


‘One week passed. Two weeks passed, not once going to hand it over.’

po mwa=n-gambɪlɪ a-a-tɪ “hee. po m-bʊʊk-e as matronym=9-monkey 1-SUBSEC-say INTERJ then 1SG-go-SUBJ kw-a kajamba kʊ-kʊ-mel-a ni-heela sy-ango” 17-ASSOC tortoise(1) 17-15-claim-FV AUG-money(10) 10-POSS.1SG

‘Then Monkey said “Hee. I shall go to Tortoise to demand my money.”’

a-lɪnkʊ-buj-a 1-narr-return-FV 1-NARR-return/travel-FV kw-a kajamba 1-narr-walk/travel-FV

‘He walked and walked and walked.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

With (85f, 85g) the storyline continues. Tortoise makes an excuse and Monkey gives up on claiming his money that day. This episode is narrated entirely using the (plus one token of a narrative present). Now, after two more weeks, Monkey returns to Tortoise’s only to hear another excuse and to go home again without his money. This episode, whose main events essentially repeat those of the preceding one, is not further delimited by a shift to the past tense (86).

(86) a. kangɪ po bo ɡɪ-kɪnd-ile 1-mi-lʊŋʊ mi-bɪlɪ, kangɪ again then as 4-pass-PFV AUG-4-week 4-two again a-lɪnkʊ-buj-a kw-a kajamba 1-NARR-return-FV 17-ASSOC tortoise(1)

‘When two weeks had passed, he returned again to Tortoise’s.’

b. bo ɪ-kʊ-fɪk-a i-kʊ-mmw-ani-a ʊ-mw-anaake “a-li=po as 1-PRS-arrive-FV 1-PRS-1-ask-FV AUG-1-his_child 1-COP=16 ʊ-gʊʊso a-pa?”

AUG-your_father AUG-PROX.16

‘As he was arriving he asks his (Tortoise’s) child “Is your father here?”’ [Monkey and Tortoise]
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

In contrast, the next episode does start with a shift to the past tense (87). Note how the content of the first two clauses of this episode (87a, 87b) mostly parallels the first clause of the preceding episode (86a). The use of the past perfective instead of the coincides with a change in Monkey’s attitude. This entails an important shift in the development of events. Instead of continuing the routine of the preceding two episodes, Tortoise finds himself needing to resort to a more elaborate trick to get away without paying his debts.

(87)  
a. ii-siku l-li-ngi po a-al-iis-ile mwa=n-gambil锦  
5-day 5-5-other then 1-PST-come-PFV matronym=9-monkey  
‘Another day Mr. Monkey came.’

b. a-al-iis-ile n=1-ly-ojo  
1-PST-come-PFV COM=AUG-5-anger  
‘He came with anger.’

c. “lɪlɪno kʊ-m-ba=ko n-heela j-angu,  
now/today 2SG.PRS-1SG-give=17 AUG-money(9) 9-POS1.SG  
kʊ-m-ba=ko n-heela j-angu” i-kʊ-job-a  
2SG.PRS-1SG-give=17 AUG-money(9) 9-POS1.SG 1-PRS-speak-FV  
mu-n-jila  
18-9-path  
“Today you’re giving me my money, you’re giving me my money”,  
he is saying on his way.’

d. a-lnkw-a ku-fik-a pa-a kajamba  
1-NARR-go.FV 15-arrive-FV 16-ASSOC tortoise(1)  
‘He arrived at Tortoise’s.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

6.5.5.3.4 Further supportive material  The storyline may be sprinkled with occasional supportive information in the past tense, be it the past perfective, past imperfective or the past copula, or a narrative present (see §6.7.1 on the latter). This may consist of embedded orientations, that is, states-of-affairs that hold throughout all or parts of the text. The past perfective is therefore used with inchoative verbs. This is common with verbs depicting psychological states, as illustrated in (88b). Note that with most inchoative verbs the past perfective is the only paradigm that can denote the resultant state and not merely the change-of-state.
6.5.5.3.5 Further storyline events

As has been discussed thus far, the past perfective is frequently employed – together with the other past tense paradigms – in narrative discourse for setting the stage at major episode boundaries and
for providing information ancillary to the storyline. In addition, it is commonly found in relating more storyline events, where its employment vis-à-vis the dedicated narrative markers is not readily explained by the patterns described above. A closer examination shows that in these cases it normally depicts eventualities that are unpredictable, pivotal for the development of the plot and/or constitute a major change in the roles of participants. In §6.5.5.3.6 below it will be shown that all these uses of the past perfective form part of one coherent pattern of employment of the past tense paradigms vis-à-vis the narrative markers. It will be shown that this pattern is governed by the notion of thematic continuity.

The uses of the past perfective with further storyline events will be illustrated by walking through the narrative of “Hare and Tugutu”. A summary of this story was given in (82) on p. 168 above. (90) presents the first three clauses of the narrative. Instead of featuring a proper orientation section, the two protagonists and the setting are introduced in the opening clause (90a). This is followed by a switch to the in (90b). The use of the past perfective in (90c), however, is conspicuous, as this example neither constitutes an episode boundary nor backgrounded material. However, the proposition given in this clause, Tugutu’s challenging of Hare, is a major turning point in the story. It constitutes the raison d’être for the following race, around which the story revolves. Furthermore, apart from Tugutu’s answer being somewhat unexpected, there is a major discontinuity in the relative roles of the participants. From this point on, Tugutu is the focal character driving the action. This stands in contrast to the first two clauses which centre around Hare.

(90) a. ii-sikʊ lɪ-mo, kalʊkʊ a-aly-ag-an-iile n=ii-tugutu
5-day 5-one hare(1) 1-PST-find-RECP-APPL.PFV COM=5-type_of_bird
‘One day, Hare met with Tugutu (a type of bird).’

b. a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ “gwe, tugutu, u-gwe! u-ka-bagɪl-a
1-NARR-say 2SG t.o.bird AUG-2SG 2SG-NEG-be_able-FV
u-ku-n-gmd-a u-ne u-ku-bop-a, u-ne
AUG-15SG-surpass-FV AUG-1SG AUG-15-run-FV AUG-1SG
n-gʊ-bop-a fiijo, m-bagiile u-ku-ku-tol-a”
1SG-PRS-run-FV INTENS 1SG-be_able.PFV AUG-15-2SG-beat-FV
‘He said “You, Tugutu, you! You can’t beat me in running, I run fast, I can beat you.”’

---

18Jones & Jones (1979: 8) define pivotal events as “very crucial or significant events of a narrative [...] when collected together, they form a high-level summary or abstract of the story”. This definition is reflected in Tomlin (1985: 90) and Longacre (1990: 5).
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

c. ii-tugutu ly-a-t-ile  “mma. ʊ-ka-bagɪl-a
5-t.o.bird 5-pst-say-PFV  no  2SG-NEG-be_able-PFV
ʊ-ku-n-dol-a  kalʊlʊ ʊ-ku-bop-a.  tʊ-bagiile  pamo
AUG-15-1SG-beat-PFV hare(1) AUG-15-run-PFV 1PL-be_able.PFV maybe
ʊ-ku-tol-an-a, ʊ-ku-fwan-a”
AUG-15-be(RECP)-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_equal-PFV
‘Tugutu said “No. You, Hare, can’t beat me in running. We can maybe have a tie.”’ [Hare and Tugutu]

The continuation of the story is given in (91). Hare’s answer in (91a), using the subsecutive, still forms part of the challenging episode. With (91b–91g) the narrator shifts to the past perfective as he takes up a new line of events: Tugutu invites his companions and places them along the track. Leaving aside the parenthetical insertion in (91d), the events given are preliminary and decisive for the development of the plot. Rather than mere staging for the upcoming race, these can be considered to form a coherent episode of their own.

(91)  
a. a-a-ți  “mma popaa~po tw-and-e  kɪ-laabo
1-SUBSEC-say  no  REDUPL~then 1PL-start-SUBJ 7-tomorrow
ʊ-ku-bop-a”
AUG-15-run-PFV
‘He (Hare) said “Ok then, tomorrow let’s start to run.”’
b. po  mwa=n-dugutu  a-a-bʊʊk-ile
then matronym=9-t.o.bird 1-PST-go-PFV
‘Mr. Tugutu went.’
c. a-a-ba-paal-ile  a-ba-nine  ba-haano
1-PST-2-invite-PFV AUG-2-companion 2-five
‘He gathered five companions.’
d. paapo  ba-al-iitk-eene  na  kalʊlʊ ʊ-ku-bop-a
because 2-PST-agree-RECP.PFV COM hare(1) AUG-15-run-PFV
a-ma-eli  ma-haano
AUG-6-mile(EN) 6-five
‘Because they had agreed to run five miles.’
e. bo ii-sikʊ ly-a  kɪ-laabo,  bo lɪ-fik-ile,  mwa=n-dugutu
as  5-day  5-ASSOC 7-tomorrow as  5-arrive-PFV matronym=9-t.o.bird
a-alɪ-m-buk-ile  mwa=n-dugutu  n-nine  pa-bw-andɪlo
1-PST-1-put-PFV matronym=9-t.o.bird 1-companion 16-14-start
‘When the next day arrived, Mr. Tugutu placed a fellow Mr. Tugutu at the start.’
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

f. ɪɪ-maeli j-aa bʊ-bɪlɪ mwa=n-dugutu ʊ-jo-ngɪ [...] aʊ̯-mɪle(9) 9-ASSOC 14-two matronym=9-t.o.bird aʊ̯-1-other

'The second mile another Mr. Tugutu [...]'

g. na kʊ-bʊ-malɪɪkɪlo, maeli ga-a bʊ-haano, mwa=n-dugutu com 17-14-end mile 6-ASSOC 14-five matronym=9-t.o.bird ʊ-jo-ngɪ aʊ̯-1-other

'At the finish line, the fifth mile, another Mr. Tugutu.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

The rest of the story consists of a detailed description of the race itself and the dialogue that takes place throughout the race, which are narrated entirely using the narrative markers, with the exception of one flashback.

6.5.5.3.6 Summary and discussion  The preceding sections have shown a number of recurring contexts in which the past perfective is employed within narrative discourse. It can be seen that it is used, as are the other past tense paradigms, in free and restricted clauses that provide information ancillary to the storyline. These clauses may be contained within a dedicated orientation section or be distributed throughout the text. Consistent with the semantics of the past perfective, this mostly gives a stative reading with inchoative verbs and a posterior one with non-inchoatives. Within the plot proper, the latter can be employed for flashbacks. The past perfective is further used to set the stage at major boundaries within the text, again in a division of labour with the other past tense paradigms. This is common as a ‘backdrop’ to the first episode of a text, and is also found in major units throughout narratives. Lastly, the past perfective is also found with storyline events that form important turning points. Note that this distribution of the past perfective defies Longacre’s approach of storyline ranks, which is widely received in linguistic discourse studies, especially in the SIL tradition. According to Longacre, TMA categories within a given language can be ranked in order of the degree to which the clauses they are found in either belong to the primary storyline, augment the storyline (pivotal events) or depart from it (e.g. secondary storyline, backgrounded actions, setting); also see §7.2.1. The Nyakyusa past perfective figures all over Longacre’s storyline ranks: it is used with ancillary material, i.e. below the storyline, with events serve as staging for what follows, as well as with pivotal events, which have the highest degree of saliency in Longacre’s framework. That is, the employment of TMA categories in Nyakyusa narrative discourse cannot be explained on the basis of storyline ranks.
Interestingly, in Longacre’s own work one finds a case that very much parallels that of Nyakyusa. In a discussion of Avokaya (East Sudanic, Nilo Saharan), Longacre stipulates that the so-called narrative tense is a marker of the primary storyline, while the perfect or perfective – his use of the two terms is inconsistent – belongs to a lower rank, the secondary storyline (Longacre 1990: 91–97). The latter paradigm, however, is used not only to stage and re-stage sequences of actions, but also to “show that a particular action is not script-predictable”. Longacre goes on to conclude that in the first case we are dealing with events that are “preliminary and preparatory for what follows […] but this usage grades off into one representing events that are not script-predictable, but rather of themselves shift a sequence of actions/events into the direction of a new script”. If not storyline concerns, then what is the conceptual category that governs Nyakyusa narrative discourse? Nurse (2008: 120), in a discussion of narrative markers in Bantu, states that “[u]se of the special [narrative, BP] marker can be suspended and then deliberately reintroduced by the speaker to stress continuity.” Put the other way around, use of verbal paradigms other than the narrative markers signals discontinuity. If one states Nurse’s vague term of continuity more precisely as thematic continuity, all of the uses of the past perfective, as well as of the other past tense paradigms, find a common denominator. As Givón (1984) describes it, is a conceptual notion that holds within (parts of) a text and is made up of four thematic dimensions: the three dimensions of time, place, action, i.e. the unity well-known from ancient Greek playwrights, plus a fourth one of participants. Languages may employ specific signals that continuity is significantly interrupted in at least one of these four dimensions (Dooley & Levinsohn 2000). Table 6.5 illustrates the dimensions of thematic continuity and their respective continuities and discontinuities.

The opening of a narrative, as well as an initial orientation section, are discontinuous amongst all these dimensions with regard to the discursive context. Ancillary information distributed throughout the text is highly discontinuous with regard to the storyline, by virtue of the type of material it provides (dimension of action), as well as by being outside the temporal sequence (dimension of time). The latter also holds for flashbacks. Episodes and groups of episodes within a text are by definition major thematic groupings that deserve to be delimited by use of a past tense paradigm. Lastly, important turning points in the plot constitute major changes in at least one of the thematic dimensions.

To sum up then, as far as tense and narrative markers are concerned, Nyakyusa narrative discourse is structured around the conceptual notions of thematic continuity in the storyline (employment of the narrative markers) and discontinuity
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

Table 6.5: Dimensions of thematic continuity/discontinuity (adapted from Dooley & Levinsohn 2000: 19)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Continuity</th>
<th>Discontinuity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>time</td>
<td>events separated by at most only small forward gaps</td>
<td>large forward gaps or events out of order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>place</td>
<td>same place or continuous motion</td>
<td>discrete changes of place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>action</td>
<td>all material of the same type</td>
<td>changes from one type of material to another</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>participants</td>
<td>same cast and some general roles vis-à-vis one other</td>
<td>discrete changes of cast or changes in relative roles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(employment of the past tense paradigms). Comparable analyses focusing on thematic continuity as the motivation for the choice of TMA categories in narrative discourse have been put forward by Watters (2002) for Kham (Sino-Tibetan) and by Robar (2014) for Biblical Hebrew. A similar line of reasoning is made by R. Carlson (1992) for a number of West and East African languages. The past perfective occupies a privileged role in this interplay between past tense and narrative markers as it can be employed for discontinuous events. It is important to note at this point that this employment of the TMA categories constitutes a discursive convention, which leaves the narrator with room for stylistic considerations. There is considerable variation across texts concerning how much of the storyline is carried by the past perfective vis-à-vis the narrative markers. This is further discussed and illustrated in §7.2.3.

6.5.6 Negative past perfective

The negative past perfective is formed with the negative prefix ka-, the past prefix a- and the perfective suffix -ile or one of its allomorphs (see §6.4.2). As with the affirmative past perfective, the past prefix surfaces as alɪ- preceding vowel-initial stems, the object marker, as well as the object markers of the first person singular and noun class 1; see §6.5.5.

(92)  

|92| tʃkaajobile ‘we did not work’ |

With non-inchoative verbs, this construction gives a negative posterior/holistic reading (93). As such it is by far the most common form used in the corpus to
assert the non-occurrence of eventualities. With inchoative verbs, all tokens in
the corpus have a negative state reading, as illustrated in (94, 95).

(93) po ji-lnkɔ-book-a w-kɔ-sook-a=po. po leelo
then 9-NARR-go-FV AUG-15-leave-FV=16 then but/now
ji-ka-a-book-ile pa-bɔ-tali
9-NEG-PST-go-PFV 16-14-long
‘It [snake] went and left. It did not go far.’ [Python and woman]

(94) ʊ-mw-ene kalɔlɔ a-ka-a-meenye ukɔtr u-lw-ifí
AUG-1-self hare(1) 1-NEG-PST-know.PFV COMP AUG-11-chameleon
lɔ-nyeel-iile pa-n-sana paapo lw-a-lí lɔ-pepe
11-jump-APPL.PFV 16-3-waist because 11-PST-COP 11-light
‘Hare himself did not know that Chameleon had jumped at his hip
because he was light.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(95) a-a-li=ko kajamba jũ-mo. a-a-li m-oolo ffijo.
1-PST-COP=17 tortoise(1) 1-one 1-PST-COP 1-lazy INTENS
a-ka-al-iigan-ile ʊ-ku-bomb-a 1-m-bombo
1-NEG-PST-like-PFV AUG-15-work-FV AUG-9-work
‘There was a certain tortoise. It was very lazy. It did not like to work.’
[Monkey and Tortoise]

### 6.5.7 Past imperfective

#### 6.5.7.1 Formal makeup and overview of meaning

The past imperfective is formed with the past prefix a- and the imperfective suffix
-aga. See §6.4.1 for allomorphs of the latter.

(96) twajobaga ‘we used to speak / we were speaking’

This construction has the uses typically associated with a past imperfective
category (Comrie 1976; Dahl 1985). It can give a past continuous reading (97, 98)
and can also give a broad range of past habitual or generic readings (99, 100).

(97) a-pa ʊ-m-b-eele 1-fi-ndɔ. 1-n-jala
AUG-PROX.16 2SG-1SG-give-PFV AUG-8-food AUG-9-hunger
j-a-n-dom-aga
9-PST-1SG-bite-IPFV
‘Here you’ve given me food. I was hungry [lit. hunger was biting me].’
[Lake Kyungululu]
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

(98) fyobeene gw-a-job-aga, nalooli lʊ-kafu
therefore 2SG-PST-speak-IPFV really 11-difficult
'That is why you were speaking, it [the lock] truly is tough.' [Wage of the thieves]

(99) n-ki-panga kɪ-la a-a-li=po u-n-kiikulu u-n-hiji u-jʊ
18-7-village 7-DIST 1-PST-COP=16 AUG-1-woman AUG-1-thief AUG-PROX.1
a-a-bomb-aga i-j-aa kw-ib-a i-fi-ndʊ i-fi
1-PST-work-IPFV AUG-9-ASSOC 15-steal-FV AUG-8-food AUG-PROX.8
ba-pɪɪj-ile a-ba-nine,
2-cook-IPFV AUG-2-companion
'In that village there was a thieving woman, who used to steal the food the others had cooked,'

a-a-fyʊl-aga mu-n-deko na muu-sefulɪla
1-PST-remove-IPFV 18-10-earthen_pot COM 18-cooking_pot(9)<SWA>
'She used to take it out of earthen pots and cooking pots.'

pa-la ᵃnɡa a-bʊʊk-ile n-k-ookol-a u-m-ooto
16-DIST if/when 1-go-PFV 18-15-fetch_fire-FV AUG-3-fire
ku-ba-nine, ᵃnɡa ba-li pa-nja, a-a-kuputul-aga
17-2-companion, if/when 2-COP 16-outside 1-PST-uncover-IPFV
i-fi-ndʊ n=ʊ-ku-fyʊl-a=mo fi-mo, a-a-bʊʊk-aga na=fyo
AUG-8-food COM=AUG-15-remove-FV=18 8-one 1-PST-go-IPFV COM=REF.8
ku-my-ake
17-4-POSS.SG
'When she went to her neighbours to get fire, if they were outside she would uncover the food, take some out and go home with it.' [Thieving woman]

(100) a-ba-nyambala ba-a-fwal-aga i-n-gobo j-aa ng’ombe
AUG-2-man 2-PST-dress/wear-IPFV AUG-9-skin 9-ASSOC cow(9)
mu-no mu-n-sana
18-PROX 18-3-waist
'The men wore a skin of a cow here at the waist.' [Clothing long ago]

6.5.7.2 Uses in narrative discourse

Not surprisingly, in past narratives the past imperfective is mainly used in the orientation section, as exemplified in (99) above. To a lesser extent, it is found in
free or restricted clauses that constitute embedded orientation. This is illustrated in (101).

(101) kr-laabo i-ki-ngi Sokoni a-lnku-bʊʊk-a kangi kʊ-kʊ-kʊng-il-a
7-tomorrow AUG-7-other S. 1-NARR-go-FV again 17-15-tie-APPL-FV
ni-ng’ombe
AUG-10.cow
‘The next day, Sokoni went again to tie the cows.’

p-oope a-alt-mmw-ag-ile u-n-kasi gw-a Pakyindi i-kʊ-bom-b-a
16-also 1-PST-1-find-IPFV AUG-1-wife 1-ASSOC P. 1-PRS-work-FV
bo sila~si-la i-sy-a m-ma-jolo
as REDUPL~10-DIST AUG-10-ASSOC 18-6-evening
‘Again he found Pakyindi’s wife doing just like the day before.’

looli u-ŋ-düm-a m-bʊʊl-ag-a a-t-ɪgɪ “n-gʊ-bʊʊk-a
but AUG-1-herd-IPFV 1-PST-tell-IPFV 1-PST-say-IPFV ISG-PRS-go-FV
kʊ-kʊ-nyukul-a a-ma-jabʊ”
17-15-pull_up-FV AUG-6-cassava
‘But to her husband she always said “I am going to harvest cassava.”’
[Sokoni and Pakyindi]

The past imperfective is also used in the staging of episodes within a text, as in (102); see 6.5.5.3) §6.5.5.3.3 on staging in Nyakyusa discourse.

(102) a. u-mu-ndʊ jʊ-mo a-tiim-ag-a ni-ng’oosi
AUG-1-person 1-one 1-PST-herd-IPFV AUG-sheep(10)
‘A man was herding sheep.’

b. a-a-li n=ɪ-m-bwa
1-PST-COP COM=AUG-9-dog
‘He had a dog.’

c. popaa~po u-mu-ndʊ jʊ-la a-lnku-bʊʊk-a pa-kr-syanjʊ
REDUPL~then AUG-1-person 1-DIST 1-NARR-go-FV 16-7-thicket
pa-kʊ-tʊʊsy-a
16-15-rest-FV
‘That man went into the thicket to rest.’
6.5 Synthetic present and past constructions

6.5.7.3 Modal uses

Apart from its basic uses, the past imperfective is also found in the apodoses of counterfactual conditionals.\(^{19}\) Employed in this way, the past imperfective loses its temporal and aspectual specification. It can be used with a present or future reading (103, 104) and in typical perfective contexts (105).

(103) \(\text{linga } n\text{-aa-li ne laisi } n\text{-aa-ba-tʊʊl-aga}\)
\(\text{if/when 1SG-PST-COP 1SG president(<SWA) 1SG-PST-2-help-IPFV}\)
\(\text{a-ba-londo}\)
\(\text{AUG-2-poor}\)
‘If I were president, I would help/be helping the poor.’ [ET]

(104) \(\text{linga } n\text{-aa-li jo } u\text{-ne } n\text{-aa-bʊʊk-aga } kr\text{-laabo}\)
\(\text{if/when 1SG-PST-COP REF.1 AUG-1SG 1SG-PST-go-IPFV 7-tomorrow}\)
‘If it were me, I would go tomorrow.’ [ET]

(105) \(\text{linga } tʊ\text{-ka-aly-ag-ile } u\text{-lw-isi } tw\text{-a-fw-aga}\)
\(\text{if/when 1PL-NEG-PST-find-PFV AUG-11-river 1PL-PST-die-IPFV}\)
‘If we had not found the river, we would have died.’ [ET]

Another modal use is attested in the following example:

(106) Context: The researcher has asked a language assistant if she is free in the following days.
\(\text{ee } ka\text{-lʊmbʊ } n\text{-dɪ } na=a\text{-ka-balɪlo. } u\text{-gwe}\)
\(\text{yes 12-sibling_of_opposite_sex 1SG-COP COM=AUG-12-time AUG-2SG}\)
\(\text{gw\text{-a-lond-ag-a } bo ndnɪlɪ } tw\text{-ag-an-il-e}\)
\(\text{2SG-PST-want-IPFV as when 1PL-find-RECP-APPL-SUBJ}\)
‘Yes little brother, I have time. Whenever you want, let’s meet.’
[overheard]

6.5.8 Negative past imperfective

The negative counterpart to the past imperfective consists of the negative prefix \(k\text{a-}\), the past prefix \(a\text{-}\) and the imperfective suffix \(-ag-a\). See §6.4.1 for allomorphs of the latter.

(107) \(\text{tʊkaajobaga } \text{‘we did not use to speak / we were not speaking’}\)

\(^{19}\)For another strategy of marking the apodoses of counterfactuals see §9.6.
Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

The uses of the negative past imperfective parallel those of its affirmative counterpart. It has a continuous/progressive reading (108), which also serves as the negative counterpart to the periphrastic past progressive (§6.6.1). It is further used for negative past habituals and generics (109, 110).

(108) fiki gwe mw-inntʊ, gwe gw-a bʊ-tatu,
why 2SG 1-our_companion 2SG 1-ASSOC 14-three
gw-a-tʊ-bʊʊl-iile bo ŋ-seng-iigwe, ŋ-ka-a-lek-aga
2SG-PST-1PL-tell-APPL.PFV as 2SG-chop-PASS.PFV 2SG-NEG-PST-let-IPFV
fiki tw-esə tʊ-seng-igw-e?
why 1PL-all 1PL-chop-PASS-SUBJ
’Why, our friend, you the third one, did you tell us when you were cut, why did you not let all of us be cut?’ [Wage of the thieves]

(109) ŋ-mw-ana  a-k-end-aga.
AUG-1-child 1-NEG.PST-walk/travel-IPFV AUG-8-year
a-k-end-aga
1-NEG.PST-walk/travel-IPFV
’The child did not walk. For years it did not walk.’ [Pregnant women]

(110) ba-k-eeg-an-aga ŋ-bw-egi bʊ-la bw-a
2-NEG-PST.marry-RECP-IPFV AUG-14-marriage 14-DIST 14-ASSOC
ku-piny-a pamo kw-i-kanisa. b-aa-lə n=ŋ-bw-egi
15-tie-FV maybe 17-5-church(<SWA) 2-PST-COP COM=AUG-14-marriage
ŋ-bw-a kyenyeeji
AUG-14-ASSOC informal_type(<SWA)
’They did not have weddings of that type where they tie the bond maybe at church. They had weddings of an informal type.’ [Life and marriage long ago]

6.6 Periphrastic present and past constructions

In the following subsections, periphrastic present (non-past) and past tense constructions will be described. An overview of these is given in Table 6.6. For ease of reading, the present and past forms of each paradigm will be discussed together in single sections (§6.6.1, 6.6.2). Some further infrequent constructions will be discussed in §6.6.3.
Table 6.6: Periphrastic non-past/present and past tense constructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Progressive</td>
<td>sm-(l) pa-(kw)-(vb)-a</td>
<td>t(u)l(t) p(a)k(v)jo(ba)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sm-(a)-l pa-(kw)-(vb)-a</td>
<td>tw(a)l(t) p(a)k(v)jo(ba)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistive</td>
<td>sm-(k)a(l)t (+) Verb</td>
<td>to(k)a(l)t to(k)o(j)jo(ba)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sm-(a)-(k)a(l)t (+) Verb</td>
<td>tw(a)k(a)l(t) twa(j)o(b)a(g)a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 6.6.1 Progressive

The progressive consists of the copula \(l\) and an infinitive marked for locative noun class 16. The past progressive is formed with the past prefix \(a\)- on the copula.

(111)

a. \(t\(u\)l\(t\) p\(a\)k\(v\)jo\(ba\)  \('we are speaking'\)

b. \(t\(w\)a\(l\)t\(t\) p\(a\)k\(v\)jo\(ba\)  \('we were speaking'\)

There is no counterpart to the progressive. Instead, the negative present (§6.5.2) and the negative past imperfective (§6.5.8) are used.

As the label *progressive* suggests, this construction expresses that an eventuality is ongoing. Unlike the and the past imperfective, no habitual/generic reading is available with the progressive.\(^{20}\) While frequently heard, use of the periphrastic progressive is far from obligatory. The simple present and the past imperfective can also give a progressive reading (§6.5.1, 6.5.7). In temporal clauses (§6.7.2.1), the progressive is used only infrequently and often retains a locational reading (112, 113). The is the paradigm of choice for an ongoing eventuality in this context.

(112)  a-ba\(-\)ndu  bo  a-bo  bi-\(k\)o-\(b\)o\(k\)-a  \(k\)o-\(kw\)-\(as\)i\(m\)-a  \(r\)-\(fi\)-\(b\)om\(b\)el\(o\) \\
\text{AUG-2-person as AUG-REF.2 2-PRS-go-FV 17-15-borrow-FV AUG-8-tool} \\
\text{r-fy-a  \(k\)o-bomb-el-a  \(r\)-\(m\)-\(b\)om\(b\o\)  bo  a-b-iinaabo} \\
\text{AUG-8-ASSOC 15-work-APPL-FV AUG-9-work as AUG-2-their_companion}

\(^{20}\)Kershner (2002: 168–174) discusses a parallel construction in Sukwa, for which she coins the label “punctuated imperfectivity”. Contrasting this with the progressive reading of the Sukwa equivalents of the simple present and past imperfective, she postulates that the periphrastic construes the subject as “‘inside the event’ or “engaged in the event” in contrast with a mere unfolding of the eventuality. No indication of such a reading was found in the Nyakyusa data.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

ba-lɪ pa-ku-tʊʊsy-a
2-COP 16-15-rest-FV

‘People like those go to borrow tools to do work with, when their fellows are resting.’ [Types of tools in the home]

(113) Inga ba-lɪ pa-ku-sanuk-a kʊʊ-nyuma kʊ-no k-oope
if/when 2-COP 16-15-alter-FV 17-back(9) 17-PROX 17-also
ba-a-kyakyatl-aga fiijo bʊno~bʊ-no
2-PST-move_back_and_forth-IPFV INTENS REDUPL~14-DEM

‘When they were turning back there they would move quickly back and forward like this.’ [Custom of dancing]

A further difference between the and the past imperfective on the one hand and the (past) progressive on the other concerns the interaction of the progressive with the lexical class of resultative achievements: with these verbs, the and the past imperfective are not available in a progressive reading, while the periphrastic progressive may be used with reference to the resultant state (see Chapter 5).\(^{21}\)

6.6.2 Persistent

Persistive aspect denotes that a state-of-affairs continues to hold from an earlier point until a later point of reference, by default the moment of speech. Grammaticalized constructions for this “still-tense” are common in Bantu, although often overlooked (Nurse 2008: 45). In Nyakyusa, persistive aspect is expressed by a periphrastic construction consisting of the subject prefix and a persistive auxiliary kaalɪ.

(114) tʊ-kaalɪ tʊ-ku-job-a
1PL-PERS 1PL-PRS-speak-FV

‘we still speak / we are still speaking’

---

\(^{21}\)Note that locative noun class 16 commonly denotes proximity (§2.3.1). To summarize the interaction of the periphrastic progressive with different lexical classes as analysed in Chapter 5, one finds an ongoing/pre-change reading with those verbs that feature either an extended Nucleus or an extended Onset phase. Resultative achievements, however, feature a punctiliar Nucleus plus an extended Coda, but lack an Onset phase. One may now interpret the phase selection of the progressive as a metaphoric extension of the erstwhile locative semantics: ‘proximity to X’ → ‘proximity to culmination of the characteristic act (N)’. The post-change reading with resultative achievements can then be understood as a “second-best choice” where no other phase around the right edge of N is available.
The persistive auxiliary takes an infinitive with the augment, an infinitive additionally marked for either of locative classes 16 and 18, or an inflected verb as its complement. It can also be used with nominal predicates and for locative predication. Some of these combinations merit a short discussion.

With an infinitive complement, the persistive denotes that the act encoded in the verb has not yet taken place ('yet to V'):

(115) m-ba-kooliile ʊkʊtɪ m-ba-lagil-e a-ma-syʊ bo n-gaalɪ
1SG-2PL-call.PFV COMP 1SG-2PL-direct-PFV AUG-6-word as 1SG-PERS
ʊ-ku-fw-a
AUG-15(INF)-die-PFV
‘I’ve called you (pl.) to give you instructions before I die.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

(116) nsyisyi a-lmkʊ-ɪ-m-ɛʊl-a kʊlʊ  a-lmkʊ-ti “ʊ-nyama skunk(1) 1-NARR-1-tell-FV hare(1) 1-NARR-say AUG-meat(9)
ji-p-iile, is-agə ɪu-ly-ege!” po kʊlʊ
9-be(come)_burnt-PFV come-IPFV 1PL-eat-IPFV.SUBJ then hare(1)
a-lmkʊ-ti “taasi. ji-kaali u-ku-py-a”
1-NARR-say yet 9-PERS AUG-15(INF)-be(come)_burnt-PFV
‘Skunk told Hare “The meat is done, come let’s eat!” Hare said “Later. It’s not yet done.”’ [Hare and Skunk]

This is also the default interpretation for the persistive without an overt complement (117). If a polar question contains the persistive plus a complement, a bare persistive in the answer is understood as being elliptic (118).

(117) ɪ-li-sikʊ ly-a kw-and-a a-a-bʊʊk-ile kʊ-ko-keet-a 1-fi-lombe
AUG-5-day 5-ASSOC 15-begin-FV 1-PST-go-PFV 17-15-look-FV AUG-8-maize
muno fi-j-ɪɪl-iile ʊkʊtɪ kali fi-bɪfiifwe pamo fi-kaali
whether 8-be(come)-APPL-PFV COMP Q 8-ripen.PFV or 8-PERS
‘On the first day he went to look at how the maize was looking to see if it had ripened yet or not.’ [Thieving monkeys]

(118) bʊle, u-kaali kʊ-manyil-a? – ee, n-gaalɪ
Q 2SG-PERS 2SG.PRS-learn-FV YES 1SG-PERS
‘Are you still studying?’ – ‘Yes, I still am.’ [overheard]
Apart from the bare infinitive, verbal nouns additionally marked for locative classes 16 and 18 are attested. It is unclear whether these differ in meaning and in how far speaker preferences and diatopic variation are involved.\(^{22}\)

(119) \(\text{i-kʊ-j-a} \ \text{pa-kʊ-kwel-a} \ \text{kangɪ, paapo} \ \text{i-kr-kapʊ} \ \text{ki-mo} \ \text{1-PRS-be(come)-FV 16-15-climb-FV again because AUG-7-basket 7-one} \ \text{ki-kaaɭ} \ \text{pa-kw-isʊl-a} \ \text{7-PERS 16-15-be(come)_full-FV}
\)

'He is about to climb up again, because one basket is still empty.' [Elisha Pear Story]

(120) \(\text{ga-kaaɭ} \ \text{n-kʊ-kom-a} \ \text{6-PERS 18-15-become_ripe-FV}
\)

'They [the bananas] are still not ripe.' [overheard]

With a simple present (§6.5.1) or past imperfective (§6.5.7) complement, both the continuous and habitual/generic readings are available; see (114) above and (129) below. With inchoative verbs, the persistive can take a complement inflected for perfective aspect. This collocation denotes that the resultant state continues to hold. For further discussion see Chapter 5.\(^{23}\)

(121) \(\text{a-ba} \ \text{ba-ka-j-a} \ \text{ba-klisiti} \ \text{ba-kaaɭ b-ʊʊmɪɪliile}
\)

\(\text{AUG-PROX.2 2-NEG-be(come)-FV 2-christian 2-PERS 2-stick_to.pfv}
\)

\(\text{ʊ-lw-iho} \ \text{ʊ-lw-a} \ \text{ku-lond-a} \ \text{ʊ-ku-tiil-igw-a}
\)

\(\text{AUG-11-custom AUG-11-ASSOC 15-want-FV AUG-15-fear-PASS-FV}
\)

'Those that are not Christians stick to the tradition of wanting to be feared.' [Should she save a life...]

With the negative counterpart to the present perfective (§6.5.4) as a complement, the persistive denotes that the state-of-affairs encoded in the lexical verb still has not occurred.

(122) \(\text{a-kaaɭ a-ka-fik-a} \ \text{pa-ka-aja}
\)

\(\text{1-PERS 1-NEG-arrive-FV 16-12-homestead}
\)

'S/he still has not arrived home.' [ET]

\(^{22}\)For a comparable case with phasal verbs see §11.4.1.

\(^{23}\)This argument is of course circular, as the possible collocation of persistive and perfective is the major criterion for distinguishing inchoative verbs.
6.6 Periphrastic present and past constructions

(123) taata Ṽ-ne nalooli r-fy-ʊma n-gaalɪ n-ga-kab-a
my_father AUG-1SG truely AUG-8-rich 1SG-PERS 1SG-NEG-get-FV
r-sala r-ji
AUG-hour(9)(<SWA) AUG-PROX.9
‘Father [honorific], I still haven’t obtained the brideprice.’ [Man and his in-law]

The meaning of this combination (‘still not V-ed’) is obviously similar to that of the persistive with an infinitive complement (‘yet to V’). One difference can be found in pragmatics: when the pending state-of-affairs is expressed as counter to expectation or custom, it is the perfective that is used:

(124) a. m-ma-jolo n-aa-lambaleele bo Ṽ-n-koʊo gw-angu
18-6-evening 1SG-PST-lie_down.PFV as AUG-1-elder_sibling 1-poss.sg
a-kaalɪ a-ka-fik-a pa-ka-aja
1-PERS 1-NEG-arrive-FV 16-12-homestead
‘Yesterday I went to bed when my elder brother still had not come home.’ (implies: his late arrival is unusual) [ET]

b. m-ma-jolo n-aa-lambaleele bo Ṽ-n-koʊo gw-angu
18-6-evening 1SG-PST-lie_down.PFV as AUG-1-elder_sibling 1-poss.sg
a-kaalɪ Ṽ-ku-fik-a pa-ka-aja
1-PERS AUG-15-arrive-FV 16-12-homestead
‘Yesterday I went to bed before my older brother arrived home.’ [ET]

The persistive can also take a predicate nominal as a complement with subjects other than the participants (see §10.2.2 on the use of the zero copula):

(125) ba-kaalɪ ba-fumuke
2-PERS 2-famous
‘They are still famous.’ [ET]

(126) a-ma-tunda ga-kaalɪ ma-nyaafu
AUG-6-fruit 6-PERS 6-tasty
‘The fruits are still tasty.’ [ET]

Interestingly, locative predication, otherwise one of the cases where use of the copula is obligatory, is also possible with the persistive (127). The copula can be used here, though in most cases it is optional (128). Also see (65) on p. 284.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

(127) po bo a-kaalî mu-n-jîla po kajamba a-a-t-ile
then as 1-PERS 18-9-path then tortoise(1) 1-PST-say-PFV
‘As he [Mr. Monkey] was still on the way, Tortoise said.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

(128)ʊ-n-kiikʊlu a-kaalî (a-li) paa-sokoni
AUG-1-woman 1-PERS (1-COP) 16-market(9)<SWA)
‘The woman is still at the market.’ [ET]

The past persistive is formed with the past prefix a- following the subject prefix (129, 130). Note that this clearly distinguishes the persistive from the negated past copula, which shares the shape kaalî with the present persistive (see §10.2.1).

(129) tw-a-kaalî tw-a-ly-aga
1PL-PST-PERS 1PL-PST-eat-IPFV
‘We were still eating. / We still used to eat.’ [ET]

(130) tw-a-kaalî tw-a-kateele
1PL-PST-PERS 1PL-PST-be(come)_tired.IPfv
‘We were still tired.’ [ET]

6.6.3 Minor constructions

In this subsection, a few less frequent constructions will be discussed. The collocation of the existential construction (§10.2.3) with the locative class 18 enclitic plus the simple present gives a reading of a constantly or consistently occurring eventuality (131). In this, it can itself occur as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary, as illustrated in (132); Nurse (1979: 125) lists a comparable example. Its past counterpart is formed with the past imperfective (133).

(131) a-li=mo i-kw-ib-a i-fi-lombe fy-angʊ
1-COP=18 1-PRS-steal-FV AUG-8-maize POSS.1SG
‘S/he constantly steals my maize.’ [ET]

(132)ʊ-saj-igw-ege n=ʊ-n-twa paapo na ʊluʊ a-kaalî
2SG-bless-PASS-IPFV.SUBJ COM=AUG-1-lord because COM now 2SG-PERS
ʊ-li=mo kʊ-bomb-a 1-sy-a b-oooloolo. kangɪ lilmo
2SG-COP=18 2SG.PRS-do-FV AUG-10-ASSOC 14-kind again now/today
po ʊ-bomb-ile 1-n-gnd-itsi kʊ-sy-a kw-and-a
then 2SG-do-PFV AUG-10-pass-INTS.AGNR 17-10-ASSOC 15-begin-FV
‘Blessed be thou of the lord, my daughter: for thou hast shewed more
6.6 Periphrastic present and past constructions

kindness in the latter end than at the beginning [lit. ...because you still continuously do kind things and now you have done things much more kind than those in the beginning]’ (Ruth 3:10)

(133) a-a-li=mo a-a-tʊ-taamy-agɑ
1-PST-1SG>PST=18 1-PST-1PL-trouble-IPFV
‘S/he constantly annoyed us.’ [ET]

A parallel construction is formed with a noun class 16 (but not class 17) existential. This denotes a continuous single event or series of events. The following examples were both suggested during elicitation sessions directed at verb categorization (Chapter 5).

(134) n-di=po n-gʊ-ly-a (n-sala j-oosa)
1SG-COP=16 1SG-PRS-eat-FV (AUG-hour(<SWA) 9-all)
‘I have been eating continually (for a whole hour).’ [ET]

(135) n-nyumba j-and-ile ʊ-kʊ-nyal-a, a-ba-ndʊ
daug-house(9) 9-begin-PFV AUG-15-be(come)_dirty-FV AUG-2-person
b-ingɪ ba-li=po bi-kw-ingɪl-a
2-many 2-COP=16 2-PRS-enter-FV
‘The house has begun to get dirty, many people are entering.’ [ET]

Lastly, as discussed in §6.6.1, 8.7, 7.3, the collocations of the copula plus an infinitive marked for locative noun class 16 or 18 have become grammaticalized as the progressive, the prospective/inceptive (both class 16) and the narrative tense (§7.3) (class 18) respectively. An infinitive marked for locative noun class 17, however, is very rare and maintains a primarily locative reading. Schumann (1899: 23) also notes that this is a “very infrequent form” (translated from the original German, BP) and Endemann (1914) mentions it only marginally. The only attested token in the data is (136). Also note (137).

(136) Context: You are asked where your brother is.
    n-gw-ag-a kʊʊ-sala r-si a-ɪt kʊ-ko-kin-a
1SG-PRS-find-FV 17-hour(10)(<SWA) AUG-PROX.10 1-COP 17-15-play-FV
‘I think he is playing (= is where they play).’ [ET]

(137) leelo popaa~po n-aa-meency ʊkʊtɪ taata a-ɪt
now/but REDUPL~then 1SG-PST-know.PFV COMP my_father(1) 1-COP
kʊ-ko-lm-a
17-15-farm-FV
‘I however knew that Father was farming.’ (Busse 1949: 204; orthography adapted)
6.7 The present as non-past

Having discussed the individual present tense constructions, it is worth considering a number of cases in which all of the present tense paradigms pattern with references other than the time of speech, including the unmarked copula (§10.2.1) and derived constructions. It is essential here to make a basic distinction between their use in main clauses on the one hand, and in subordinate clauses on the other hand.

With regard to the former, a widespread crosslinguistic phenomenon is the so-called narrative present, which is the employment of a present tense in past discourse. While in a language such as English this may be subsumed under a single category of present tense uses, in Nyakyusa, with its pervasive system of aspectuality, this phenomenon encompasses a wider array of verbal paradigms. This will be discussed in §6.7.1.

Regarding use in subordinate clauses, Nurse (2008) exhorts researchers of Bantu languages not to be misled in their analysis by the sequence-of-tense rules commonly found in Western European languages, such as in the English sentence When he had paid the car, he drove it home, not *When he (has) paid the car he drove it home. Discussing these sequence-of-tense rules, he observes that

No Bantu language with which I am familiar does what English does. Instead of shifting the tenses on the left one step further into the past, as English, Bantu languages would keep the forms on the left in the contexts on the right. (Nurse 2008: 159)

For a more general discussion see Cover & Tonhauser (2015). Tense use in subordinate contexts will be discussed in §6.7.2, where a further distinction will be made between different types of subordinate clauses.

As will become clear from the following discussion, in a number of subordinate contexts the present tense paradigms take their temporal reference from the matrix clause. Further, the simple present (§6.5.1) may be used as a futurate, futurate and can be shifted to a future reference frame by the use of the future enclitic aa= (§8.2). What is more, under certain conditions that will be discussed in their appropriate places, other paradigms such as the present perfective (§6.5.3) and the present or zero copula (§10.2.1) may be used with reference to future state-of-affairs. What is termed present tense throughout this study can thus well be understood as having non-past reference.24

---

6.7 The present as non-past

6.7.1 Narrative present

As Fleischman (1990: 376) defines it, a narrative present is the primarily oral phenomenon of a present tense that is used in narratives, where it refers to the past time of the storyworld. This device “enables particular textual or expressive effects because the meaning ‘simultaneous with S’ […] is always open” (p. 54).

In Nyakyusa, given the basic division between inchoative and non-inchoative verbs and its reflection in choice of grammatical aspect, as well as the morphologically divergent copulae, the phenomenon of narrative present encompasses a number of verbal paradigms. (138) illustrates the use of the simple present. Note how the use of a narrative present here forms part of a shift towards drama,\(^{25}\) characterized by the omission of an otherwise compulsory form of the quotative verb \(t\) (§10.3). Example (139) illustrates the use of the negative counterpart to the present perfective with the inchoative verb \(m\)any\(a\) ‘know’.

(138)  
\[po \text{kálós} \text{na-\text{lukú-\text{lembó}}-\text{a}} \quad \text{i-kó-\text{kuut}-\text{a}} \quad \text{“híhií. ba-n-gom-ile, then hare(l)} \quad \text{1-NARR-\text{awake}}-\text{FV} \quad \text{1-PRS-\text{cry}}-\text{FV} \quad \text{of\_crying} \quad \text{2-1SG-\text{hit}}-\text{PFV} \quad \text{ba-n-gom-ile, ba-n-gom-ile.” po nsiyisí “jw-ani a-kó-kom-ile?”} \]

\[2-1SG-\text{hit}-\text{PFV} \quad 2-1SG-\text{hit}-\text{PFV} \quad \text{then skunk(l)} \quad \text{1-who} \quad 1-2SG-\text{hit}-\text{PFV} \]

‘Then Hare woke up. He cries “Hihii. They’ve beaten me, they’ve beaten me, they’ve beaten me.” Skunk: “Who’s beaten you?” [Hare and Skunk]’

(139)  
\[po \text{ʊ-m-\text{fimba}} \quad \text{gw-\text{a}ke gw-a n-\text{nyambala ju-la, a-\text{lukw-a then \text{AUG-3-corpse}} 3-\text{poss.sg 3-\text{assoc 1-man}} 1-\text{DIST 1-NARR-go.FV}}}
\]
\[\text{kú-\text{syíl}-a. a-\text{lukw-a ku-bík-il-a ii-pumba 15-bury-FV 1-NARR-go.FV 15-put-\text{appl-FV 5-grave}}}
\]
\[n=ʊ-kó-\text{syíl}-a \quad \text{ku-la com=\text{AUG-15-bury-FV 17-DIST}} \]

‘The corpse of that man, he went and buried it. He went and put it in a grave and buried it there.’

\[ʊ-n-\text{kasi a-\text{ka-many-a} 1-lí na 1-lí AUG-1-\text{wife 1-NEG-know-FV AUG-PROX.5 com AUG-PROX.5}}
\]

‘His [killer’s] wife does not know anything.’ [Man and his in-law]

The narrative present is relatively infrequent in the corpus. With the exception of one text, in which nearly the entire peak episode is related in the narrative present, it hardly ever appears in consecutive clauses.

\(^{25}\)Drama, in the sense of Longacre (1996: 43), is “a very vivid style of discourse in which quotation formulas drop out and people speak out in multiple I-thou relations”.

193
Fleischman (1990), following Buffin (1925), distinguishes between two varieties of the narrative present: the “action” variety, used for narrating events, and the “visualizing” variety for descriptions. The majority of instances of the narrative present of the type discussed so far belong to the action variety. (139) above is amongst the few exceptions. Furthermore, all occurrences of the action variety in the corpus feature the imperfective simple present.

Concerning the visualizing variety of the narrative present, there is a reoccurring construction consisting of a present tense paradigm together with the interjection of surprise ngɪmba (topolectual variant: ndɪmba) ‘behold, gosh’. This construction is in fact not limited to narratives, but also found in past expository texts. In the case of narratives, the use of ngɪmba plus narrative present often goes along with intrusions of the narrator, who typically foregrounds relevant information that is not transparent for at least one participant or the hearer. This is specifically the case with the secret intentions or attitudes of a protagonist. With this construction, a greater variety of verbal paradigms is encountered. (140–142) illustrate uses of the simple present, the present perfective and the zero copula respectively.

2SG-reduce-SUBJ
‘As they were on the road returning, Hare told Hippo, “They’ve praised you a lot, that you’re a good person, but your thighs are too big, they have said you should lose weight.”’

looli ngɪmba kalʊlʊ i-kʊ-lond-a ni-nyama i-j-aa kʊ-ly-a but behold hare(1) 1-PRS-want-FV AUG-meat(9) AUG-9-ASSOC 15-eat-FV
‘But gosh, Hare wants meat for eating.’ [Hare and Hippo]

(141) kalʊlʊ a-linkw-angal-a pala~pa-la kɪsita kʊ-lʊ-bon-a hare(1) 1-NARR-be_well-FV REDUPL~16-DIST without 15-11-see-FV ʊ-lʊ-bʊbi.
AUG-11-spider
‘Hare stayed right there without seeing Spider.’
6.7 The present as non-past

ngɪmba ʊ-lʊ-bʊbi ʊ-lʊ-bʊbi kʊ-ka-aja kʊ-my-ake
behold AUG-11-spider 11-go-PFV 17-12-homestead 17-4-poss.sg
‘Gosh, Spider has gone home.’ [Hare and Spider]

(142) a-a-kalang-ile ii-fumbɪ ɪr-ɪr-1.
ngɪmba ii-fumbɪ (Ø) ly-a sota
1-PST-fry-PFV 5-egg 5-DIST behold 5-egg (COP) 5-ASSOC python(9)
‘She fried that egg. Gosh, that egg is Python’s.’ [Python and woman]

The interjection ngɪmba/ndɪmba is strongly associated with the present tense. It is otherwise only attested in the corpus as an exclamation of surprise or a question tag in direct speech. It should be noted that exchanging the present tense paradigms in the above examples for their past tense counterparts would lead to a past-in-the-past reading.

6.7.2 Present tense in subordinate clauses

In the following, the use of the present tense in the most common types of subordinate clauses which feature a finite indicative verb will be described. The focus is on past tense discourse.

6.7.2.1 Temporal and conditional adverbial clauses

Temporal adverbial clauses are most commonly introduced by the augmentless noun class 14 referential demonstrative bo, which in this use will be glossed as ‘as’ throughout this study. When it introduces temporal clauses bo is unstressed and may be considered a proclitic to the verb phrase.

These clauses introduced by bo can occur in either pre-verbal or post-verbal position, although the pre-verbal position clearly predominates in the corpus. The most common paradigms in temporal clauses are the present perfective and the simple present. The present perfective is used when the state-of-affairs it describes is construed as completed before the one expressed in the matrix clause takes place (143). With inchoative verbs this typically gives a stative reading (144). The simple present, on the other hand, is commonly used with a continuous, simultaneous reading (145).

(143) bo a-mal-ile ɪ-m-bombo j-aake a-a-sook-ile=po, a-a-bʊʊk-ile
as 1-finish-PFV AUG-9-work 9-poss.sg 1-PST-leave-PFV=16 1-PST-go-PFV
kʊ-my-ake
17-4-poss.sg
‘When he finished his work, he left and went home.’ [Hare and Hippo]
At first glance it may seem that these clauses introduced by *bo* express two conflicting kinds of temporal ordering between the matrix clause and the temporal clause: posteriority (143) vs. simultaneity (144, 145). However, in both cases the time interval for which the matrix clause eventuality is asserted can be understood as concomitant with the state-of-affairs expressed in the adverbial clause. As discussed in §6.5.3, perfective aspect in Nyakyusa introduces a post-Nucleus perspective. With a perfective non-inchoative verb in the temporal clause, as in (143), the main clause eventuality is thus constrained to the post-time of the subordinate one. With an inchoative verb in the temporal clause (144), the main clause eventuality is concomitant with the resultant state. In the same fashion, adverbial clauses of anteriority feature either the persistive (§6.6.2) in its ‘still to/not yet’ reading (146) or the negative counterpart to the present perfective (147).

(144)  
po  bo  i-li-ndʊ  lɪ-la  lɪ-gon-ile  itolo  ba-aly-eg-ile  
then  as  AUG-5-monster  5-DIST  5-rest-PFV  just  2-PST-take-PFV  
a-m-isi  ɡa-la  
AUG-6-water  6-DIST  
'When that monster was deeply asleep they took that water.' [Monster with guitar]

(145)  
po  bo  i-kw-imb-a  po  ji-lnkʊ-tup-a  
then  as  1-PRS-sing-FV  then  9-NARR-become_fat-FV  
'As it [child] was singing, it [snake] became fat.' [Snake and children]

(146)  
po  ju-mo  ʊ-jʊ  a-lnkʊ-mmw-eg-a  ʊmw-ana  bo  a-kaalɪ  
then  1-one  AUG-PROX.1  1-NARR-1-take-FV  AUG-1-child  as  1-PERS  
ʊ-kʊ-piny-a  ɪ-ly-ʊndʊ  
AUG-15-bind-FV  AUG-5-thatching_grass  
'One of them took her child before binding the grass.' [Throw away the child]

(147)  
bo  a-ka-fik-a  pa-la  a-lnkw-ag-an-il-a  
as  1-NEG-arrive-FV  16-DIST  1-NARR-find-RECP-APPL-FV  
com=AUG-1-person  16-9-path  
'Before she arrived there, she met a person on the way.' [Throw away the child]

(148) illustrates the use of the copula in a temporal clause. (149) is an example featuring a negated verb, negative while (150) illustrates reference to a future state-of-affairs.
6.7 The present as non-past

(148) **bo to-li** ba-niini tw-a-boɔk-ile ku-dalesalama
as 1pl-cop 2-little 1pl-pst-go-pfv 17-D.

‘When we were little we went to Dar es Salaam.’ [ET]

(149) **po bo ba-ti-kʊ-j-aag-a** po i-lyebe ly-al-iis-ile
then as 2-NEG-PRS-9-find-fv then aug-5-crow 5-pst-come-pfv
ʊ-kw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-kol-a ʊ-tw-ana tw-a n-gʊkʊ

‘As/while they were not finding it [needle], Crow came, beginning to
catch the little children of the chickens.’ [Chickens and Crow]

(150) **bo ga-kɪnd-ile** a-ma-sikʊ a-ma-longo ma-na a-ka-aja
as 6-pass-pfv aug-6-day aug-6-ten 6-four aug-12-village
a-ka-a Ninibe ki-kʊ-pyut-igw-aga
aug-12-assoc N. 12-mod.fut-ruin-pass-mod.fut

‘Yet forty days, and Nineveh shall be overthrown.’ (Jonah 3:4)

A less frequent kind of temporal clauses is introduced by the locative noun
class 17 proximal demonstrative kʊno. All occurrences of this in the corpus are
found in post-verbal positions. Again, the present tense paradigms are used, with
temporal reference stemming from the matrix clause. Thus, in (151) the present
perfective with inchoative kola ‘grasp, hold’ induces a stative reading, which is
construed as concomitant with the eventuality of returning. Similarly in (152)
the act of singing, in the simple present, takes place at the same time as the act
of going home.

(151) **a-ba-ndʊ ba-la ba-lnkʊ-buj-a kʊ-ka-aja,** **ku-no**
aug-2-person 2-dist 2-narr-return-fv 17-12-homestead 17-prox
**ba-kol-ile** a-ma-boko ga-abo m-mi-tʊ
2-hold-pfv aug-6-hand 6-poss.pl 18-4-head

‘Those people returned home with their hands on their heads.’ [Thieving
monkeys]

(152) **ba-lnkʊ-bʊʊk-a na=gyo kʊ-my-abo n=ʊ-lʊ-saalo**
2-narr-go-fv com=ref.4 17-4-poss.pl com=aug-11-happiness
ʊ-lʊ-nywamu fiijo **ku-no bi-kw-ɪmb-a n-nyɪmbo**
aug-11-big intens 17-prox 2-prs-sing-fv aug-song(10)

‘They went home with them [monkey’s tails], very happy and singing
songs.’ [Thieving monkeys]
A similar pattern of usage is found with adverbial clauses introduced by *linga* ‘if, when’. As the English translation suggests, these can receive a temporal as well as a conditional reading. Again, one of the present paradigms is used, with temporal reference stemming from the main clause:

\[(153)\] po *linga* ba-n-swil-ile po Ṽ-mw-ana a-a-j-aga
then if/when 2-1-feed-PFV then AUG-1-child 1-PST-be(come)-IPFV
na=a-ma-ka fiijo
COM=AUG-6-strength INTENS

‘When they had fed it, the child would become very strong.’ [Clothing long ago]

\[(154)\] kangi *linga* ku-ga-keet-a ma-tiitʊ
again if/when 2SG.PRS-6-watch-FV 6-black

‘When you look at it [water], it is black’ [Selfishness kills]

\[(155)\] *linga* ga-fik-ile a-ma-jolo Ṽ-ka-suluk-ege
if/when 6–arrive-PFV AUG-6-evening 2SG-ITV-descend-IPFV.SUBJ
paa-si
16-below

‘When the evening has come, then you can climb down.’ [Mfyage turns into a lion]

However, in the conditional reading of *linga*, overt marking of past tense is possible, if the state-of-affairs in the conditional clause is overtly construed in a past reference frame.

\[(156)\] *linga* i-fi-ndʊ fy-a-lɪ paa-meesa ba-a-l-iile
if/when AUG-8-food 8-PST-COP 16-table(9)(<SWA) 2-PST-eat-PFV

‘If the food was on the table [on that occasion] then they ate it.’ [ET]

\[(157)\] lilno *linga* Ṽ-jo Ṽ-gwise gw-a n-dome
now/today if/when AUG-REF.1 AUG-his_father(1) 1-ASSOC 1-husband
a-ka-alɪ-m-bonwile Ṽ-n-kasi gw-a mw-anaake, po
1-NEG-PST-1-pay_off.PFV AUG-1-wife 1-ASSOC 1-his_child then
i-kʊ-bomb-aga bule~bule?
1-MOD.FUT-do-MOD.FUT REDUP~how

‘Nowadays, if the father of the husband has not paid the wife of his child, then what will she do?’ [Should she save a life...]
Lastly, in adverbial clauses referring to iteratives, habituats or generics, the
temporal reference can be understood as relative to the singular events that make
up these repeated occurrences. These types of adverbial clauses are often intro-
duced by *kokuti* ‘every’ (158, 159). (160) illustrates a temporal clause of anteriority
relating to a past generic proposition. See also (153) above.

\[(158)\]  
\[kokuti\ m-bomb-ile=po\]  
panandiri itolo r-m-bombo n-gw-ag-a  
\[\text{every}\ 1sg\text{-work-Pfv=Part}\]  
a _little just \[\text{AUG-9-work 1sg\text{-prs-find-fv}}\]  
\[\text{n-gateele}\ 1sg\text{-be(come)_tired.Pfv}\]  
‘Every time after working just a bit I find myself tired.’ [ET]

\[(159)\]  
\[kokuti a-sulwike\]  
paa-si a-a-j-aga i-n-galamu  
\[\text{every}\ 1\text{-descend.Pfv}\]  
16-down 1-pst\text{-be(come)-IPfv AUG-9-lion\]  
‘Every time she went down to the ground she would become a lion.’  
[Mfyage turns into a lion]

\[(160)\]  
\[bo ba-kaali u-kw-and-a\]  
u-ku-mog-a ba-a-fwal-aga  
\[\text{as 2-pers AUG-15-begin-FV}\]  
AUG-15\text{-dance-FV 2-pst\text{-dress/wear-IPfv}\]  
i-my-enda i-my-elu, pamo a-ma-golole a-m-eelu  
\[\text{AUG-4-cloth AUG-4-white or}\]  
\[\text{AUG-6-sheet AUG-6-white}\]  
‘Before starting to dance, they would put on white clothes, or white
sheets.’ [Custom of dancing]

### 6.7.2.2 Complements of PCU verbs

With verbs of perception, cognition and utterance (PCU verbs; terminology fol-
lowing Givón 2001), a pattern parallel to that of temporal adverbial clauses is
found. In the following, verbs of perception and cognition will be discussed be-
fore turning to verbs of utterance, specifically information verbs.

The following examples illustrate the use of present tense paradigms in the
clausal complements of perception and cognition verbs, with temporal reference
relative to the state-of-affairs depicted in the matrix clause. Thus, the simple
present in (161) and in the first complement clause of (162) depicts a process un-
folding at the same time as its perception. The same holds for the periphrastic
present progressive in the second complement clause of (163). The present perfe-
tive is used with inchoative verbs in the second and third complement clauses
of (162) and accordingly gives a stative reading. Use of the present perfective
with non-inchoative verbs is illustrated in (163, 164). Accordingly it denotes a
completed eventuality whose result is perceived.
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

(161) Sambụka a-lɪnkʊ-kalal-a mu-n-dumbula ṭoktr
S. 1-NARR-be(come)_angry-fv 18-9-heart COMP
i-kʊ-ŋ-dek-a mw-ene
1-PRS-1-let-fv 1-only

'Sambuka became angry in her heart that she [Asia] was leaving her alone.' [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

(162) po a-lɪnkw-ag-a kajamba i-kʊ-sook-a, a-fwele
then 1-NARR-find-fv tortoise(1) 1-PRS-leave-fv 1-dress/wear.PFV
i-kti-tili, n=ii-koti ly-ake, a-kol-ile n=1-n-gili
AUG-7-hat COM=5-coat(<SWA) 1-poss.sg 1-grasp-PFV COM=AUG-9-stick
j-aa kw-end-el-a, r-ki-ngoti
9-ASSOC 15-walk/travel-APPL/PFV AUG-7-walking_stick

'He [Monkey] found Tortoise coming out, wearing a hat and his coat, holding a stick for walking, a walking stick.' [Monkey and Tortoise]

(163) bo a-fik-ile pa-la a-lnkʊ-sy-ag-a i-n-gambɪl i-haano
as 1-arrive-PFV 16-DIST 1-NARR-10-find-fv AUG-10-monkey 10-five
si-fi-fungamiile r-fi-lombe mu-ŋ-gʊnda gw-ake, si-li
10-8-put_pressure_on.PFV AUG-8-maize 18-3-field 3-poss.sg 10-COP
pa-ko-ly-a
16-15-eat-fv

'When he arrived there, he found five monkeys had devastated the maize in his field and were eating.' [Thieving monkeys]

(164) ii-sikʊ lɪ-mo kalʊlʊ bo i-kʊ-jaat-a a-lnkʊ-fi-bon-a r-fi-lombe
5-day 5-one hare(1) as 1-PRS-walk-fv 1-NARR-8-see-fv AUG-8-maize
mu-ŋ-gʊnda fi-bnifiwfe
18-3-field 8-ripen.PFV

'O one day Hare, while he was taking a walk, saw that the maize in the field was ripe.' [Saliki and Hare]

Sometimes bo ‘as’ (see §6.7.2.1 above) follows a verb of perception:

(165) po a-a-pɪliike bo kʊ-kʊ-lɪl-a “káa!”
then 1-PST-hear.PFV as 17-PRS-sound-fv of_sickle_swinging

'Then he heard it as there was a sound “Káa!” [of a sickle swinging]' [Wage of the thieves]

Information verbs also follow the now familiar pattern. They differ however in their preferences as to the syntactic structure of their complement. The com-
6.7 The present as non-past

Complement most commonly consists of a headless relative clause, as in (166). Alternatively, complementation through the associative plus infinitive of iti (see §10.3) is attested (167). In both cases, within the relative clause the subject marker typically is of noun class 10. This can be understood as referring to implicit imongwa ‘issue(s) (9/10)’, an interpretation that is strengthened by example (168). Note that again the present perfective is used in the relative clause.

(166) a-linku-ba-buul-a 1-si si-sookiile pa-ka-aja
     1-NARR-2-tell-FV AUG-PROX.10 10-happen.PFV 16-12-homestead
     pa-my-ake
     16-4-POSS.SG

He told them what had happened in his house.’ [Killer woman]

(167) bo ba-gomwike ku-malafyale gw-abo, ba-ahl-m-pangiile r-sy-a
     as 2-return.PFV 17-chief(1) 2-POSS.PL 2-PST-1-tell.PFV AUG-10-ASSOC
     ku-tri u-n-nuguna a-fug-ile 1-n-galamu
     15-say AUG-1-younger_sibling 1-tame-PFV AUG-9-lion

When they returned to their chief, they told him that his younger brother had tamed a lion.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

(168) u-n-kulumba gw-abo n-sofu ji-lnkw-igul-a
     AUG-1-older 1-POSS.PL AUG-elephant(9) 9-NARR-open-FV
     u-lu-komaano n=u-ku-fi-buul-a i-fi-nyamaana n-imongwa
     AUG-11-meeting COM=AUG-15-8-tell-FV AUG-8-animal AUG-issue(9)
     r-jit ji-m-pel-ile u-koo-kool-a u-lo-komaano
     AUG-PROX.9 9-1-make-PFV AUG-15-call-FV AUG-11-meeting

Their eldest, Elephant, opened the meeting and told the animals the reason that had made him call the meeting.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

Similarly to what was found for temporal clauses, in complements of PCU verbs which relate to an iterative, habitual or generic proposition, the temporal perspective can be understood as relative to the individual sub-events:

(169) po tw-a-many-aga ukuti ku-la u-bw-ite bu-kol-eene
     then 1PL-PST-know-IPFV COMP 17-DIST AUG-14-fight 14-hold-RECP.PFV
     u-bw-a ku-mog-a
     AUG-14-ASSOC 15-dance-FV

‘Then we would know that a dancing competition was being held.’ [Custom of dancing]
6.7.2.3 Relative clauses

Relative clauses show a more complex picture. Within past narrative discourse, both present tense verbs and past tense verbs are encountered in relative clauses. In terms of temporal reference, the present tense is found both with its default meaning and with past time reference (present-in-the-past). Likewise, the past tense is encountered both as a concomitant past and as a past-in-the-past.

In the cases discussed in §6.7.1–6.7.2.2 above – that is, relative clauses subordinate to a narrative present, embedded in a temporal clause or modifying the perceived, cognized or uttered proposition of PCU verbs – the use of a present tense paradigm is predictable through syntax and semantics. Further straightforward cases are those relative clauses referring to timeless statements or past iteratives, habituals and generics. These will be discussed further below. Excluding these predictable cases, there remains a number of alternations between present and past tense which are governed by pragmatic consideration, namely the textual and expressive components of meaning. The past tense, however, clearly predominates and is to be considered the default.

For a first approximation of the alternations of tenses, it is worth considering the activation status of the information given in the relative clauses in question; see §1.4.4.2 on the categories of activation status. All relative clauses that feature a present tense predicate with past time reference contain either old information, that is, both their head and the proposition they contain can be classified as either discourse-old/hearer-old, or information that is strongly inferable.

It follows from this generalization that all relative clauses containing brand new information relating to past time (the story-now) feature a past tense verb. A prototypical case is that of explicative relative clauses in the orientation section:

(170) ijolo n-k-ii-su ky-a Tukuju, ba-a-li=ko a-ba-ndu
old_times 18-7-land 7-ASSOC T. 2-PST-COP=17 AUG-2-person
a-ba ba-a-lim-ag a 1-mi-gunda gy-abo kifu ki
AUG-PROX.2 2-PST-farm-IPFV AUG-4-farm 4-POS.PL near
na=a-ma-tengele
COM=AUG-6-bush

‘Long ago in Tukuyu there were people who were farming their fields near the forest.’ [Thieving monkeys]

This association between information status and tense marking is a one-way conditional. While brand new information invariably comes with the past tense, discourse-old/hearer-old or inferable propositions can also receive past tense marking:
6.7 The present as non-past

(171) **Context:** A monster had caught and killed a child.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ba-} & \text{-linku-pilikisy-a a-ba-kamu ba-} \text{a mw-ana ju-la} \\
\text{2-NARR-listen-FV} & \text{ AUG-2-relative 2-ASSOC 1-child 1-DIST} \\
\text{ly-} & \text{alir-n-kolile 1-li-ndu} \\
\text{5-PST-1-grasp-PFV AUG-5-monster} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘The relatives of that child that the monster had caught listened.’

[Monster with Guitar]

Before taking a closer look at these tense alternations, the contexts which allow for them need to be narrowed down further. In semantic terms, what allows for the use of the present tense as a present-in-the-past is the lack of tense specification which goes together with the lack of overt morphological tense marking. Fleischman (1990) calls this the “zero interpretation”. Consequently, if a relative clause depicts a state or an unfolding process that is situated prior to the state-of-affairs of the matrix clause, an overt past tense is required. This is illustrated in (172–174) for an inchoative verb with perfective aspect a non-inchoative verb with imperfective aspect, and the copula respectively.

(172) **Context:** A dog had hunted and saved some leftover meat, which in the meantime has been eaten by another dog.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{n-nine} & \text{ j-oope ji-linku-kong-a muu-nyuma pa-kr-syanju} \\
\text{AUG-companion(9)} & \text{ 9-also 9-NARR-follow-FV 18-back(9) 16-7-thicket} \\
\text{a-pa} & \text{ j-aa-syele n-nyama} \\
\text{AUG-PROX.16 9-PST-remain.PFV AUG-meat(9)} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘The other dog followed behind to the thicket where the meat had been left.’ [Dogs laughed at each other]

(173) **Context:** Sambuka has deceived Juma by saying that her fiancé does not love her.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Juma a-linku-swig-a fiijo koo-ma-syoo a-ga} \\
\text{J. 1-NARR-wonder-FV INTENS 17-6-word AUG-PROX.6} \\
\text{a-a-job-agga Samboka} \\
\text{1-PST-speak-1PFV S.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

‘Juma wondered much about the words that Sambuka had been saying.’

[Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

\[26\] As Smith (1997: 84) notes, both stat(iv)es and progressives depict a state-of-affairs that is stable and extends in time. Another logically possible case, that would be predicted to require a past tense, but which is not attested in the corpus, is that of habitual or generic propositions relating to a previous reference frame, as in *He carved with the same adze that his father had used to carve with.*
(174) Context: The late chief has split up his chiefdom between his two heirs.
bo ka-kind-ile a-ka-balilo ka-nandí Ṽ-n-kułmba a-lmor-lond-a
as 12-pass-pfv AUG-12-time 12-little AUG-1-older 1-NARR-want-fv
Ṽ-bo-nyafyale bo Ṽ-bo a-a-li Ṽ=a=bo
AUG-14-chiefdom as AUG-PROX.14 1-PST-COP COM=PROX.14
Ṽ-gwise AUG-his_father

‘After a little while the elder brother wanted a chiefdom just like the one
his father had had.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

So far it has been established that the alternations between past and present
tense are found in those relative clauses that act on old or inferred information
and which do not require a preceding reference frame. A look at the relative fre-
quency again reveals a clear preference for the past tense, which dominates by
a factor of approximately 2.5 in the corpus. The present tense is thus to be con-
sidered the “deviation from [the] default parameter setting” (Haspelmath 2006:
64f) for which specific pragmatic functions must be assumed.27

(175) is a representative example of the alternation between present and past
tense with a concomitant state. Perfective aspect is here employed with an in-
choative verb, yielding a stative reading. In (175a) the present perfective is used,
but in (175b) – a few clauses later in same text and depicting essentially the same
state-of-affairs – the past perfective is used. Two things are apparently going
on in this example. First, the act of hiding in (175a) immediately precedes this
eventuality.28 Second, (175a) depicts a moment of high tension: will the invaders
notice the hidden locals? Note how the narrator employs repetition so as not to
let this moment go unnoticed. The relative clause with the default past tense in
(175b), however, merely serves to identify the patient of the stabbing.

(175) a. Context: Invaders have come to a certain land. Three of the locals
have run off and hidden below the straw on the fields.
po leelo bo b-iibüiliile ba-lmkw-is-a a-la-luguru. po
then now/but as 2-hide_at.pfv 2-NARR-come-fv AUG-2-enemy then
ba-lmkw-end-a pa-mwanya pa-my-abo.
2-NARR-travel/walk-fv 16-high 14-4-poss.pl

Haspelmath (2006) discusses the numerous possible uses of the more traditional term marked-
ness and suggests abandoning it altogether in favour of a more specific terminology. In the
case discussed here, two uses of markedness are in conflict: “markedness as deviation from the
default parameter setting” vs. “markedness as overt coding”.

biibüiliile may thus be paraphrased as ‘have just hidden and are in hiding’. See §6.5.3 for a more
detailed discussion of the semantic interplay between perfective aspect and inchoative verbs.
6.7 The present as non-past

So when they had hidden, the invaders came. They walked on top of them. They walked on top of the people that were hidden below.’

‘He drove the spear downwards. He stabbed that one that was hidden below.’ [Invaders]

The preceding examples feature perfective aspect with an inchoative verb. A specifically intriguing case is the alternation between the past and present perfective with non-inchoative verbs. Independent of tense, perfective aspect with these verbs yields a posterior vantage point (see §6.5.3). There is thus the choice of which temporal perspective to apply to the preceding event (§1.4.2.1). Example (176) illustrates the use of the present perfective vis-à-vis the past perfective with a non-inchoative verb. The eating of the remaining meat, construed with the present perfective (176a), takes place in the episode preceding the two dogs’ encounter, while the act of hunting, which is construed in the past perfective, is more remote in temporal and textual terms (176c). Further, it is the act of eating that allows the story’s central conflict to develop. Lastly, in (176c) the negative counterpart to the present perfective is employed, which as an evaluative device works on the expressive component: it is the second dog’s imprudence that will have fatal consequences and that constitutes the story’s theme. As Fleischman (1990: 159) points out, negative predicates in narratives are evaluative, as they entail an unrealized alternative scenario.

(176) Context: A dog has hunted and left some meat uneaten, which in the meantime has been eaten by another dog.

a. ji-linkw-ag-an-il-a n=ɪ-m-bwa r-ji ji-l-iile
   9-NARR-find-RECP-APPL-FV COM=AUG-9-dog AUG-PROX.9 9-eat-PFV
6 Tense and aspect constructions 1: present and past tense

\( \text{ni-nyama} \)
\( \text{AUG-meat}(9) \)

‘He met the dog that had eaten the meat.’

b. \( j\text{-lnk\text{"u}}-j\text{-laalk\text{"o}}-s\text{y}-a j\text{-lnk\text{"u}}-t\text{į}, \text{“mw-inang\text{"u}, } \text{u-sumwike} \)
\( 9\text{-NARR-9-ask-fv} \quad 9\text{-NARR-say} \quad 1\text{-my_companion} \quad 2\text{sg-depart.pfv} \)
\( \text{k\text{"u}-go?} \)

where

‘He [dog who has eaten the meet] asked “My friend, where are you going?”’

c. \( 1\text{-m-bwa} \quad 1\text{-ji} \quad j\text{-aa-fw\text{"i}m-ile} \quad j\text{-lnk\text{"u}}-t\text{į} \text{“n-sumwike} \)
\( 9\text{-dog} \quad 9\text{-AUG-PROX.9} \quad 9\text{-PST-hunt-pfv} \quad 9\text{-NARR-say} \quad 1\text{sg-depart.pfv} \)
\( \text{k\text{"u}-k\text{"u}-mal\text{"i}sy-a n-nyama j-ang\text{"u}”} \)
\( 17\text{-15-end-fv} \quad 9\text{-AUG-meat}(9) \quad 1\text{sg-poss.1sg} \)

‘The dog that had hunted said “I am going to finish my meat.”’

d. \( 1\text{-m-bwa} \quad 1\text{-ji} \quad j\text{r-ka-fw\text{"i}m-a=}p\text{o} \quad j\text{-lnk\text{"u}}-t\text{į} \)
\( 9\text{-dog} \quad 9\text{-AUG-PROX.9} \quad 9\text{-NEG-hunt-fv=}\text{PART} \quad 9\text{-NARR-say} \)
\( \text{“n-nyama 1-ji gw-a-syesye n-d-ile} \)
\( 1\text{-AUG-meat}(9) \quad 9\text{-AUG-PROX.9} \quad 2\text{sg-PST-remain.caus.pfv} \quad 1\text{sg-eat-pfv} \)
\( u-ne” \)
\( 1\text{sg-1sg} \)

‘The dog that had not hunted said “The meat you left over, I ate it.”’

[Dogs laughed at each other]

Immediateness as well as evaluation also appear to be relevant in the following example:

(177) Context: A woman has cooked chicken for her guests. While she was outside fetching water, a thieving woman stole most of the food.
\( \text{Ngateee a-al-iinogwine fiijo kang\text{"i} sy-ah-m-bab-ile} \)
\( \text{N. 1-PST-think.pfv INTENS again 10-PST-1-hurt-pfv} \)
\( \text{mu-n-dumbula, paapo a-al-iib-il-iigwe r-fi-nd\text{"u} } \)
\( \text{18-9-heart because 1-PST-steal-appl-pass.pfv 9-PST-food} \)
\( \text{1-fi a-ba-pnj-ile a-ba-heesya ba-ake} \)
\( \text{AUG-PROX.8 1-2-cook-appl.pfv AUG-2-foreigner 2-poss.sg} \)

‘Ngateee thought much and it hurt her in her heart, because she was robbed of the food she had cooked for her guests.’ [Thieving woman]
6.7 The present as non-past

To summarize then, in past tense narrative discourse relative clauses that refer to the story-now and that introduce new information invariably feature a past tense verb. In relative clauses that contain old or inferred information, the past tense is the default. The present tense may however be employed to foreground and evaluate.\(^{29}\) In the case of stative predicates or continuous/progressive aspect, this requires the depicted state-of-affairs to be concomitant with the one expressed in the matrix clause. With perfective aspect, the preceding event or entrance into a new state is typically close by and/or of direct relevance to the storyline.

Other instances of present tense relative clauses in a past tense environment are subject- and object-relative clauses of past iteratives, habituals and generics. This patterns with what has been found for temporal clauses and complements of PCU verbs. In (178) there are a present tense copula and a simple present in the subject- and object-relative clauses respectively. These describe states-of-affairs concomitant with the one expressed in the main clause. In (179), the present perfective in the object-relative clause construes the occurrences of cooking as taking place before the occurrences of stealing.

\begin{verbatim}
(178) a-ba  ba-li  kifu ki n=ii-tengele  ba-a-tumul-aga  \\
       AUG-PROX.2 2-COP near  COM=5-bush 2-PST-cut-IPFV  \\
       n=ʊ-kʊ-b-ʊol-ɪkɪsy-a  a-ba  bi-kʊ-ga-lond-a  \\
       COM=AUG-15-2-buy-CAUS.APPL-FV AUG-PROX.2 2-PRS-6-want-FV  \\
‘Those who were near to the bush would cut it [grass] and sell it to those who wanted it.' [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]
\end{verbatim}

\begin{verbatim}
(179) n-kr-panga  kr-la  a-a-li=po  ŋ-n-kiikulʊ  ŋ-n-hɪɪji  ŋ-ju  \\
18-7-village 7-DIST 1-PST-COP=16 AUG-1-woman AUG-1-thief AUG-PROX.1  \\
a-a-bomb-aga  ɪ-j-aa  kw-ib-a  ɪ-fi-ndʊ  ɪ-fi  \\
1-PST-work-IPFV AUG-9-ASSOC 15-steal-FV AUG-8-food AUG-PROX.8
\end{verbatim}

\(^{29}\)One may object that relative clauses are inherently backgrounded as a function of their syntactic status. However, as shown i.a. by Fleischman (1985; 1990: ch. 6) among others, grounding is best understood as a cluster concept. It follows that salience within a text constitutes a spectrum or continuum rather than a binary opposition. What is more, the syntactic status of a clause is only one amongst various factors determining the relative salience of the state-of-affairs it describes. Information provided in a relative clause thus possesses a relative salience, which can be modulated by the choice of TMA paradigm among other means. Fleischman further notes a close conceptual connection between grounding as a means of textual organisation and evaluation as an expressive device.
ba-piɪj-ile  a-ba-nine
2-cook-PFV AUG-2-companion

‘In that village there was a thieving woman, who used to steal the food the others had cooked.’ [Thieving woman]

Lastly, the present tense paradigms feature with their default meaning in relative clauses that depict timeless states-of-affairs. Thus, in (180), the referential demonstrative serves as an emphatic copulative (see §10.2.2) and in (181) the simple present has a reading.

(180) ɪɪ-sofu  j-aa-jt-kooliile  t-n-galamu  t-jɪ  jo  j-a
AUG-elephant(9) 9-PST-9-call.PFV AUG-9-lion AUG-PROX.9 REF.9 9-ASSOC
kɪ-bɪli
7-two

‘Elephant called Lion, who is the second [in rank].’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(181) ɪ-kʊ-tem-a
again 6-PST-COP=17 COM=AUG-6-bamboo AUG-PROX.6 2-PRS-tap-FV
ʊ-bw-alwa  ʊ-bʊ  bi-ku-tɪ  ʊ-bʊ-laasi
AUG-14-alcohol AUG-PROX.14 2-PRS-say AUG-14-bamboo_beer

‘Also there was bamboo from which they tap this beer they call bamboo beer.’ [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]
7 Tense and aspect constructions 2: narrative markers

7.1 Introduction

This chapter deals with two verbal paradigms whose use is essential for understanding coherent narrative discourse in Nyakyusa: the narrative tense (§7.3) and the subsecutive (§7.4). Table 7.1 shows the formal composition of the two.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Narrative tense</td>
<td>sm-\textit{linku}-\textit{VB-a}</td>
<td>\textit{tulinkujoba} ‘we spoke’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsecutive</td>
<td>sm-\textit{a-VB-a}</td>
<td>\textit{twajoba} ‘(then) we spoke’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the following sections, first a short approximation to the concept of narrative markers will be given, together with an overview over the commonalities and differences between Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers (§7.2). This is followed by an in-depth examination of the the narrative tense and the subsecutive (§7.3, 7.4).

7.2 The two narrative markers: a comparison

Dedicated narrative markers are a common device in African languages (Dahl 1985: 113f). Concerning Bantu, Nurse (2008) gives a rough description of what makes up this wider category:

The time of the situation is first established, either explicitly in the first verb in a string, or implicitly […] All following verbs in the sequence are then marked by a special narrative marker, which replaces the tense marker
appropriate to the time established by the first verb. Just because most sequences deal with past events, this special marker is most frequent in past narratives, less frequent in timeless events, followed by futures. It also occurs across sentences and utterances, in which case the context most often crosses sentence boundaries and characterizes a long utterance. Use of the special marker can be suspended and then deliberately reintroduced by the speaker to stress continuity. (Nurse 2008: 120)

Nurse’s description will serve as a valuable starting point for an understanding of the function of narrative markers in Bantu. Nevertheless, it contains a number of points that require further scrutiny as they relate to the Nyakyusa narrative tense and subsecutive. Before turning to a closer examination of these points for each of the two narrative makers, some more general points about the Nyakyusa inventory of narrative markers are worth a discussion.

To begin with, Nurse (2008: 120) goes on to generalize that “most [Bantu] languages have only one narrative marker and the number of narrative markers never exceeds that of past tense markers.” Nyakyusa, having two narrative markers, thus not only runs counter to a strong tendency within the language family, but contradicts Nurse’s second generalization, as Nyakyusa does not make remoteness distinctions in the past.¹

In the following sections, common typologies of narrative markers will be discussed (§7.2.1), to then take a closer look at the pragmatic factors that license the employment of the Nyakyusa narrative markers (§7.2.2). This is followed by a discussion of their distribution in the macro-structure of narrative discourse (§7.2.3) and their quantitative distribution (§7.2.4). Lastly, §7.2.5 summarizes the functional differences between the two narrative markers.

7.2.1 On typologies of narrative markers

Given Nyakyusa’s inventory of two narrative markers, the question arises as to how far they differ in meaning and use. In discussions of narrative markers, especially for African languages, two typologies are commonly encountered. The first one has a syntactic basis and distinguishes narrative markers according to the subject of the verb thus marked (Rose et al. 2002: 19). Narrative markers that are used with the same subject as that of the initial verb then classify as consecutive or narrative. A narrative marker used with different subjects, on the other hand, is termed a subsecutive/sequential. However, (dis-)continuity of the

¹Unless one classifies the present perfective as a near past, an attribute that rather derives from its more general aspectual meaning (§6.5.3).
grammatical subject is not a delimiting parameter in Nyakyusa. Firstly, both the
Nyakyusa narrative tense and the subsecutive can co-occur in the same stretch
of a narrative, as in (34) below. Secondly, the subject of both the narrative tense
and the subsecutive may be the same as that of the initial verb within a span;
see e.g. (19) below for the narrative tense and (37) for the subsecutive. Both are,
however, also found with different subjects; see e.g. (19) below for the narrative
tense and (38) for the subsecutive. Another dichotomous typology of narrative
markers has been proposed by Longacre (1990), who focuses on pragmatic factors.
He distinguishes a narrative tense, defined as marking only storyline events (i.e.
only those events that advance the narrative) and possibly used from the first
clause of a text onwards, from a consecutive tense, which is “either dependent
on a special initial form and/or is rank-shifted in sequence with non-storyline
initials” (Longacre 1990: 109). The first criterion, dependency on an initial form,
will be examined in §7.2.2.

Longacre’s second criterion, rank-shifting, deserves a short excursion. In his
work on narrative discourse, Longacre stipulates that in any given language there
is a verbal construction associated with those clauses that advance the progress
of a story. Once this construction is identified, the remaining verbal paradigms
or constructions used in narrative discourse can be ranked. This ranking is based
on the degree that the clauses they are found in depart from the main storyline
(e.g. secondary storyline > backgrounded actions > setting). Some languages may
also possess a construction that is used in those clauses that rank higher than the
main storyline (pivotal events).

7.2.2 Licensing and dependency

As discussed in §7.2.1, Longacre’s (1990) typology distinguishes between those
narrative markers that can be used from the first clause of a narrative on and
those that require the employment of an initial verb form.

An examination of the text corpus shows that all narratives open with at least
one past tense verb, typically in the form of an orientation section that may vary
in length. Thus in (1a), not only the protagonists are introduced, but the situation
is established by the use of the past imperfective. The onset of the storyline here
coincides with the use of the narrative tense (1b, 1c).

(1) a. po leelo i-m-bwele j-aa-londaga ʊkʊtɪ
    then now/but AUG-9-mosquito 9-PST-want-IPFV COMP
Tense and aspect constructions 2: narrative markers

ji-j-eeg-e 1-m-boloko-tu
9-9-marry-subj aug-9-ear
‘So, Mosquito wanted to marry Ear.’

b. po leelo 1-m-bwele ji-linko-book-a ku-m-boloko-tu
then now/but aug-9-mosquito 9-narr-go-fv 17-9-ear
‘So Mosquito went to Ear.’

c. ji-linko-iti “gwe, m-boloko-tu, o-ne n-go-gan-ile fiijo …”
9-narr-say 2sg 9-mosquito aug-1sg 1sg-2sg-love-pfv INTENS
‘It said “You, Ear, I love you very much …”’ [Mosquito and Ear]

Note that while in the case of (1) the onset of the storyline coincides with a shift from a past tense verb to the narrative tense, this is not true for all texts. This will be discussed in detail in §7.2.3.

To continue, negative data corroborates the observation that neither the narrative tense nor the subsecutive can by themselves open a text. Constructed mini-narratives that open with a verb in the narrative tense, such as (2), were unanimously rejected by the language assistants and corrected so as to start with a past tense verb (3). Note that this example does feature the frame adverb mma-jolo ‘yesterday’.

(2) a. # m-ma-jolo n-dinko-lembok-a n=ʊ-lu-bonjʊ fiijo
   18-6-evening 1sg-narr-awake-fv com=aug-11-morning INTENS
b. n-dinku-nw-a ʊ-tʃai
   1sg-narr-drink-fv aug-tea(9)(<SWA)
c. bo n-nw-ile ʊ-tʃai n-dinko-book-a ku-ku-kam-a
   as 1sg-drink-pfv aug-tea(9) 1sg-narr-go-fv 17-15-milk-fv
   ʊ-lu-kama ...
   aug-11-milk

(intended: ‘Yesterday I got up very early. I had breakfast (lit. ‘drank tea’). When I finished breakfast, I went to milk the cows …’) [ET]

(3) Correction of (2):
   a. m-ma-jolo n-aa-lembwire n=ʊ-lu-bonjʊ fiijo
      18-6-evening 1sg-pst-awake.pfv com=aug-11-morning INTENS
   b. n-dinku-nw-a ʊ-tʃai ...
      1sg-narr-drink-fv aug-tea(9)

Constructed texts whose opening sentence consists of a temporal clause referring to a specific situation, such as (4), however, were accepted.
7.2 The two narrative markers: a comparison

(4) a. m-ma-jolo, **bo n-go-pilik-a** n-ng’ombe si-ku-jweg-a
   18-6-evening as 1SG-PRS-hear-FV AUG-cow(10) 10-PRS-shout-FV
   fiijo **n-dmkʊ-lembʊk-a**
   INTENS 1SG-NARR-awake-FV
   'Yesterday, when I heard the cows making a lot of noise, I got up.'

b. n-dmkʊ-bʊʊk-a kʊ-kʊ-kam-a ʊ-ʊ-kama   ...
   1SG-NARR-go-FV 17-15-milk-FV AUG-11-milk
   'I went to milk the cows ...' [ET]

The same can be observed for the subsecutive: constructed mini-narratives such as (5) were rejected by the language assistants and corrected so as to start with a past tense verb (6).

(5) a. # m-ma-jolo **n-AA-lembʊk-a** n=ʊ-ʊ-bʊŋjʊ   fiijo
   18-6-evening 1SG-SUBSEC-awake-FV COM=AUG-11-morning INTENS

b. **n-AA-nw-a** n-tʃai
   1SG-SUBSEC-drink-FV AUG-tea(9)(<SWA)

c. bo n-nw-ile n-tʃai n-AA-bʊʊk-a kʊ-kʊ-kam-a
   as 1SG-drink-PFV AUG-tea(9) 1SG-SUBSEC-go-FV 17-15-milk-FV
   ʊ-ʊ-kama
   AUG-11-milk
   (intended: 'Yesterday I got up very early. I had breakfast (lit. 'drank tea'). When I finished breakfast, I went to milk the cows ...') [ET]

(6) Correction of (5):

a. m-ma-jolo **n-AA-lembwike** n=ʊ-ʊ-bʊŋjʊ   fiijo
   18-6-evening 1SG-PST-awake.PFV COM=AUG-11-morning INTENS

b. **n-AA-nw-a** n-tʃai   ...
   1SG-NARR-drink-FV AUG-tea(9)

To conclude, neither of Nyakyusa’s narrative markers can on their own open a text. Instead, they are pragmatically dependent on an otherwise established context. In this, they come close to encoding a dependent *taxis*, as originally defined by Jakobson (1957: 46): “taxis characterizes the narrated event in relation to another narrated event and without reference to the speech event”. Its temporal semantics, however, preclude the application of this term. Contini Morava (1987; 1989), in a discussion of Swahili, speaks of a “contingency” relation. Seidel (2015), in a wider perspective, employs the term “notional dependency”.

213
In Nyakyusa narrative discourse the function of providing a context on which the narrative tense elaborates is normally fulfilled by a preceding independent clause. As will be shown in §7.3.2, 7.4.3, the semantics of both the narrative tense and the subsecutive include past time reference. Examples (2–6) above indicate that what is required for the employment of the narrative markers in Nyakyusa is not so much a preceding independent clause, nor a narrowed-down time frame, but rather the establishment of a specific situation.

7.2.3 Distribution in narrative discourse

Having discussed the principle pragmatic requirements for the employment of Nyakyusa’s narrative markers, in this section their distribution will be discussed in regards to the macro-structure of narratives and the discourse conventions governing their use in alternation with other verbal paradigms.

The narrative tense and the subsecutive are found essentially only within the complicating action, evaluation and resolution sections of the text, that is within the plot proper (Fleischman 1990: ch. 5). The only exceptions are endings of the type illustrated in the following examples:

(7) gʊ-lɪnkʊ-j-a  mw-iʃo  gw-ake  papaa~pa
   3-NARR-be(come)-fv  3-end(<SWA)  3-poss.sg  redupl~prox.16
   ‘Right here it ended.’ [Throw away the child]

(8) ka-a-j-a  ka-mpyenyule
   12-SUBSEC-be(come)-fv  12-closing_formula
   ‘The story is over’ [Man and his in-law]

Note that this association of the narrative markers with the plot, however, is a one-way conditional. Unlike what has been reported for other African languages such as Supyire (Senufo), where a narrative marker is used “in all but the initial main line clause” (R. Carlson 1994: 34), in the Nyakyusa corpus there are few narratives in which the entire storyline is told using the narrative tense and subsecutive. To varying degrees, events that clearly form part of the storyline are construed in the past perfective.

To begin with, the onset of the plot does not always equal a switch to the narrative markers. In many texts, following the orientation section, one finds a verb in one of the past tense paradigms setting the stage for the first episode. In

2 kampyenyule as a nominal predicate without a copula is a common closing formula in the folk tales collected by Berger (1933) and Busse (1942). (8) is the only token in the present corpus.
cases where there is no orientation section, this constitutes the opening of the text. With eventive material, the past perfective is the paradigm of choice. This is illustrated in (9), where the narrative tense is employed only from (9d) onwards; see Appendix B.1 for the full text.

(9)  

\[  
\text{a. Orientation section:}  
\]  
\begin{align*}  
i-n-gwina & \quad n=i-n-gambli \quad ba-a-li \quad bo-manyaani fiijo  
\text{AUG-9-crocodile COM=AUG-9-monkey 2-PST-COP 14-friendship INTENS}  
a-ka-balilo & \quad a-k-a \quad ijojo. \quad ba-a-jaat-an-il-aga  
\text{AUG-12-time AUG-12-ASSOC old_times 2-PST-walk-RECP-APPL-IPFV}  
n=u-kw-angal-a & \quad \text{pamopeene. i-n-gwina}  
\text{COM=AUG-15-be_well-FV together AUG-9-crocodile}  
\end{align*}  

\begin{align*}  
\text{j-iiis-aga} & \quad n-ku-j-eeg-a \quad i-n-gambli \quad n=u-ku-buuk-a  
9-PST.come-IPFV & \quad 18-15-9-take-FV AUG-9-monkey \quad \text{COM=AUG-15-go-FV}  
na=jo & \quad \text{pa-lo-suugo pa-kw-angal-a. ii-siku l-mo}  
\text{COM=REF.9 16-11-island 16-15-be_well-FV 5-day 5-one}  
u-n-na & \quad \text{gw-a n-gwina a-a-li m-bine}  
\text{AUG-1-his_mother 1-ASSOC 9-crocodile 1-PST-COP 1-ill}  
\end{align*}  

\begin{align*}  
\text{’Monkey and Crocodile were good friends long ago. They visited and} \nonumber  
\text{accompanied each other. Crocodile used to come to pick up monkey} \nonumber  
\text{and go with him to an island to spend time together. One day,} \nonumber  
\text{Crocodile’s mother was sick.’}  
\end{align*}  

\[  
\text{b. Begin of complicating action:}  
\]  
\begin{align*}  
\text{po} \quad i-n-gwina & \quad j-aa-buuk-ile \quad n-ku-ji-buul-a \quad i-n-gambli \quad \text{then AUG-9-crocodile 9-PST-go-PFV 18-15-9-tell-FV AUG-9-monkey}  
u\text{kuti} \quad “joo-ba \quad gw-angoo \quad m-bine. tu-buuk-e}  
\text{COMP my_mother 1-POSS.ISG 1-ill 1PL-go-SUBJ}  
u-ka-n-keet-e.”  
\text{2SG-ITV-1-look-SUBJ}  
\end{align*}  

\begin{align*}  
\text{’So Crocodile went to tell Monkey, “My mother is sick. Let’s go, you} \nonumber  
\text{should see her.”}  
\end{align*}  

\[  
\text{c. i-n-gambli} \quad j-aal-iitiike  
\text{AUG-9-monkey 9-PST-agree.PFV}  
\text{’Monkey agreed.’}  
\]  

\[  
\text{d. ba-linko-boo-ak-a}  
\text{2-NARR-go-FV}  
\text{’They went.’ [Crocodile and Monkey]}  
\]
In the same vein, eventive material that occurs at the beginning of a subsequent major textual unit is commonly expressed in the past perfective. In addition, the past perfective rather than the narrative tense or subsecutive is often employed for storyline events that are highly unpredictable, pivotal and/or constitute a major change in the roles of participants. In §6.5.5.3.6 it is shown that the central conceptual notion that governs the linguistic construal of narrative discourse in Nyakyusa is thematic continuity. These mentioned cases of the employment of the past perfective form part of a larger coherent pattern, in which past tense paradigms are employed at significant interruptions to thematic continuity. Employment of the narrative tense and subsecutive, on the other hand, is a linguistic signal of maintained thematic continuity. In this the narrative markers and their alternation with the past tense paradigms work mainly on the textual component of meaning (§1.4.4.2), in that they serve to structure the hearer’s mental representation. As will be seen in (10, 11), these alternations also seem to serve to control the information flow.

While the conceptual notion of thematic continuity allows for a coherent explanation of the employment of the narrative markers vis-à-vis the past tense paradigms, it has to be kept in mind that this is a discoursive convention. There is significant variation across texts concerning how much of the storyline is carried by the narrative markers on the one hand and the past perfective on the other. The opposite poles of this continuum can be illustrated by two stories in the corpus. In the text “Throw away the child” two women with young children go to pluck thatching grass. Having gathered enough, they tie it into bundles. One of the two women hides her child in the grass. Instead of the child, she then carries a stone on her back. On their way home, she convinces the other woman to throw her child into a ravine, claiming to have done so with her own child. During a pause, she then takes out her child to breastfeed it and thus the second woman understands she has been deceived. She sets off and magical beings give her directions to a place where she is finally given a child more beautiful than her own one. Nearly the entire storyline is carried by the narrative tense plus a few occurrences of the narrative present. The only exception is the past perfective in (10c), which delimits the deception episode.

(10) a. ba-lnkw-i-twɪk-a 1-ly-ʊndʊ
   2-NARR-REFL-lift_to_head-fv AUG-5-thatching_grass
   ‘They loaded the grass on their heads.’
b. ba-lnkw-end-a
   2-NARR-walk/travel-fv
   ‘They went.’

c. po bo bi-kw-end-a bi-kw-end-a po
   then as 2-PRS-walk/travel-fv 2-PRS-walk/travel-fv then
   ba-a-fik-ile pa-mo a-pa b-end-aga
   2-PST-arrive-PFV 16-one AUG-PROX.16 2-PST.walk/travel-IPFV
   ‘As they were going and going they arrived at some place where they were going.’

d. ba-lnku-ky-ag-a 1-k-iina 1-ki ki-kw-job-igw-a ukutu
   2-NARR-7-find-fv AUG-7-cave AUG-PROX.7 7-PRS-speak-PASS-fv COMP
   ki-sooko, 1-ki-tali fiijo
   7-ravine AUG-7-long INTENS
   ‘They found a cave which is called a ravine, a deep one.’

e. po v-ju a-lnku-n-syob-a v-n-nine
   then AUG-PROX.1 1-NARR-1-deceive-fv AUG-1-companion
   ‘This one betrayed her friend.’ [Throw away the child]

The text “Hare and Skunk”, of comparable length, shows the very opposite distribution of the past perfective vis-à-vis the narrative markers. The story goes as follows. The two protagonists go hunting and get hold of a guinea fowl. They put it on a fire and roast it. While Skunk repeatedly claims that it is done, Hare each time replies “Not yet”. This leads to Skunk getting tired of waiting and dozing off. Hare seizes the chance and eats up all the meat. When Skunk wakes up, Hare claims to have also been asleep and that the meat has burnt on the fire. Another day, Skunk takes revenge while Hare is asleep. He covers him with leaves and beats him hard with a stick. Then he steals off again. When Hare wakes up crying, Skunk appears and acts as if he has no idea what has happened. Some days later, both go to a festivity where drums are played. First Hare, then Skunk plays the drum and while singing they confess their deeds. This leads to a fight (resulting in Hare’s ears being stretched and Skunk’s nose being squeezed), which is stopped by Dog.

Within each episode of this second text, all of the essential actions and developments are depicted in the past perfective (plus some ancillary information with inchoative verbs). Verbs with the narrative tense and subsecutive mainly depict the communication between the two protagonists and amplify their actions (e.g. ‘They fought and fought and fought’). This gives the impression of
the narrator sharply delimiting the sets of predications that depict the ‘outline’ of the story from elaboration upon these circumstances. In quantitative terms, this employment of the verbal categories leads to nearly twice as many verbs in the past perfective as in the narrative tense and subsecutive combined. As an example, the third episode is given in (11); see Appendix B.2 for the full text.

(11)  
a. po nsiyisi a-a-kateele
then skunk(1) 1-PST-be(come)_tired.PFV
‘Then Skunk became tired.’
b. a-aly-and-ile ʊ-kʊ-sipʊk-a
1-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-doze-FV
‘He began to doze.’
c. po bo i-kʊ-sipʊk-a, bo a-gon-ile ʊ-tʊ-lo po kalʊš
then as 1-PRS-doze-FV as 1-rest-PFV AUG-13-sleep then hare(1)
a-aly-eg-ile ɪɪ-nyama j-oosa
1-PST-take-PFV AUG-meat(9) 9-all
‘As he was dozing, as he was asleep, Hare took all the meat.’
d. a-a-l-iile pyó, a-a-l-iile pyó
1-PST-eat-PFV of_consuming_completely 1-PST-eat-PFV o.c.c.
‘He ate it up, he ate it up.’
e. bo i-kʊ-lembʊk-a nsiyisi a-lnkw-ag-a kalʊš a-l-iile
as 1-PRS-wake_up-FV skunk(1) 1-NARR-find-FV hare(1) 1-eat-PFV
j-oosa ɪɪ-nyama
9-all AUG-meat(9)
‘When Skunk woke up, he found that Hare had eaten all of the meat.’
f. po a-lnkw-ammw-ani-a kalʊš a-lnkw-ʊ ti ɪɪ-nyama ji-bʊʊk-ile
then 1-NARR-1-ask-FV hare(1) 1-NARR-say AUG-meat(9) 9-go-PFV
kuʊgʊ?’
where
‘So he asked Hare “The meat, where has it gone?”’
g. po kalʊš a-lnkw-ʊ ti “hee. n-aa-gon-éliile niine
then hare(1) 1-NARR-say INTERJ 1SG-PST-rest-ints.PFV COM.1SG
AUG-13-sleep watch-FV 9-be_burnt-PFV 9-all 9-be_burnt_down-PFV
7.2 The two narrative markers: a comparison

ji-bwes-ile, hee”’
9-be_burnt_down-PFV INTERJ
‘Hare said “Hee, I was also asleep. Look, it all burnt to ashes. It burnt, hee.”

h. po nsyisyi a-a-kaleele fiijo
then skunk(1) 1-PST-be(come)_angry.PFV INTENS
‘Skunk was very angry.’
i. a-a-ti “haya!”
1-SUBSEC-say OK(<SWA)
‘He said “OK!”’ [Hare and Skunk]

Interestingly, Contini Morava (1989: 118–120) observes a similar variability for Swahili and points out the extensive use of the simple past by the author Shabaan Robert, which goes along with a “leisurably, didactic, even pedantic” (p. 119) style, whereas fast-spaced, fluent discourse is characterized by greater reliance on the so-called ‘consecutive’.

To sum up, in Nyakyusa, narrative texts are construed around the notion of thematic continuity and discontinuity. The narrative markers are here confined to the plot (complicating action, resolution, evaluation sections) and contrast with the past perfective. It has been seen that the narrator nevertheless possesses a considerable degree of freedom as to the degree to which s/he explicitly signals (dis-)continuity in the storyline by alternating between the narrative markers and the past perfective. A discussion of two texts in the corpus has shown the opposite poles of this continuum. In one, all of the essential developments are related in the past perfective and contingent elaboration is depicted through the narrative markers. In the other text, once sufficient orientation has been given, the storyline is ‘allowed to flow’ almost entirely through the use of the narrative markers.

7.2.4 Quantitative distribution

In the preceding subsections, it has been seen that the narrative tense and the subsecutive show equal behaviour in regards to subject continuity (§7.2.1) as well as in regards to Longacre’s criteria of textual dependency and storyline ranks (§7.2.2, 7.2.3). It has also been seen that both markers have the same distribution in regards to the macro-structure of narrative discourse (§7.2.3). With neither of these allowing for a functional differentiation of Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers, it is necessary to take a closer look.
A striking difference between Nyakyusa’s narrative markers can be found in their quantitative distribution. As an approximation to the latter, Table 7.2 lists the number of clauses marked with the narrative tense versus the subsecutive in 17 narratives. All of these come from recordings of oral renditions, apart from “The one who eats …”, which is the only written story in the corpus that features the subsecutive. Sequences of a verb of speech followed by an inflected form of the quotative verb \textit{tɪ} (see §10.3) have been conflated into a single clause. Elliptical verbless clauses – see (82) in §6.5.5.2 for an example – as well as each turn within drama (renditions of dialogue without overt quotation formulae) are counted as one independent clause.

As can be gathered from Table 7.2, in all oral narratives in the corpus, the narrative tense is employed. The narrative tense further clearly predominates over the subsecutive in the total number of tokens (it is also used in all of the written narratives). The subsecutive, however, does not feature at all in a number of texts. Within those texts in which both narrative markers are employed, either the narrative tense clearly predominates or both markers are roughly equal. Furthermore, the subsecutive, but not the narrative tense, is subject to certain sociolinguistic constrictions (see §7.4.2).

Table 7.2: Frequency distribution of narrative tense and subsecutive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>HaS</th>
<th>LaT</th>
<th>MaE</th>
<th>MaI</th>
<th>PaD</th>
<th>PW</th>
<th>HaT</th>
<th>EoF</th>
<th>MaT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clauses</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>98</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Narrative tense</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>19</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsecutive</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaM</td>
<td>27</td>
<td>29</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>92</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>918</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INV</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>387</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CaC</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>22</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SaC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TaC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MwG</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PaW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(\sum)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HaS = Hare and Skunk; LaT = Lion and Tortoise; MaE = Mosquito and Ear; MaI = Man and his in-law; PaD = Pig and Duck; PW = Pregnant women; HaT = Hare and Tugutu; EoF = The one who eat’s …; MaT = Monkey and Tortoise; CaM = Crocodile and Monkey; INV = Invaders; CaC = Chickens and Crow; SaC = Snake and children; TaC = Throw away the child; LK = Lake Kyungululu; MwG = Monster with guitar; PaW = Python and woman
7.2.5 Functional differences

As the detailed examination of the two narrative markers in §7.3, 7.4 will show, the two markers do not only differ in regards to their quantitative distribution, but also in their diachronic sources, their semantics and their micro-patterns of employment. To anticipate these findings, Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers most likely constitute two former present tense paradigms contrasting in grammatical aspect. In the present-day language, their opposition can be understood as one between the narrative tense as the aspectually unspecified, all-purpose narrative marker on the one hand and the subsecutive as the more restricted, specifically perfective marker of a narrative development on the other.

7.3 Narrative tense

This section deals with the narrative tense, the more frequent of Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers. In this section, its formal makeup will be discussed first (§7.3.1). Building on this, a number of semantic features will be examined (§7.3.2, 7.3.3).

7.3.1 Formal makeup

The narrative tense consists of the non-tensed copula *li* with an infinitive complement marked for locative class 18.

(12)  *tʊli nkʊjoba* ‘we spoke’

The familiar label *narrative tense* is applied to this construction for reasons of convenience. Note, however, that this construction does not constitute a tense in the sense of §1.4.2.1. Earlier studies referred to the Nyakyusa narrative tense as the *historical tense* or *tempus historicum* (Schumann 1899; Endemann 1914; Mwanga & Voorhoeve 1960a).

Throughout the rest of this study the left-of-the-stem portion of the narrative tense will be considered one unanalysed morpheme. While its composition is still transparent, the fact that no material can intervene between what corresponds to the copula and its complement suggests that synchronically this construction should be analysed as consisting of a prefix *lmkʊ*- plus the default final vowel.

(13)  a.  m-ma-jolo  *tʊ-lmkʊ-job-a*  
      18-6-evening 1PL-NARR-speak-FV  
      ‘Yesterday we spoke.’
b. tʊlnkʊjoba mmajolo

c. * tʊl mmajolo nkʊjoba

In its composition the Nyakyusa narrative tense corresponds to a periphrastic progressive construction that is widespread in Bantu and in many languages has grammaticalized further to a simple present tense (Bastin 1989a; 1989b); also see de Kind et al. (2015) for numerous cases in the Kikongo H16 cluster. This correspondence vis-à-vis its present-day uses point to a former simple present (i.e. present imperfective), whose use as a narrative present has become conventionalized up to the point of losing its original meaning and becoming restricted to the “narrative mode” (Smith 2003) of discourse. As a syntactic correlate, the narrative tense is attested exclusively in independent clauses. In all probability, this specialization as a narrative marker took place parallel to the rise of the new simple present (§6.5.1). As Haspelmath (1998) points out, in many languages old present tense paradigms that have been replaced by newer construction persist in specialized functions, e.g. as futurates, subjunctives or narrative markers; this functional shift is discussed in more detail in Persohn (2016). For a Bantu language, however, this originally periphrastic construction is a very uncommon source for a narrative marker. It does not figure as such in the neighbouring languages, nor in any of the around 140 languages for which Nurse (2008) provides tense and aspect matrices.

To conclude the discussion of the narrative tense’s formal makeup, note that there is no morphologically negated counterpart to the narrative tense, instead a negative auxiliary sita is used, which takes an augmentless infinitive as its complement:

\[(14)\] tʊ-si-sit-a kʊ-job-a

\text{1Pl-Narr-Neg.Aux-FV 15-Speak-FV}

‘We did not speak.’

### 7.3.2 Temporal and aspectual semantics

Taking up Nurse’s (2008) description of narrative markers in Bantu, recall that he points out that “just because most sequences deal with past events, this special [narrative, BP] marker is most frequent in past narratives, less frequent in timeless events, followed by futures” (p. 120). Concerning the Nyakyusa narrative tense, despite its source in a present tense construction, it is attested only...
with past time reference. This was already observed by Endemann (1914: 61), who notes that “[i]n its original meaning, this is thus a present tense form, but it serves as a Tempus historicum with a preterite meaning” (translated from the original German, BP). Negative evidence from elicitation shows that the narrative tense is not licensed in timeless generic (15) nor future (16) contexts.

(15) Context: Describing the process of preparing stiff porridge.
   a. bi-kʊ-kosy-a ʊ-m-ooto
      2-PRS-light-FV AUG-3-fire
   b. # ba-lnkʊ-suk-a i-fy-a ku-piri-jil-a
      2-NARR-wash-FV AUG-8-ASSOC 15-cook-APPL-FV
   c. # ba-lnkʊ-buk-a a-m-nsi pa-m-ooto …
      2-NARR-put-FV AUG-6-water 16-3-fire
      (intended: ‘They light the fire. They wash the cooking utensils. They put the water on the fire.’)

(16) Context: A young man’s plans for the future.
   a. bo n-gʊl-ile a=n-gʊ-jeng-a ʊ-n-yumba ʊ-n-ywamu
      as 1SG-grow-PFV FUT=1SG-PRS-build-FV AUG-house(9) AUG-big(9)
   b. # n-dɪnkʊ-tim-a ʊ-n-ng’ombe pa-ka-aja
      1SG-NARR-herd-FV AUG-cow(10) 16-12-homestead
      (intended: ‘When I am grown up, I will build a big house. Then I will herd cows at home.’)

As described in §6.7.2, temporal adverbial clauses feature present tense (non-past) predicates, which take their temporal reference from the matrix clause. The narrative tense here patterns with the past tense paradigms (and the subsecutive). What is more, with an intervening narrative present, past time reference need not be re-established (17). The latter has also been observed before by Eaton (2013).

(17) a. Asia a-lnkʊ-sʊʊbɪl-a ůkʊtɪ Juma a=i-kʊ-j-a ʊ-dʊme
   A. 1-NARR-expect-FV COMP J. FUT=1-PRS-be(come)-FV 1-husband
      gw-ake
      1-POSS.SG
      ‘Asia expected that Juma would become her husband.’

---

4See §6.7.1 on the interjection ngɪmba.
b. ngɪmba a-saam-iile kw-a Sambʊka kɪsita ku-many-a behold 1-migrate-APPL.PFV 17-ASSOC S. without 15-know-FV
   ‘Gosh, he has moved to Sambuka’s, without knowing [that Sambuka has lied to him].’

c. Juma na Sambʊka ba-linkw-eg-an-a
   J. COM S. 2-NARR-marry-RECP-FV
   ‘Juma and Sambuka married.’ [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

To conclude, the temporal semantics of the narrative tense includes past time reference. This leads to the question of its aspectual meaning. In (15) above it was shown that the narrative tense is incompatible with timeless generic statements. Apart from temporal semantics, this is further linked to the fact that the narrative tense is attested only in episodic sentences. As Krifka et al. (1995: 36) define them, “[e]pisodic sentences are those whose main predicate has a situation argument bound by existential closure; they report a specific event or occasion” as opposed to the generalizations that characterize generic and habitual statements. Note that this definition includes cases of plural participants or events (see G. N. Carlson 2009). (18) illustrates such a case, where the narrative tense apparently serves to individuate the single, asserted occurrences. This interpretation is strengthened by the fact that the past imperfective in its non-episodic habitual/generic reading (see §6.5.7) was considered infelicitous in this context.

(18) Context: Children have killed a snake that was laying in front of them on the path. Now they try to pass the snake’s dead body.
bo bi-ku-lond-a u-ku-kmd-a kʊkʊtɪ bi-ku-ti ba-ɪr-tambʊk-e
as 2-PRS-try-FV AUG 15-pass-FV every 2-PRS-say 2-9-cross-SUBJ
ba-kmd-e ji-linkw-tup-a kʊngi ji-linkw-ɪ-a n-dali
2-pass-SUBJ 9-NARR-become_fat-FV again 9-NARR-be(com)e-FV 9-long
   ‘As they tried to pass, each time they wanted to cross and pass it [snake], it became fat and long.’ [Children and Snake]

Apart from its restriction to episodic sentences, the narrative tense can be considered unspecified for grammatical aspect. With inchoative verbs and other types of verbs that include a change-of-state or inherent endpoint (see §5), it typically refers to the passing of this endpoint. This is illustrated in (19, 20) with the inchoative verbs hoboka ‘be(come) happy’ and ima ‘stand, stop’.

---

6For the projective/conative construction consisting of ti followed by a verb in the subjunctive, see §9.3.2.
7.3 Narrative tense

(19) Juma a-lɪnkʊ-m-bʊʊl-a Sambʊka a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ “Po J. 1-NARR-1-tell-FV S. 1-NARR-say then n-gw-eg-ege ju jʊʊ-gwe, bule, paapo gu n-gan-ile. 1SG-2SG-mar ry-IPFV.SUBJ REDUPL~2SG Q because 2SG-1SG-love-PFV ʊ jʊ a-ka n-gan-a n-dek-e.” AUG-PROX.1 1-NEG-1SG-love-FV 1SG-let-SUBJ Juma told Sambuka “Then I’ll marry you, because you love me. The one who doesn’t love me, I’ll leave him.”

Sambʊka a-lɪnkʊ-hobok-a fiijo paapo ɪ-si S. 1-NARR-be(come)_happy-FV INTENS because AUG-PROX.10 a-a-lond-aga a-a-sy-ag-ile 1-PST-want-IPFV 1-PST-10-find-PFV ‘Sambuka became very happy because she had achieved what she wanted.’ [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

(20) po leelo bo a-fik-ile kɪfuki pa-k-iina pamo paa-s〇fu j-aa then now/but as 1-arrive-PFV near 16-7-cave or 16-room(9) 9-ASSOC n-galamu kajamba a-lɪnkw-m-a pa-nja 9-lion tortoise(1) 1-NARR-stand/stop-FV 16-outside ‘When it arrived near the cave or the bedroom of Lion, Tortoise stopped outside.’ [Lion and Tortoise]

With activity-type verbs the reading depends on the context and co-text. To begin with, the narrative tense can give a reading of an eventuality as a discrete whole. This is most obvious in those cases where the discourse environment clearly delimits the occurrence, as in (21b).

(21) a. po ba-lɪnkʊ-bʊʊk-a kʊ-kw-ip-a ɪ-ly-ʊndʊ ku-la then 2-NARR-go-FV 17-15-pluck-FV AUG-5-thatching_grass 17-DIST ‘They went to pluck grass there.’

b. po ba-lɪnkw-ip-a ɪ-ly-ʊndʊ then 2-NARR-pluck-FV AUG-5-thatching_grass ‘They plucked grass.’

c. po bo b-iip-ile ɪ-fi-kose, kʊkʊti mu-ndʊ ɪ-fi-kose, then as 2-pluck-PFV AUG-8-bundle every 1-person AUG-8-bundle ba-lɪnkʊ-j-a ba-ndʊ ba-a kʊ-piny-a 2-NARR-be(come)-FV 2-person 2-ASSOC 15-bind-FV ‘When they had plucked bunches, each one bunches, they began to tie [the grass].’ [Throw away the child]
Unlike the subsecutive (§7.4.3), a progressive reading, however, is also possible with the narrative tense. The following two examples will illustrate this. In (22) a woman has deceived her friend by asking her to throw her child into a ravine and claiming to have done so with her own child. Now she takes it from its hiding place and begins to breastfeed it (22a, 22b). (22d) serves not only to express her lack of reaction to the deceived woman’s indignation, as expressed in (22c), but explicitly depicts the act of breastfeeding as ongoing without interruption. The flow chart in Figure 7.1 gives a graphic illustration of the relative order of events.

Figure 7.1: Relative event order of (22)

(22) a. a-lmkɔ-mmw-eg-a ʊ-mw-anaake 1-NARR-1-take-FV AUG-1-his_child
   ‘She took her child.’

   ‘She then did what, began to breastfeed it.’

c. bo ʊ-kʊ-mm-ongesya-a a-lmkɔ-tr  “Haa! keet-a as 1-PRS-1-breastfeed-FV 1-NARR-say INTERJ watch-FV ʊʊ-syob-ile, gwe mw-inango. ʊ-t-ile 2SG.1SG-deceive-PFV 2SG 1-my_companion 2SG-say-PFV

7This story was told by a speaker of one of the northernmost varieties of Nyakyusa, hence the less common shape ʊ- of the noun class 1 subject prefix in (22c); see §3.3.2.2.
7.3 Narrative tense

As she was breastfeeding it, she [the other woman] said “Haa! Look, you’ve deceived me, my friend. You said “I’ve thrown away the child.””

d. po jo-la a-linkw-endelel-a u-kʊ-mm-ongesy-a u-mw-ana
then 1-DIST 1-NARR-continue-FV AUG-15-1-breastfeed-FV AUG-1-child
‘That one continued to breastfeed the child.’

e. jʊ-la a-linkw-and-a u-kʊ-buj-a u-kʊ-bʊʊk-a
1-DIST 1-NARR-begin-FV AUG-15-return-FV AUG-15-go-FV
ku-kʊ-n-keet-a u-mw-anaake
17-15-1-look-FV AUG-1-child
‘That one began returning, going to look for her child.’ [Throw away the child]

Example (23) depicts the beginning of a race between Hare and Tugutu, a type of bird. While Tugutu remains at the start (23d), Hare does run (23b, 23e). Hare’s act of running is construed as an ongoing activity contemporaneous with his acts of speaking (23c) and completing the first mile (23f). Figure 7.2 illustrates this as a flow chart.

(23) Context: Hare and Tugutu are running a race.

a. a-lnkʊ-tɪ “oko kalʊlo! to-bop-ege leelo!”
1-NARR-say INTERJ hare(1) 1PL-run-IPFV.SUBJ now/but
‘He [Tugutu] said “Here we go, Hare! Let’s run now!”’

b. po kalʊlo a-lnkʊ-bop-a
then hare(1) 1-NARR-run-FV
‘Hare ran/was running.’

c. a-lnkʊ-tɪ “lɪnga to-bop-ile a-ma-elɪ ji-mo
1-NARR-say if/when 1PL-run-PFV AUG-6-mile(<EN) 9-one
n-gʊ-kʊ-koolel-a ʊkʊtɪ “bole, mwa=n-dugutu,
1SG-PRS-2SG-call-FV COMP Q matronym=9-type_of_bird
ʊ-li-po?” gw-itɪk-e ʊ-tɪ “ee, n-di=po”
2SG-COP=16 2SG-agree-SUBJ 2SG-say.SUBJ yes 1SG-COP=16
‘He said “When we’ve run one mile, I’ll call you saying “Mr. Tugutu are you there?” You shall answer “Yes, I’m here.”’

8The narrator oscillates between placing the loanword for ‘mile’ in noun class 6, thus re-analyzing /ma/ as a prefix, and placing it in noun class 9a, the default for loans.
d. po bo b-and-ile ṽ-kʊ-bop-a jʊ-la mwa=n-dugutu then as 2-begin-PFV AUG-15-run-FV 1-DIST matronym=9-t.o.bird a-a-syeele pala~pa-la 1-PST-remain.PFV REDUPL~16-DIST ‘When they had started to run that Mr. Tugutu had remained right there.’

e. po kalʊlʊ a-linkʊ-bop-a mw-ene then hare(1) 1-NARR-run-FV 1-only ‘So Hare ran/was running alone.’

f. a-linkʊ-mal-a a-ma-elɪ ga-mo 1-NARR-finish-FV AUG-6-mile 6-one ‘He completed one mile.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

Figure 7.2: Relative event order of (23)

To summarize, the semantics of the Nyakyusa narrative tense include past time reference. Further, it is closely linked to episodic events and unspecified for grammatical aspect.

Considering that historically the narrative tense constituted a present tense construction, likely one carrying imperfective aspect, this indicates that its employment as a narrative present has led to a profound re-adjustment of its semantics. For discussion see Persohn (2016), where this shift in meaning is attributed to Fleischman’s (1990) “plus interpretation”, by which a simple present as the least specific TMA construction takes over the temporal (i.e. past tense) and aspectual meaning appropriate to context, as well as to a cross-Bantu tendency to have aspectually underspecified forms as narrative markers. Robar (2014) convincingly
7.3 Narrative tense

argues that the so-called wayyiqtol-construction in Biblical Hebrew underwent a comparable change, starting out as a simple present whose extensive use as a narrative present with the pragmatic function of signalling continuity has led to a bleaching of its original semantic content. In the case of Biblical Hebrew this has gone even further, allowing for the construction in question to take over any kind of tense, aspect or mood.

7.3.3 Sequentiality of events

Closely linked to the question of aspectual semantics is that of sequential ordering. At first the very concept of a narrative marker may suggest that the Nyakyusa narrative tense denotes sequential ordering of events. Moreover, on the basis of a Swahili example taken as typical for Bantu, Nurse (2008: 121) generalizes that “the narrative explicitly sequences events […] and says that […] the second situation is later than the first”. Cover (2010: 111) cautions against prematurely accepting such an assumption and observes that sequentiality is not part of the semantics of the narrative paradigms in Badiaranke (Northern Atlantic). Similar observations have been made for the narrative/consecutive tense in the Senufo language Supyire (R. Carlson 1994) and the so-called wayyiqtol-construction in Biblical Hebrew (Cook 2004). Concerning Bantu, Morrison (2011: 277), in her grammar of Bena G63, notes that “[the narrative tense] is often best translated as ‘and then X’ [emphasis added]”, while Seidel (2015) makes a similar observation for Yeyi R41. Even for Nurse’s model example, Swahili, a detailed examination shows that not all instances of the paradigm in question feature sequential ordering (Contini Morava 1987: 112f).

Labov & Waletzky’s (1967) framework of narrative analysis – see §1.4.4.2 – provides us with a valuable tool to check whether the Nyakyusa narrative tense inherently encodes sequentiality. Assuming that it does encode an ordering of events would predict that no clause containing it can be displaced without changing the underlying order of events. That is, the narrative tense should only figure in those clauses that are classified as narrative clauses. The discussion of its aspectual semantics, however, has already shown that the narrative tense can have a progressive reading. As a function of being ongoing, the eventualities in question overlap with other eventualities. That is, they can be displaced throughout a determined part of the text without changing the underlying order of events and can therefore be classified as restricted clauses. A few additional examples will illustrate the Nyakyusa narrative tense outside of narrative clauses.

Another representative example of the narrative tense appearing in a restricted clause is given in (24). (24a) contains a husband’s orders to his wife and (24b, 24c)
her carrying out these orders. Each step is dependent on the previous one. That is, these three clauses describe eventualities that happen in sequential order. The eventuality described in (24d), however, takes place simultaneously to the ones described in (24b, 24c). This means that (24d) could be anticipated without changing the relative order of events, and is hence a restricted clause. This becomes clear from the wider context of the story – he goes on to clandestinely kill her father – and is also signaled by spatial deixis: his actions take place at the deictic centre (kùno ‘here’) while hers is viewed against the ground of an associated motion event (see §10.4.1 on the movement gram (j)a). Figure 7.3 is a visualization of the relative order of events.

(24) a. a-lnkò-n-koolël-a ʊ-n-kasi, a-lnkò-ti “n-kasi gw-angò, bòök-e 1-NARR-1-call-FV AUG-1-wife 1-NARR-say 1-wife 1-POS.1SG, go-SUBJ lîlîno ʊlọ, k-ʊọł-e ɪ-fi-lombe, ʊ-ka-sy-e now/today now ITV-buy-SUBJ AUG-8-maize 2SG-ITV-grind-SUBJ ʊ-bʊ-fu, ɪ-fî-ma-ʊọkà” AUG-14-flour 17-6-store ‘He called his wife and said “My wife, go right now, go buy maize, go grind flour, in the stores.”

b. nalooli ʊ-n-kiikʊlo a-lnkw-a k-ʊọl-a ɪ-fi-lombe really AUG-1-woman 1-NARR-go.FV 15-buy-FV AUG-8-maize ‘She went and bought maize.’

c. a-lnkw-a kʊ-sy-a ʊ-bʊ-fu kʊ-ma-ʊọkà 1-NARR-go.FV 15-grind-FV AUG-14-flour 17-6-shop ‘She went and ground flour at the stores.’

d. kʊ-no ʊ-ŋ-dʊme a-lnkò-tendekesy-a ʊ-tʊ-ndọ, 17-PROX AUG-1-husband 1-NARR-prepare-FV AUG-13-thing ɪ-fi-lwîlo fy-a kʊ-ɲ-gog-el-a ʊ-gwise AUG-8-poison 8-ASSOC 15-1-kill-APPL-FV AUG-his_father(1) ‘Here her husband prepared things, poison to kill her father with.’

e. a-a-gomok-a ʊ-mw-anike jʊ-la 1-SUBSEC-return-FV AUG-1-young_person 1-DIST ‘Then that young woman returned.’ [Man and his in-law]

The narrative tense also features in iconic repetitions that express a single extended eventuality (25). What is depicted in the three clauses in (25a) is not internally ordered. These clauses are thus classified as co-ordinate clauses. The
7.3 Narrative tense

CASE OF (25b) PRESENTS MORE DIFFICULTIES: IT IS NOT ENTIRELY CLEAR IF THE SPEECH ACT DEPICTED TAKES PLACE DURING THE PROTAGONISTS’ WALKING OR IF IT IS PRECEDED BY A STOP.

(25) a. po ba-lnkw-end-a, ba-lnkw-end-a, then 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV ba-lnkw-end-a
2-NARR-walk/travel-FV
‘They walked, they walked, they walked.’
b. ba-lnkw-ti “eh tɔ-kateele”
2-NARR-say INTERJ 2PL-be(come)_tired.PFV
‘They said “Eh, we’re tired.”’ [Throw away the child]

ANOTHER CASE OF THE NARRATIVE TENSE FEATURING IN CO-ORDINATE CLAUSES IS GIVEN IN (26). CLAUSES (26a, 26b) DESCRIBE EVENTUALITIES THAT HAPPEN IN SEQUENCE: THE PEPPER ONLY COMES OUT OF THE BOTTLES AFTER THE MONKEYS CATCH THEM. CLAUSES (26c–26e) HOWEVER, DESCRIBE VARIOUS FACETS OF ONE AND THE SAME EVENTUALITY. THEY CAN BE FREELY SWAPPED WITH EACH OTHER, BUT ARE ORDERED RELATIVE TO (26b).

(26) Context: People try to get rid of a group of thieving monkeys that devastate their fields. To fight them, they throw small bottles filled with pepper.

a. si-lnkw-angl-a m-mwanya
10-NARR-catch-FV 18-high
‘They caught (the bottles) in mid air.’
b. i-m-bilipili     jr-lnkʊ-sunyunduk-a   n-tʊ-supā   mu-la
                      AUG-9-pepper(<SWA) 9-NARR-come_out_of-FV 18-13-bottle 18-DIST
                      n=ʊ-kʊ-nyeel-el-a   m-maa-so na   m-mi-lomo
                      COM=AUG-15-jump-APPL-FV 18-6-eye   COM 18-4-lip
                      ‘The pepper came out of the little bottles and flew into their eyes and
                      mouths.’

c. popaa~po i-n-gambɪlɪ     si-lnkʊ-gw-a   paa-si   paapo
                      REDUPL~then AUG-10-monkey 10-NARR-fall-FV 16-below because
                      j-aa-li   n-gāli   fiijo
                      9-PST-COP 9-fierce INTENS
                      ‘And so the monkeys fell down because it was very hot.’

d. si-lnkʊ-kuut-a     si-lnkʊ-ti, “Ho! Ho! Ho!”
                      10-NARR-cry-FV 10-NARR-say   INTERJ   INTERJ   INTERJ
                      ‘They cried and said, “Ho! Ho! Ho!”’

e. si-mo si-lnkʊ-gw-a   paa-si, “puu!”
                      10-one 10-NARR-fall-FV 16-below   of_falling_down
                      ‘Some fell down, “Splat!”’ [Thieving monkeys]

To conclude, the Nyakyusa narrative tense appears in narrative clauses as well
as in restricted and co-ordinate clauses. This shows that sequential order is not
one of its semantic features. The fact that most eventualities depicted in this
paradigm stand in sequence is a mere correlate of the predominantly iconic or-
dering of narrative discourse.

However, it is important to note that while in examples (22–26) not all the
eventualities depicted in the narrative tense are ordered relative to each other,
no out-of-sequence uses are attested. The narrative tense does not feature in
free clauses. Although it does feature in certain restricted clauses, this is lim-
ited to clearly defined episodic situations; see also §7.3.2. That is, the narrative
tense does not feature in clauses that serve as orientation; see also §7.2.3. Lastly,
flashbacks in narrative discourse are exclusively expressed by means of the past
perfective (§6.5.3.4).

7.3.4 Summary

To summarize, the Nyakyusa narrative tense goes back to a simple present or
present progressive used as a narrative present. In the present-day language, it
is the most common dedicated narrative marker (see §7.2.4), whose semantics
include reference to the past time. It is unspecified for grammatical aspect, but
restricted to episodic situations and thus the narrative storyline. The narrative
tense by itself does not encode sequential ordering. Instead it is attested with se-
quential as well as simultaneous eventualities. The employment of the narrative
tense, like the subsecutive, is dependent on an otherwise established situation
and forms part of a larger pattern, in which narrative discourse is constructed
around the notion of thematic continuity and discontinuity. Given that the nar-
rative tense is a dedicated marker of narrative discourse, the narrative tense can
further be understood as a metalinguistic signal of narrativity.

7.4 Subsecutive

This section deals with the subsecutive, Nyakyusa’s second dedicated narrative
marker. In the following sub-sections, first its formal makeup and possible di-
achronic source will be discussed (§7.4.1), then some restrictions on the use of
the subsecutive will be broached (§7.4.2). This is followed by an overview of its
semantics together with its basic textual function (§7.4.3), as these two facets
are inseparably linked. The latter are then illustrated by a number of common
uses (§7.4.4) before going on to discuss a number of examples of the subsecutive
without strict temporal progression (§7.4.5).

7.4.1 Formal makeup

The subsecutive is formed by a prefix \textit{a-} in the post-initial slot, together with the
default final vowel \textit{-a}.

(27) \textit{twajoba} ‘then we spoke’

There is no negative counterpart to the subsecutive. In elicitation, negation of
the subsecutive through the negative auxiliary \textit{sita} plus an augmentless infinitive,
parallel to what is found for the narrative tense (see §7.3.1), was accepted.
This pattern is, however, not attested in the text corpus. Like the narrative tense,
the subsecutive is attested only in independent clauses.

Schumann (1899) and Endemann (1914) consider the subsecutive a simple past,\footnote{They refer to it as \textit{Imperfektum}. In the German tradition this term is sometimes used as a
synonym for \textit{Präteritum} (preterite/simple past), which fits their description.} an analysis that is, however, not corroborated by its usage in text collections from
the chronolect described by them (Berger 1933; Busse 1942; 1949). The term \textit{sub-
secutive} has been adopted from Mwangoka & Voorhoeve’s (1960c) grammatical
sketch. Some of the uses of this construction found in Meyer’s (1989) ethnologi-
cal notes, originally gathered at the turn of the twentieth century, indicate that
the subsecutive constitutes a former present perfective or anterior. Such an origin is also indicated by the evidential of report baatt (§10.3), most likely from ‘they (have) said’, and the two variants of the courtesy formula naapela / mbelile ‘please’, the former featuring the subsecutive, the latter the present perfective. What is more, as the following discussion will show, a diachronic source along the lines of a present perfective or anterior is consistent with the meaning and use of the subsecutive in the present day language.

### 7.4.2 Restrictions on use

As discussed in §7.2.4, the subsecutive is the less frequent of Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers, considering the absolute frequency within a given text as well as across the entire corpus of oral narratives. Unlike the narrative tense, which no narrative in the corpus can do without, the subsecutive is completely absent from nearly half of all oral narratives. What is more, the subsecutive is subject to normative restrictions.

To begin with, the subsecutive does not appear in written narratives, with the exception of one sole token. In discussions of examples from oral narratives, some of the language assistants stated that the subsecutive is a common device in storytelling, but followed up by saying that it would be inappropriate in the written medium. Other language assistants rejected any constructed examples containing the subsecutive but then used it themselves in oral texts. A few speakers even considered this construction a Ndali intrusion into their language. This assessment can easily be rejected, given the construction’s apparent age, the fact that it is found in the eastern varieties of Nyakyusa (§1.2.5), whereas Ndali is one of Nyakyusa’s western neighbours, and its distribution, which does not resemble that of its Ndali cognate as described by Botne (2008).

### 7.4.3 Semantics and basic textual function

As discussed in §7.3.2, narrative markers across languages differ, among other ways, in their possible temporal reference. The Nyakyusa subsecutive, like the narrative tense, is attested only with temporal reference preceding the time of speech. This is corroborated by negative evidence from elicitation, where it was rejected for future predictions (28, 29) as well as in a timeless generic use (30).

---

10 A similar phenomenon has been observed in Malila M24, where speakers would use the present perfective, likewise of the shape a-vb-a, in the storyline of oral narratives, but insisted that it would be inappropriate for a written story (Eaton 2015: 24).
7.4 Subsecutive

(28) Context: A young man’s plans for the future.
   a. bo n-gol-ile a=n-gʊ-jeng-a ni-nyumba ni-nywamu
      as 1SG-grow-PFV FUT=1SG-PRS-build-FV AUG-house(9) AUG-big(9)
   b. # n-aa-tim-a ni-ng’ombe pa-ka-aja
      1SG-SUBSEC-herd-FV AUG-cow(10) 16-12-homestead
      (intended: ‘When I am grown up, I will build a big house. Then I will herd cows at home.’)

(29) Context: Talking about the speaker’s plans for tomorrow.
   a. kɪ-laabo 7-tomorrow FUT=1SG-PRS-play-FV AUG-3-ball
   b. # bo m-mal-ile pa-kʊ-kin-a n-aa-bʊʊk-a
      as 1SG-finish-PFV 16-15-play-FV 1SG-SUBSEC-go-FV
      kʊ-n-nuguna gw-angʊ kʊ-kʊ-ly-a nagwe
      17-1-younger_sibling_of_same_sex 1-POSS.1SG 17-15-eat-FV COM.1
      r-fi-ndʊ fy-a pa-muu-si
      AUG-8-food 8-ASSOC 17-3-daytime
      (intended: ‘Tomorrow I will play football. When I am done playing, I will go to my younger brother to have lunch with him.’)

(30) Context: Describing the process of preparing stiff porridge.
   a. bi-kʊ-kosy-a ʊ-m-ooto
      2-PRS-light-FV AUG-3-fire
   b. # b-aa-suk-a ɪ-fy-a kʊ-phem-il-a
      2-SUBSEC-wash-FV AUG-8-ASSOC 15-cook-APPL-FV
   c. # b-aa-bʊʊk-a a-m-ɪiṣi pa-m-ooto ...
      2-SUBSEC-put-FV AUG-6-water 16-3-fire
      (intended: ‘They light the fire. Then they wash the cooking utensils. Then they put the water on the fire ...’)

Like the narrative tense, the subsecutive is only attested in episodic sentences, that is reports of specific events or occasions; see §7.3.2 for discussion. Negative evidence from elicitation shows that even within the past it cannot continue habituals or generics:

(31) a. ijolo ba-a-mog-aga fiijo
      old_times 2-PST-dance-IPFV INTENS
   b. ba-a-fwal-aga kanunu fiijo
      2-PST-dress/wear-IPFV well INTENS
Concerning its aspectual semantics, the subsecutive, unlike the narrative tense, always has a perfective reading; see §6.5.3.2 for a discussion of perfectivity. What is more, the subsecutive explicitly marks a step forward in the text. In this it can be understood as a verbal variety of what Dooley & Levinsohn (2000) call a “developmental marker”, which “indicate[s] that the material so marked represents a new development in the story or argument, as far as the author’s purpose is concerned” (p. 48). This function will become clear when looking at its common uses in §7.4.4. In the majority of cases, the narrative development goes along with an advancement of narrative time. Thus, the subsecutive nearly exclusively occurs in narrative clauses, i.e. those clauses that stand in fixed sequence; see §1.4.4.2 for Labov & Waletzky’s (1967) classification of independent clauses within narratives. Unlike the narrative tense, the subsecutive is not attested in restricted clauses. A few cases of the subsecutive in co-ordinate clauses will be examined more closely in §7.4.5. Closely linked to this distribution, the only type of temporal adverbials the subsecutive is attested with is adverbials referring to a subsequent time span. (32b) illustrates the latter for a temporal clause, (32e) for the adverbial *kilaabo* ‘tomorrow, next day’.

(32) **Context:** A girl has eloped with a man. Her father has found out where they are.

a. *po piitaasi u-n-nyambala ju-la a-linku-j-a mu-ndu then later AUGH-1-man 1-DIST 1-NARR-be(come)-FV 1-person gw-a ku-fung-a n-safal j-aake j-aa 1-ASSOC 15-tie-FV AUGH-journey(9)(<SWA) 9-POSS.SG 9-ASSOC ko-book-a ko-no ba-li=ko ba-la, ko-ko-mel-a 1-fy-oma 15-go-FV 17-PROX 2-COP=17 2-DIST 17-15-claim-FV AUGH-8-rich ‘Then later that man started to set out for where they were, in order to claim the brideprice.’

b. *bo a-fik-ile ko-la b-a-mmw-ambirl-1-a kanunu as 1-arrive-PFV 17-DIST 2-SUBSEC-1-receive-FV well ‘When he arrived there, they received him well.’
7.4 Subsecutive

c. a-a-ly-a
1-SUBSEC-eat-FV
'He ate.'
d. a-a-gon-a
1-SUBSEC-rest-FV
'He slept.'
e. po kr-laabo a-mmw-eg-a u-n-kyameni
then 7-tomorrow 1-SUBSEC-1-take-FV AUG-1-chairman(<EN)
n=ʊ-kʊ-mbʊl-a ɪ-si  si-n-twele pa-la
COM=AUG-15-1-tell-FV AUG-PROX.10 10-1-carry.PFV 16-DIST
'The next day he contacted a chairman and told him what brought
him there.' [Man and his in-law]

Consecutive clauses featuring the subsecutive are generally understood as de-
picting an ordered sequence of completed eventualities building on each other,
as in (§32a–32e). A few exceptions, in which a sequence of clauses featuring the
subsecutive group together, will be examined in §7.4.5.

Note at this point that the opposition between the narrative tense and the sub-
secutive in the present-day language cannot be reduced merely to one of gram-
matical aspect. As discussed in §7.3.2, the narrative tense is best understood as
unspecified for aspect and allows for a perfective-like reading, too. Rather, these
two paradigms form an opposition between the default, all-purpose narrative
tense on the one hand and the subsecutive as the more restricted, specifically
perfective marker of a narrative development on the other.

7.4.4 Common occurrences

Many tokens of the subsecutive in the corpus are found in discernible, reoccur-
ring environments. To begin with, it is found in pairings with the narrative tense,
as in (33b, 33c) and (33e, 33f), in which a situation is depicted first in its inception
or preparation and then in its culmination.

(33) a. po ba-lnkw-and-a b-oope bo bʊ-k-iile n=ʊ-kʊ-bʊnjʊ
then 2-NARR-begin-FV 2-also as 14-dawn-PFV COM=AUG-11-morning
'Early in the morning they started.'
b. ba-lnku-j-a b-andọ ba-a k-oog-a b-ooga
2-NARR-be(come)-FV 2-person 2-ASSOC 15-bathe-FV 14-bath
'They began to bath.'
Interestingly, Fleischman (1990: ch. 6) notes a mostly parallel pattern in Old French epics, which consists of depicting certain eventualities through an alternation of a narrative present followed by the present anterior (*passé composé* in the francophone tradition). The latter in that early romance variety came close to a present perfective. She goes on to observe that

the first situation is presented in its inception [...] and the second as completed [...], it is as if the first precipitates the second to its conclusion, uniting the two into a global event [...] Tense switches of this type, which operate to split a macro-event into its constituent phases, are a common device for establishing cohesion. The distinct phases reported by verbs in individual clauses are bound together into complex predicates (Fleischman 1990: 196f)

Recall from §7.4.1 that there are a number of independent indications that the subsecutive constitutes a former present anterior or present perfective, while the source of the narrative tense is doubtless a former imperfective present (§6.7.1). Pairings such as (33b, 33c) and (33e, 33f) can thus be understood as another case in point and may well be the source of the present-day functions of the subsecutive.

In a fashion similar to the preceding example, the movement gram (*j*)a (§10.4.1) is commonly found in the subsecutive with *fika* ‘arrive’ as its complement and following iconic repetitions of *enda* ‘walk, travel’ in the narrative tense (34). This can be understood as closing the macro-event of motion on the one hand, while
on the other advancing the text by indicating the conclusion of a prolonged journey. Note also how temporal and spatial progression in this case go together in one complex predicate. A variation of this theme is found in (35), where the subsecutive follows *endelela* ‘continue (the journey)’.

(34) a. b-oosa ba-bhî ba-lnkû-j-a ba-ndû ba-a kû-bûuk-a
    2-all 2-two 2-NARR-be(come)-FV 2-person 2-ASSOC 15-go-FV
    m-bû-ganga
    18-1-doctor
    ‘The two of them set out to go to a healer.’

b. boo=bûno ~ bû-no ba-lnkw-end-a, REF.14=REDUPL~14-DEM 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV
   ba-lnkw-end-a, ba-lnkw-end-a, 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV
   ‘Thus they travelled, travelled, travelled and travelled.’

c. ba-a-j-a kô-fik-a n-kiisû kî-mo
   2-SUBSEC-go-FV 15-arrive-FV 18-7-land 7-one
   ‘Finally they arrived in some land.’ [Pregnant women]

(35) a. ba-lnkw-endelel-a n=û-safalt
    2-NARR-continue-FV COM=AUG-journey(9)(<SWA)
    ‘They continued their journey.’

b. po balmkw-endelel-a bûbûû~bû
   then 2-NARR-continue-FV REDUPL~PROX.14
   ‘Thus they continued.’

c. ba-a-j-a kô-fik-a n-ky-enî kangi
   2-SUBSEC-go-FV 15-arrive-FV 18-7-forehead again
   ‘They got further ahead.’ [Man and his in-law]

This use of the subsecutive to conclude a macro-event and at the same time advance the story is also found on a bigger scale. (36) is an abridged version of a narrative episode in which Tugutu, a type of bird, prepares a racetrack in order to outwit Hare. The subsecutive in (36f) concludes the preparation episode and leads over to the next episode, the race itself. See (24) on p. 230 for a comparable example of the subsecutive concluding an extensive macro-event.
(36) Context: Tugutu (a type of bird) has challenged Hare to a race. He has gathered five companions.

a. mwa=n-dugutu a-a-bʊʊk-ile
   matronym=9-type_of_bird 1-past-go-PFV
   ‘Mr. Tugutu went.’

b. a-a-ba-paal-ile a-ba-nine ba-haano ...
   1-PST-2-invite-PFV AUG-2-companion 2-five
   ‘He gathered five companions …’

c. bo ii-sikʊ ly-a ᦐी-laabo, bo li-fik-ile, mwa=n-dugutu
   as 5-day 5-ASSOC 7-tomorrow as 5-arrive-PFV matronym=9-t.o.bird
   a-ali-mɓnɪk-ile mwa=n-dugutu n-nine pa-bw-andɪlo
   1-PST-1-put-PFV matronym=9-t.o.bird 1-companion 16-14-start
   ‘When the next day arrived, Mr. Tugutu placed a fellow Mr. Tugutu at
   the start.’

d. kangɪ maelɪ jɪ-ngɪ jɪ-mo a-ali-mɓnɪk-ile
   again mile(9)(<EN) 9-other 9-one 1-PST-1-put-PFV
   mwa=n-dugutu n-nine ...
   matronym=9-t.o.bird 1-companion
   ‘Another mile, he placed a fellow Mr. Tugutu …’

e. na ᭔ʊ-lʊ-malɗɪkɪlo, ma-elɪ ga-a bʊ-haano mwa=n-dugutu
   COM 17-11-end 6-mile 6-ASSOC 5-five matronym=9-t.o.bird
   o-jʊ-ngɪ
   AUG-1-other
   ‘At the finish line, the fifth mile, another Mr. Tugutu.’

f. po mwa=n-dugutu o-jʊ-ngɪ, ju-la ba-a-job-aga na
   then matronym=9-t.o.bird AUG-1-other 1-DIST 2-PST-speak-IPFV COM
   kaloɓ a-a-j-a pa-bw-andɪlo pa-la
   hare(l) 1-SUBSEC-be(come)-FV 16-14-start 16-DIST
   ‘The other Mr. Tugutu, the one who had been talking with Hare, he
   then was at the start.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

Interestingly, Crane (2011: 143ff) observes that, in Totela K41, a hodiernal perfective – she speaks of a marker of “nuclear completion”; see §6.5.3.2 for discussion – is similarly employed at the boundary of scenes or episodes within narratives, where it marks the “completion of one set of activities and the commencement of another”. The situation in that particular language, however, dif-
fers from Nyakyusa in that the verbal paradigm in question is fully operative outside of narrative discourse.

Another recurring device in the narrative corpus consists of a past imperfective verb followed by one in the subsecutive. In these pairs, the imperfective depicts a setting, while the subsecutive verb constitutes a progression that evolves out of, and ruptures, the preceding situation. (37) gives the opening four sentences of a short narrative. (37a) constitutes the orientation section, while (37b) sets the stage for the upcoming event. Duck’s pecking for food is a continuous activity and accordingly it is depicted in the past imperfective. With (37c), the complicating action of the narrative begins. Duck’s search ends with the sight of Pig’s food, which is marked by use of the subsecutive plus enda ‘walk/travel’ as an ingressive auxiliary. This sets the ball rolling and leads to the ultimately fatal act described in (37d).

(37)  

(a) ɪ-li-sikʊ lɪ-mo, ɪ-n-gʊlʊbe j-aa-bɪɪk-il-iigwe  r-fi-ndʊ  
AUG-5-day 5-one AUG-9-pig 9-PST-put-APPL-PASS.PFV AUG-8-food  
fy-ake  
8-POSS.SG  
‘One day, Pig was given its food.’

(b) po leelo ɪ-li-seekwa ly-a-salaga~sal-aga  
then now/but AUG-5-pig 5-PST-REDUPL~choose-IPFV  
ʊ-kʊ-lond-a r-fi-ndʊ fy-a kw-i-swɪl-a ly-ope  
AUG-15-search-FV AUG-8-food 8-ASSOC 15-REFL-feed-FV 5-also  
‘Duck was pecking for food to feed itself.’

(c) po ɪ-ly-ene ly-end-a n=ʊ-kʊ-fi-bon-a  
then AUG-5-self 5-SUBSEC.walk/travel-FV COM=AUG-8-see-FV  
r-fi-ndʊ fy-a n-gʊlʊbe  
AUG-8-food 8-ASSOC 9-pig  
‘Then it saw Pig’s food.’

(d) lɪ-lɪnkw-ingɪl-a mw-i-tembe ly-a n-gʊlʊbe  
5-NARR-enter-FV 18-5-stable 5-ASSOC 9-pig  
n=ʊ-kw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-ly-a r-fi-ndʊ fi-la  
COM=AUG-15-begin-FV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-8-food 8-DIST  
‘It entered the pigshed and started to eat that food.’ [The one who eats others’ food]

While the preceding example constitutes the opening of a short narrative, (38) is an excerpt close to the end of a longer text. (38a) depicts a crucial moment in
7 Tense and aspect constructions 2: narrative markers

the development of the plot. With tension at the maximum, the past imperfective verb in (38b) demarcates and sets the stage for the peak episode, while at the same time depicting the husband’s attempt at flight, which is impeded immediately (38c). All four following narrative clauses, the first of which is given in (38d), likewise feature the subsecutive, and, in clearly delimited steps that built on each other, they advance the story towards resolution.

(38) Context: The protagonist’s husband has killed his father-in-law, whose chopped-off head is hidden in a sack of flour. People have become suspicious.

a. ba-lnkw-abʊl-a, ba-lnku-gw-ag-a u-n-tu gw-a gwise 2-NARR-open-FV 2-NARR-3-find-FV AUG-3-head 1-ASSOC his_father(1) gw-a n̩goosi gu-li=ko ku-bu-fu bu-la 1-ASSOC N. 3-COP=17 17-14-flour 14-DIST
‘They opened it [sack], they found that Ngoosi’s father’s head was in that flour.’

b. u-n-nyambala jʊ-la a-a-lond-aga u-kʊ-bop-a, u-n-du̱me AUG-1-man 1-DIST 1-PST-try-IPFV AUG-15-run-FV AUG-1-husband gw-a n̩goosi 1-ASSOC N.
‘That man, Ngoosi’s husband, was trying to run away.’

c. b-a-n-kol-a pala~pa-la 2-SUBSEC-1-grasp-FV REDUPL~16-DIST
‘They caught him right there.’

d. b-a-n-gog-a 2-SUBSEC-1-kill-FV
‘They killed him.’ [Man and his in-law]

A similar case of advancement towards the resolution is found in (39), which is taken from a second version of the fable of Pig and Duck, whose commencement was discussed in (37) above. Note how the storyteller creates a crescendo in that he first depicts, in the narrative tense, two eventualities that are ongoing and simultaneous with what follows (39c, 39d), and thereafter employs the subsecutive to lead the story to its dramatic end in two concise steps (39e, 39f).
7.4 Subsecutive

(39) Context: Pig sees Duck feeding on his food.
   a. j-aa-bop-ile
      9-PST-run-PFV
      'He [Pig] ran.'
   b. j-aa-kat-ile u-n-tu gw-a ii-seekwa
      9-PST-break(<SWA)-PFV AUG-3-head 3-ASSOC 5-duck
      'He broke Duck’s head.'
   c. po ii-seekwa lr-linkw-i-pʊʊl-a “po po po po po”
      then 5-duck 5-NARR-REFL-thresh-FV of_cackling
      'Duck fluttered around “po po po po po”.
   d.ʊ-mw-ene fi-tiimigwa a-linkʊ-bop-a
      AUG-1-owner 8-livestock 1-NARR-run-FV
      'The livestock owner ran.'
   e. eeg-a ʊ-m-mage
      1.SUBSEC.take-FV AUG-3-knife
      'He took a knife.'
   f. a-a-lɪ-buut-a ii-seekwa
      1-SUBSEC-5-slaughter-FV 5-duck
      'He slaughtered Duck.' [Pig and Duck]

7.4.5 Tokens without strict temporal progression

In §7.4.3 it has been observed that the subsecutive is attested mainly in narrative clauses, that is those clauses that cannot be displaced without changing the inferred sequence of eventualities (see §1.4.4.2). In a few tokens, however, the subsecutive is attested in co-ordinate clauses, i.e. clauses that can be freely swapped with each other. These belong to two types: first, the copula ja in the subsecutive preceded by a past imperfective (see §10.2.1 on Nyakyusa’s two copulae) and second, a series of subsecutives depicting various components of one and the same eventuality.

Concerning the first, the stative description provided by a copula seems to be essentially incompatible with the notion of narrative development. Three tokens of the copula ja in the subsecutive preceded by a past imperfective are attested in the corpus. Two of these pairs are given in (40a, 40b) and (40c, 40d) respectively. These four clauses stand at the beginning of a crucial episode within this story, in which a man clandestinely kills his father-in-law at night, chops off his head and hides it in a sack of flour.
Recall from the discussion of (37, 38) in §7.4.4 that the same pattern of a past imperfective followed by the subsecutive is employed with verbs other than the copula to relate the setting of an episode within a narrative, plus an ensuing disruptive development. One may assume that the narrator is resorting to this convention in order to promote the states of the father-in-law’s aloneness and the presence of the table with the sack of flour to an event-like status (see Longacre 1996: 25). Such an interpretation matches with the dramatic effect that is created in both (40a, 40b) and (40c, 40d), in that the scene of the upcoming killing is first depicted broadly, to then ‘aim the camera’ first at the victim and then at the essential prop. All other tokens of the copula in the subsecutive contain locative predicates, giving a change-of-location reading as in (36f) above.

Concerning the subsecutive in co-ordinate clauses, a first example is given in (41). Note that what is depicted in (41b, 41c) does not constitute two separate subsequent eventualities, but provides different components, namely manner and
goal, of one and the same motion eventuality; see Talmy (1985) on the semantics of motion. In Nyakyusa, the different components of motion are mostly encoded in separate lexical verbs. In narrating a motion event, the speaker thus has to resort either to infinitives (§11.4.2) or, as in this case, to separate independent clauses. The hearer unequivocally understands these two clauses as one single event subsequent to the one depicted in (41a).

(41) a. a-a-nyak-ile ʊ-lw-ala
   1-PST-snatch-PFV AUG-11-grindstone
   ‘He [Monkey] snatched the grindstone.’
b. a-a-bop-a na lw-ala ku-la
   1-SUBSEC-run-FV COM 11-grindstone 11-DIST
   ‘He ran with that grindstone.’
c. a-a-book-a m-mi-syanjʊ
   1-SUBSEC-go-FV 18-6-bush
   ‘He went [=ran] into the bush.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

(42) is another representative example of the subsecutive in co-ordinate clauses. Clauses (42c, 42d) again describe different components of one and the same eventuality of taking food, which is then summarized in (42e). Note that the acts depicted in these clauses close off a longer chain of eventualities about Tortoise sending his son to Monkey to get food, similar to the cases discussed in §7.4.4 above.

(42) Context: Tortoise has sent his son to buy food from Monkey on credit. Monkey has agreed.

a. po kajamba u-n-nine a-lnku-ti “ndaga”
then tortoise(1) AUG-1-companion 1-NARR-say thanks
   ‘Tortoise’s child said “Thanks.”’
b. po b-ingil-a mu-ŋ-gonda
   then 2-SUBSEC.enter-fv 18-3-field
   ‘They entered the farm.’
c. b-eeg-a a-ma-simbì
   2-SUBSEC.take-fv AUG-6-cocoyam
   ‘They took cocoyam.’
d. b-eeg-a ii-seeke
   2-SUBSEC.take-fv 5-sidedish
   ‘They took a side dish.’
7 Tense and aspect constructions 2: narrative markers

e. b-eeg-a  fy-osa
   2-SUBSEC.take-FV 8-all
   ‘They took all sorts of food.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

Unlike the narrative tense, the subsecutive does not figure in iconic repetitions. The only apparent case is given in (43). Discussion of this example in elicitation, however, shows that (43b–43d) can only be understood as a sequence of eventualities performed by different subsets of the subject abanyambala ‘(the) men’. Thus, examples (41–43) share a common denominator in that a single eventuality is broken down into its constituent components and that these are clearly identifiable as such, either through the convention of how motion eventualities are depicted (41), or by featuring identical verbs (42, 43).

(43) Context: Python has devoured a woman’s children.
   a. a-lɪnkʊ-koolel-a a-ba-nyambala “a-mi-lie a-ba-ana!”
      1-NAR-call-FV AUG-2-man 1-devour-PFV AUG-2-child
      ‘She called to the men, “She’s devoured the children!”’
   b. po a-ba-nyambala b-and-a Ṽ-kʊ-bop-a
      then AUG-2-man 2-SUBSEC.begin-FV AUG-15-run-FV
      ‘[Some of the] men began to run.’
   c. b-and-a Ṽ-kʊ-bop-a
      2-SUBSEC.begin-FV AUG-15-run-FV
      ‘They [some other men] began to run.’
   d. b-and-a Ṽ-kʊ-bop-a
      2-SUBSEC.begin-FV AUG-15-run-FV
      ‘They [some other men] began to run.’ [Python and woman]

7.4.6 Summary

To summarize, the subsecutive most likely goes back to a former present perfective or anterior. In the present-day language, it is the less frequent and more specific of Nyakyusa’s two narrative markers. Its semantics include reference to the past time and, unlike the narrative tense, it is specified for perfective aspect and marks an advancement in the story. This usually, but not always, goes along with an advancement of narrative time. The use of the subsecutive often serves a textual function of creating cohesion, in that it closes off one set of eventualities while advancing the text towards the next one. Just like the narrative tense, the subsecutive is pragmatically dependent on an otherwise established context and
its employment forms part of the same larger discourse convention, according to which narratives are built around the notion of thematic continuity and discontinuity (see §7.2.3). Being a dedicated narrative marker, the subsecutive can be understood to also work on the metalinguistic component by signalling this specific type of discourse. Lastly, it is the subject of normative considerations and a marker of an informal, oral style.
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

8.1 Introduction

It is a common feature of languages to have several constructions with future time orientation. This synchronic multiplicity of forms arises through historical layering of grammaticalization processes from different sources as well as from similar sources at different periods (Bybee et al. 1991; Bybee et al. 1994). Not all of these constructions can be considered to encode future tense in the sense of §1.4.2. Therefore futurate will be used as an umbrella term, following Binnick (1991).

From a wider Bantu perspective, Nyakyusa is unusual in having more constructions for future states-of-affairs than for the past (cf. Nurse 2008: 89). All of these are grammaticalized from two sources. On the one hand, there are paradigms featuring reflexes of Proto-Bantu ‘*gi’ go’, which is found in the present day language as a movement gram (§10.4.1) as well as a copula ‘be(come)’ (see §10.2.1). On the other hand, there are constructions featuring isa ‘come’ (§10.4.2). Leaving aside the copula, one finds a parallel distribution of the two movement verbs: both are found with their bare stems as proclitics to the inflected verb (§8.2, 8.3) and both are found in constructions that originate in their use as auxiliaries in the simple present (§8.5, 8.6).

An intriguing feature of futurates in Nyakyusa is the possibility of combining them into a single complex predicate. The following examples illustrate these possibilities:

(1) a. tʊː-kw-a kʊ-kin-a
   1PL-PRS-go.FV 15-play-FV
   'We will go and play.'

b. aa=tʊː-kw-a kʊ-kin-a
   FUT=1PL-PRS-go.FV 15-play-FV
   'We will go and play (at some distant time).'
As can be seen in (1), the meaning of these complex futurates arises through the composition of its constituent parts. In the following discussion, each futurate construction will thus be dealt with separately.

Lastly, it has often been noted (Dahl 1985: 103 among others) that there is a close conceptual tie between future orientation and modality. In the case of Nyakyusa, this becomes clearest in the cases of constructions that are on the threshold between futurate and modality (§8.6, 9.4, 9.5). These have been classified as either futurates or modals according to which meaning component prevails in the present-day language.

8.2 Proclitic aa=

A clitic aa= can be added to all constructions that have future, namely the simple present (§6.5.1), the other futurates-isfuturate (§8.5–8.7), the subjunctive (§9.3), the desiderative (§9.4) and the modal future construction (§9.5). It can also attach to conditional ngalı (§9.6). Concerning the pre-initial position in Bantu, Güldemann observes:

For pre-initial forms one can say that they are most likely the result of concatenation and truncation of a binary predicate structure. The first part is a finite auxiliary or non-finite predicator while the second part is a dependent finite form comprising the content verb. In the first case, the auxiliary is subject to phonetic truncation and the initial of the content verb continues to encode the subject. (Güldemann 2003: 186)

The clitic’s shape, its future semantics and its opposition to a proclitic form of isa ‘come’ in some varieties of Nyakyusa (§8.3) all give evidence that the first part of this former binary structure included the auxiliary (j)a ‘go’.

As for its semantics, aa= localizes the eventuality described in its host verb to a future reference frame – or temporal domain, in Botne & Kershner’s (2008) terminology. Nurse (2008: 316) calls this kind of marker a “shifter”, which is defined as “a clitic, which, added to an existing tensed form, shifts its reference
further away from the reference point”. This notion of shifting will become more tangible when looking at some uses of *aa*..

A very common collocation consists of *aa* and the simple present. This collocation covers many of the prototypical uses ascribed to a future tense (Dahl 1985; 2000b). It is the default form for pure predictions about the future (2, 3) and can also be used when intention is involved (4, 5).

(2) **Context: What will happen if I eat this mushroom?**

   `lɪnga ʊ-l-iile,  
   if/when 2SG-eat-PFV FUT=2SG.PRS-die-FV  
   ‘If you eat it, you will die.’ [ET]

(3) **Context: It’s no use trying to swim in the lake tomorrow.**

   `komma ʊ-ko-būk-a, a-15-m-ɪɪsi  
   ma-talalifu PROH AUG-15-go-FV AUG-6-water FUT=6-PRS-be(come)-FV 6-cold  
   ‘Don’t go, the water will be cold.’ [ET]

(4) **Context: A young man is speaking about his plans for the future.**

   `lɪnga n-gʊl-ile  
   if/when 1SG-grow-PFV FUT=1SG-PRS-build-FV AUG-house(9) AUG-big(9)  
   ‘When I am grown up, I will build a big house.’ [ET]

(5) **Context: Talking about the speaker’s plans for the evening.**

   `na=a-ma-jolo  
   com=AUG-6-evening com=1SG-PRS-be(come)-FV=16 16-12-homestead  
   ‘In the evening I will be at home.’ [ET]

Interestingly, Lusekelo (2007; 2013) lists *aa* plus simple present under “future tense” and states that “there is only one future tense in Kinyakyusa” (Lusekelo 2013: 109), while a century earlier Schumann (1899: 32) listed it under “rarely used constructions” (Translated from the original German, BP.) and Endemann (1914) did not discuss it at all. This coincides with the chronolect (and topolect) described by the latter authors having the de-ventive indefinite future (§8.6) as the primary construction for predictions. For a short discussion of the diachronic scenario see §8.6.3. Also note that unlike the indefinite future, the collocation of *aa* plus the simple present does not allow for a purely epistemic reading without future time reference:
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

(6) Context: You are asked where your brother is.
#aa=i-kʊ-kin-a ʊ-m-pɪla
FUT=1-PRS-play-FV AUG-3-ball
(intended: ‘He will be [=presumably he is] playing football.’)

(7) Context: The cows are mooing. You are asked why they are making so much noise.
#aa=si-kʊ-j-a n=ɪ-n-jala
FUT=10-PRS-be(come)-FV COM=9-hunger
(intended: ‘They will be [=presumably they are] hungry.’)

Some further examples from discourse will illustrate the shifting function of \(aa=\). In (8) Tortoise answers Monkeys’s demand for payment by making an excuse and promising to pay at another time. Monkey in turn accepts and announces that he will come again. Both Tortoise’s promise in (8a) and Monkey’s announcement in (8c) feature the future proclitic, with the modal future construction and the simple present as the respective hosts. Omission of \(aa=\) was judged inadequate in discussion of these examples. Note also how this contrasts with the use of the simple present in (40) on p. 154, which is taken from an earlier episode of the same narrative and describes Monkey’s demand to be paid on that very day.

(8) Context: Monkey has come to Tortoise’s in order to collect debts.

a. po kajamba a-a-tì “hee.
then tortoise(1) 1-SUBSEC-say INTERJ
gʊʊ-hobok-el-ege. ɪlìmo n-di
2SG.1SG-be(come)_happy-APPL-IPFV.SUBJ now/today 1SG-COP
n=ɪ-n-jila. n-sumwike kw-a daadā gw-angu. a-łì
COM=9-path 1SG-depart.PFV 17-ASSOC sister(1)(SWA) 1-POS.1SG 1-COP
n=ɪ-fy-mja mia mooja. po a-bìk-ile
COM=AUG-8-year one(SWA) hundred(SWA). then 1-put-PFV
ʊ-bʊ-fumbwe AUG-14-concern
‘Tortoise said “Hee. Forgive me. Now I am travelling. I’m heading to my sister’s. She is a hundred years old. She has made an invitation.’

b. po lee koo=kʊ-no n-gʊ-bʊ̤k-a. po leelo
then now/but REF.17=17-PROX 1SG-PRS-go-FV then now/but
ɪ=heela j-aako aa=kw-eg-agà kangî bo
AUG-money(9) 9-POS.2SG FUT=2SG.MOD.FUT-take-MOD.FUT again as
8.2 Proclitic aa=

n-iis-ile"
1SG-come-PFV

“There I’m going. Your money you shall take when I’ve come back.”

(9) ee, a-lɪ na=go lwele kʊkʊtɪ kr-lʊndɪ ki-kʊog-a ɪ-n-dobo
yes, 1-COP COM=REF.6 eight every 7-leg 7-PRS-bathe-FV AUG-9-bucket
jɪ-mo. u-gwe kʊ-lʊnd-a u-neg-ege
9-one AUG-2SG 2SG.PRS-want-FV 2SG-draw_liquid-IPFV.SUBL
r-n-dobo lwele, bole aa=kʊ-bwesy-a?
AUG-10-bucket eight Q FUT=2SG.PRS-overcome-FV

‘Yes, it [Spider] has eight legs, every leg bathes in one bucket. You, do you
want to draw eight buckets full, will you bear that?’ [Hare and Spider]

Similarly, in (10) the speaker, an anthropomorphized python, first employs
the simple present as a generic futurate. In the following sentence, aa= serves to shift
to a specific reference frame which is characterized by a change in conditions,
namely that the children are locked in.

(10) Context: A python wants to devour a woman’s children. She has
announced that she will lock them in. Python answers.
mma, n-gʊ-ba-ag-a. p-oope a=n-gʊ-ba-ag-a
no 1SG-PRS-2-find-FV. 16-also FUT=1SG-PRS-2-find-FV

‘No, I’m finding them (sic!). Even then I’ll find them.’ [Python and woman]

The first sentence of (10) illustrates another important fact about the organi-
zation of the future in Nyakyusa. While the collocation of aa= with the simple
present is the common form for making predictions, the bare simple present may
be employed to convey a high degree of certainty. Thus (11) contrasts with (2) above in its epistemicmodality value. See also (44) on p. 155.

(11) Context: What will happen if I eat this mushroom?

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{if/when} & \quad \text{if-when} \\
\text{2sg-eat-PFV} & \quad \text{2sgPRS-die-FV} \\
\text{If you eat it, you die (i.e. this is a known fact). } & \text{[ET]}
\end{align*}
\]

The employment of \textit{aa=} with a number of other future-orientated paradigms is illustrated in the following examples. In (12), the subjunctive verb carries \textit{aa=} because the reference frame is shifted to the time after the chief’s death. (13–15) illustrate the use of \textit{aa=} with the periphrastic progressive,\(^1\) the de-itive prospective/movement construction and the indefinite future respectively. For an example featuring the desiderative, see (89) on p. 290.

(12) Context: A moribund chief gives his sons instructions for the time after his death.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{but} & \quad \text{but} \\
\text{AUG-PROX.10} & \quad \text{AUGPROX.10} \\
\text{1SG-PRS-2PL-tell-FV} & \quad \text{1SGPRS2PLtellFV} \\
\text{FUT=2PL-10-grasp-IPFV.SUBJ INTENS} & \quad \text{FUT=2PL10graspIPFVsubjINTENS} \\
\text{If/when} & \quad \text{if/when} \\
\text{1SG-die-PFV} & \quad \text{1SGdiePFV} \\
\text{‘The things I tell you, you must stick to when I’m dead.’ } & \text{[Chief Kapyungu]}
\end{align*}
\]

(13) \textit{aa=} \textit{i-ku-j-a} \textit{pa-kʊ-jeng-a} \\
\text{FUT=1-PRS-be(come)-FV} \text{16-15-build-FV} \\
‘He will be building.’ \text{[ET]}

(14) \textit{aa=} \textit{tu-kw-a} \textit{kʊ-kin-a} \textit{ʊ-m-pɪla} \\
\text{FUT=1PL-PRS-go,FV} \text{15-play-FV} \text{AUG-3-ball} \\
‘We will go and play football (at some distant time).’ \text{[ET]}

(15) \textit{pa-lʊ-bʊnjʊ} \textit{aa=} \textit{tw-ɪsaku-kin-a} \textit{ʊ-m-pɪla} \\
\text{16-11-morning} \text{FUT=1PL-INDEF.FUT-play-FV} \text{AUG-3-ball} \\
‘The day after tomorrow we might play football.’ \text{[ET]}

The future proclitic can also attach to a simple present that stands as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (§6.6.2). This is illustrated in (16). Lastly, for a discussion of \textit{aa=} together with the conditional marker \textit{ngalɪ}, see §9.6.

\(^1\)While the present and past progressives feature the copula \textit{lɪ}, for future reference \textit{ja} ‘be(come)’ has to be used. See §10.2.1 on the two copulae.
8.3 Proclitic (i)sa=

Parallel to the de-itive future proclitic aa= (§8.2), some varieties of Nyakyusa feature a de-ventive clitic (i)sa=. Though this form is not found in the varieties on which this description is based, it merits a short discussion for the sake of completeness.

Schumann (1899: 31) and Endemann (1914: 54) both list the combination of a proclitic isa= and the simple present without further discussions of meaning and use. Two tokens of this construction are found in the text collection by Berger (1933), one of which is given in (17). All three sources are based on the topolect (and respective chronolect) of the lake-shore plains.

(17) Context: a discussion of how a group of people may cross a river.
leelo ʊ-ne ni-kʊ-laalʊʊsy-a ni-kʊ-ti: kālɪ now/but AUG-1SG 1SG-PRS-ask-FV 1SG-PRS-say Q b-isakʊ-lobok-a bule~bule pa-lw-isi? namanga 2-INDEF.FUT-cross_over_water-FV REDUPL~how 16-11-river because ʊ-lw-isi lʊlʊʊ~lʊ ki-siba, kangi i-n-gwina ny-ingi AUG-11-river REDUPL~PROX.11 7-pond again AUG-10-crocodile 10-many fiijo; mw-ene mu-m̩-bwato mo bi-kʊ-sʊʊbɪl-a INTENS 18-only 18-18-boat(1)(<EN) REF.18 2-PRS-hope-FV ʊ-kw-end-a AUG-15-walk/travel-FV ‘Now I ask and say: How will they cross the river? Because this river is very deep and the crocodiles are many. Only in a boat they can travel.’
bulə gwe mw-inangʊ, gwe kʊ-bal-a ni-nongwa Q 2SG 1-my_companion 2SG 15-read-FV AUG-issue(10) sisii~si, kʊ-ti fi-ki, kw-inogon-a REDUPL~PROX.10 2SG-PRS-say 8-what 2SG-PRS-think-FV sa=bi-kʊ-lobok-a bule~bule? come=2-PRS-cross_over_water-FV REDUPL~how ‘You, my friend, who you are reading these words, how do you think that they will cross over?’ (Berger 1933: 150; orthography adapted)
In a current draft of a Bible translation by SIL International, which is also based on the lake-shore-plains variety, the proclitic is found with host verbs inflected for the simple present, simple present the modal future construction (§9.5) and the subjunctive (§9.3). Example (18) again features a host verb inflected for the simple present. Note that, unlike what these examples may suggest, the proclitic is found in both questions and declarative sentences.

(18) Context: Jesus speaks about the Kingdom of Heaven.

‘And the Lord said, Hear what the unjust judge saith. And shall no God avenge his own elect, which cry day and night unto him, though he bear long with them?’ (Luke 18: 6–8)

In elicitation, all speakers consulted for the present study rejected this kind of construction. When presented with examples from Berger (1933) and the translation of the Bible, they similarly considered these to be erroneous. Some would “correct” them to feature the indefinite future (§8.6).

Given that the de-ventive proclitic does not occur in the varieties in focus here, a functional characterization clearly lies outside the scope of the present study. In
8.4 Proclitic naa=

In the southern topolects of Nyakyusa, a further proclitic naa= with a future or futurate meaning is found. Its shape indicates that this proclitic might be a portmanteau of comitative na and the future proclitic aa= (§8.2). See p. 272 in §9.3.1.1 for na together with the subjunctive mood. The only token in the text corpus is (19), which is taken from a narrative told by a speaker of the lake-shore-plains varieties. See also (20), which is based on the same variety.

In elicitation, speakers of the Selya variety knew this construction, although the difference between this and proclitic aa= remains unclear. Speakers from the village of Lwangwa – at the transition between Selya to the south and Mwamba (Lugulu) to the north (§1.2.5) – and speakers of the Mwamba/Lugulu variety either rejected it or considered it a feature of more southern varieties.

(19) po p-ii-balasi j-aa-j-a=po ni-meesa
then 16-5-veranda(<SWA) 9-subsec-be(come)-fv=16 AUG-table(9)(<SWA)
a-pa paa~pa Ngoosi a-a-tʊʊl-ile
AUG-PROX.16 REDUPL~PROX.16 N. 1-PST-take_from_head-pfv
ʊ-bo-fu bw-ake, ʊ-la ba-j-ile kʊ-sy-a, ʊ-bʊ
AUG-14-flour 14-poss.sg 16-dist 2-go-pfv 15-grind-fv AUG-PROX.4
naa=i-kʊ-book-a na=bo ʊ-gwise
FUT=1-PRS-go-fv COM=REF.14 AUG-his_father(1)
‘On the veranda there was a table where Ngoosi had put the flour that they had gone to grind, the one that her father would go with.’ [Man and his in-law]

(20) po ʊ-mu-ndʊ jʊ-la ʊ-gw-a ʊ-gw-a ʊ-gw ʊ-gw ʊ-ag la ʊ-gw-a
then AUG-1-person 1-dist AUG-1-ASSOC 7-inheritance 1-NARR-answer-fv
a-lnku-ti “a-pa bo si-li bʊno~bʊ-no, ʊ-ne n-dek-ile,
1-NARR-say AUG-PROX.16 as 10-cop redupl~14-dem AUG-1sg 1sg-let-pfv
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

n-ga-bagɪl-a ŋ-kw-ʊl-a paapo na=n-gw-is-a
1sg-NEG-be_able-fv aug-15-buy-fv because fut=1sg-prs-come-fv
k-oonang-a r-kr-inggʊ ky-a ba-anangʊ a-ba-a
15-destroy-fv aug-7-inheritance 7-assoc 2-my_child aug-2-assoc
kw-is-a kw-ingɪl-a=po pa-my-ango”
15-come-fv 15-enter-fv=16 16-4-poss.1sg

‘And the kinsman said “I cannot redeem it for myself, lest I mar mine
own inheritance [lit. ...I cannot buy it because I will come to destroy the
inheritance of my children who will come to succeed me]” (Ruth 4:6)

8.5 Prospective/movement kwa INF

The simple present form of the movement gram (j)a (§10.4.1), together with an
augmentless infinitive, serves as a marker of prospective aspect.

(21) tokwa kujoba ‘we are going to (go and) speak’

As Comrie (1976: 76) defines it, prospective aspect expresses that “a state is
related to some subsequent action, for instance when someone is in a state of
being about to do something”. This is further refined by Fleischman (1982: 18f),
who characterizes ‘go-futures’ as having a set of closely related and partly over-
lapping uses, denoting present relevance, imminence, intentionality, inception
or assumed eventualities. In Nyakyusa, there are two constructions that each
cover some of these uses: the de-itive construction discussed in this section and
the prospective/inceptive construction discussed in §8.7.

The following examples will illustrate the use of prospective/movement kwa.
In (22), the first occurrence of the construction denotes the speaker’s intention to
throw pepper at the theiving monkeys. Apart from intentionality, the notion of
movement remains intact. The second occurrence presents the assumed reaction
of those monkeys, which is also situated away from the speaker’s current loca-
tion. Similarly, in (23) Hare begs local people to help him descend from a tree
where he is trapped, thus present relevance, and presents his intended action.
Again, the original sense of the movement gram remains intact, as Hare’s action
is situated away from his initial location. Lastly, in (24) Hare declares his com-
ning back to a group of girls who have just rebuffed him, thus there is an overlap
between intentionality and present relevance.
8.5 Prospective/movement kwa INF

(22) *tʊ-tɪk-e* ɪ-m-bilipili *tʊ-bruk-e* n-tʊ-supa.  *tʊ-kw-a*
1PL-pound-SUBJ AUG-9-pepper 1PL-put-SUBJ 18-13-bottle 1PL-PRS-go.FV
kʊ-si-sop-el-a paapo ɪ-sy-ene *si-kw-a* kʊ-t-ɪɡɪ
15-10-throw-APPL-FV because AUG-10-self 10-PRS-go.FV 15-say-1PFV
“bi-kʊ-tʊ-p-a ɪ-fi-mdʊ”
2-PRS-1PL-give-FV AUG-8-food

'We should pound pepper and put it in little bottles. Then we will go
throw them at them [monkeys], for they’ll think “they’re throwing food.”'
(Thieving Monkeys)

(23) *n-gʊ-sʊʊm-a* mw-eg-e ʊ-lʊ-goje, mu-m-biny-e
1SG-beg-FV 2PL-take-SUBJ AUG-11-rope 2PL-1SG-bind-SUBJ
1-m-bolokotʊ. mu-kol-e fiijo, mu-sulusy-ege
AUG-10-ear 1PL-grasp-SUBJ INTENS 2PL-lower-IPFV.SUBJ
panandɪ~panandi. lɪŋa m-fɪk-ɪle *n-gw-a* kʊ-jɪɡɪsy-a
REDUPL~a little if/when 1SG-arrive-PFV 1SG-PRS-go.FV 15-shake-FV
ʊ-lʊ-goj-e, ʊ-mwe mu-kʊ-lek-esy-aga
AUG-11-rope AUG-2PL 2PL-MOD.FUT-let-CAUS-MOD.FUT

'I beg you (pl.) to take a rope and tie it to my ears. Hold it tight, lower it
step by step. When I arrive [at the ground] I will shake the rope and you
shall let go of it.' [Hare and Spider]

(24) *n-gw-a* kw-is-a *n=ʊ-n-kamu* gw-angʊ ʊ-n-nywamu
1SG-PRS-go.FV 15-come-FV COM=AUG-1-relative 1-POS.1SG AUG-1-big
fiijo
INTENS

‘I will come with my very big relative.’ [Hare and Hippo]

Note that the simple present form of *(j)a* only serves this function as a prospec-
tive/movement futurate. It does not have a habitual/generic reading (see §10.4.1),
nor does it have a progressive one and nor does it denote motion with purpose:

(25) *n-gw-a* kʊ-kiŋ-a ʊ-m-pɪla
1SG-PRS-go.FV 15-play-FV AUG-3-ball

‘I will (go and) play football.’
not: ‘I am going (in order) to play football.’
not: ‘I am going to (the place that we) play football.’

In its use as a futurate, the complement of *(j)a* can take the imperfective final
suffix *-aga*. To begin with, this gives a continuous/progressive reading, which
can shade into an emphatic one (26). The imperfective can also add the epistemic flavour of an assumed eventuality, as in (27) and in the second token in (22) above. Lastly, -aga can also give a habitual/generic reading (28).

(26)  lɪlɪno tu-kw-a kʊ-kin-agaʊ-m-pɪla
now/today 1PL-PRS-go.FV 15-play-IPFV AUG-3-ball
1. ‘Today we will (go and) be playing football (i.e. not stop).’
2. ‘Today we will (go and) be playing (no matter what).’ [ET]

(27)  i-kw-a kʊ-jeng-aga kʊ-Tʊkʊjʊ
1-PRS-go.FV 15-build-IPFV 17-T.
1. ‘He will (go and) be building in Tukuyu (continuously).’
2. ‘He will (go and) build in Tukuyu (assumedly).’ [ET]

(28)  kʊkʊtɪ ky-ɪnja bi-kw-a kʊ-mog-aga ii-ng’oma
every 7-year 2-PRS-go.FV 15-dance-IPFV 5-type_of_dance
‘Every year they will go and dance the ng’oma dance.’ [ET]

8.6 Indefinite future

8.6.1 Formal makeup

The indefinite future consists of a pre-initial prefix isakʊ and the final vowel -a or imperfective -aga.

(29)  twisakʊjoba ‘we will possibly speak’

The indefinite future constitutes an advanced stage of grammaticalization of isa ‘come’ as an auxiliary in the simple present (§10.4.2). While its source construction is still mostly transparent, no material can intervene between what corresponds to the original auxiliary and its infinitive complement.

(30)  a.  tw-isakʊ-kin-aʊ-m-pɪla m̩-bʊ-siκʊ bʊla~bʊ-la
1PL-INDEF.FUT-play-FV AUG-3-ball 18-14-time REDUPL~14-DIST
‘We might play football some day.’ [ET]

b.  *twisa m̩bʊsikʊ bolabolakʊkɪnampɪla

Furthermore, juxtaposition with the subject prefix yields the expected output concerning glide formation and vowel quality (§2.2.1.4), but does not result in a long vowel (31). This also holds for the prefix of the first person singular (32).
8.6 Indefinite future

(31) *isakụjoba* ('a-isakụ-job-a) ‘he will possibly speak’
  *bisakụjoba* ('ba-isakụ-job-a) ‘they will possibly speak’
  *jisakụjoba* ('jɪ-isakụ-ly-a) ‘it (9) will possibly eat’
  *sisakụjoba* ('si-isakụ-ly-a) ‘they (10) will possibly eat’

(32) *nisakụjoba* ('n-isakụ-job-a) ‘I will possibly speak’

The indefinite future is negated with the negative prefix *t(i)* following the subject marker. As the indefinite future is derived from the simple present of auxiliary *isa*, it is assumed that the underlying negation is *ti* (§6.5.2). Again, the vowel remains short (33):

(33) *tötisakụjoba* ‘we will not possibly speak’

In the following discussion, the meaning and uses of the indefinite future will be described as they are found synchronically in the varieties that are in the focus of this study. After that, a diachronic perspective will be applied, which will help us to understand the position of the construction in question in the present-day Nyakyusa TMA system.

8.6.2 Meaning and use

While older grammatical sketches consider the construction in question Nyakyusa’s main future tense, it was hardly ever spontaneously offered by speakers in this study. In elicitation, language assistants unanimously rejected the use of this construction for prototypical predictions (34, 35) or intention-based future eventualities (36, 37). In these typical future tense contexts, the collocation of *aa=* and the simple present would be used; see (2–5) on p. 251. The examples are based on Dahl’s (1985; 2000b) questionnaires.

(34) Context: What will happen if I eat this mushroom? – You will die.
   #linga ʊ-l-iile gw-isakụ-fw-a
   if/when 2sg-eat-PFV 2SG-INDEF.FUT-die-FV

(35) Context: It’s no use trying to swim in the lake tomorrow. The water will be cold.
   #a-m-ɪɪsi g-isakụ-j-a ma-talalifu
   AUG-6-water 6-INDEF.FUT-be(come)-FV 6-cold

(36) Context: A young man’s plans for the future. He intends to build a big house then.
   #linga n-gʊl-ile n-isakụ-jeng-a ɪɪ-nyumba ɪɪ-nywamu
   if/when 1SG-grow-PFV 1SG-INDEF.FUT-build-FV AUG-house(9) AUG-big(9)
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

(37) Context: Talking about the speaker’s plans for the evening. He will be at home.

#n-isakʊ-j-a itolo pa-ka-aja
1sg-indef.fut-be(come)-fv just 16-12-homestead

Examples containing the indefinite future that were constructed by the researcher were interpreted as describing events that are less probable and/or contingent on other circumstances.

(38) tw-isakʊ-kin-a ʊ-m-pɪla
1pl-indef.fut-play-fv aug-3-ball
‘We might play football (unsure or dependent on circumstances).’ [ET]

(39) tw-isakʊ-fik-a kʊ-ka-aja k-ɪɪnʊ
1pl-indef.fut-arrive-fv 17-12-homestead 12-poss.2pl
‘We might arrive at your place some day (i.e do not overdo your bragging about it, we might come and check).’ [ET]

Examples (40, 41) are typical of the few cases in which speakers themselves offered uses of the indefinite future within the wider elicitation context. Again, a future-oriented epistemic reading lies at the heart of these examples, apparently with some persistent ingressive flavour.

(40) mu-nga-bʊʊk-aga kʊ-m-ɪısı mwibeene, i-n-joka
2pl-neg.subj-go-ipvv 17-6-water 2pl.self aug-9-snake
j-isakʊ-ba-mɪl-a
9-indef.fut-2pl-swallow-fv
‘Don’t go to the water by yourselves, a snake might devour you.’ [ET]

(41) a-ka-pɪɪj-a=mo r-m-balaga, kangɪ
1-neg-cook-fv=some aug-9-banana_stew again
a-t-isakʊ-pɪɪj-a=mo
1-neg-indef.fut-cook-fv=some
‘She has never cooked banana stew and she won’t likely ever do so.’ [ET]

Concerning uses of the indefinite future in a more spontaneous context, consider the following example. The researcher was standing on a path leading away from the village of Lwangwa and having a chat with some of the local inhabitants. A motorcycle taxi came rushing by and the researcher only jumped aside in the last moment. After it had passed, (42) was uttered, giving the researcher to understand that such unalert behaviour might at some point lead to an accident.
8.6 Indefinite future

(42) b-isakʊ-kʊ-tik-a
2-IND.FUT-2SG-pound-FV
'They might (eventually) knock you over.' [overheard]

These readings of the indefinite future are probably the reason that Nurse (1979) considers this construction a “distant future”. Rather than a question of temporal remoteness, this interpretation apparently derives from the strongly modal semantics of the construction. To begin with, even in predictions of a temporally very distant time, the collocation of future proclitic aa= plus the simple present (§8.2) is normally used:

(43) lɪnga fi-kind-ile 1-fy-mja f-ingi 1-fi fi-kw-is-a
if/when 8-pass-PFV AUG-8-year 8-many AUG-PROX.8 8-PRS-come-FV
aa=bi-ko-mal-a 1-n-jila j-aa ko-book-a ko-Tukojo
FUT=2-PRS-finish-FV AUG-9-path 9-ASSOC 15-go-FV 17-T.
'In many years, they will finish the road to Tukuyu.' [ET]

Furthermore, the indefinite future itself can be combined with the future proclitic aa= (44). In fact, when checking in elicitation how far this construction can be combined with definite temporal adverbials, speakers nearly always added aa= when repeating the constructed examples.

(44) aa=tw-isakʊ-fik-a ki-laabo
FUT=1PL-IND.FUT-arrive-FV 7-tomorrow
'We will probably arrive tomorrow.' [ET]

The indefinite future can further be used to express epistemic modality without future time reference (45, 46). As Bybee et al. (1991) point out, epistemic uses other than future prediction are typical of old future forms. Indeed, as (47) shows, this use was already available in the nineteen-forties.

(45) Context: You are asked where your brother is. You assume he is playing football.
isakʊ-kin-a ʊ-m-pɪla
1.IND.FUT-play-FV AUG-3-ball
'He will be [=presumably he is] playing football.' [ET]
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

(46) Context: The cows are mooing loudly. You are asked why they are making so much noise. You assume they are hungry.

\[ s\text{-}i\text{sa}k\text{\-}u\text{-}j\text{-}a \quad n=1\text{-}n\text{-}jala \]
10-INDEF.FUT-be(come)-FV COM=AUG-9-hunger

'They will be [=presumably they are] hungry.' [ET]

(47) \[ u\text{-}m\text{w-}a\text{n}a \quad i\text{-}k\text{u\-}l\text{\-}i\text{\-}a \quad n\text{-}n\text{yumba}. \]
\[ i\text{sa}k\text{\-}u\text{\-}b\text{\-}u\text{\-}n\text{g\-}u\text{\-}l\text{\-}u\text{\-}k \quad i\text{-}n\text{-}d\text{\-}fut\text{-}toss\text{\-}a\text{nd\-}turn\text{-}appl\text{-}f\text{\-}v \]
18-house(9) 1.INDEF.FUT-toss_and_turn-APPL-FV m-m-ooto

18-3-fire

'The child is crying in the house. It'll have [=presumably it has] fallen into the fire.' (Busse 1949: 199; orthography adapted)

Lastly, imperfective -\textit{aga} adds a continuous or reading:

(48) \[ n\text{-}i\text{sa}k\text{\-}u\text{\-}u\text{\-}l\text{\-}a \quad i\text{-}fi \]
1SG-INDEF.FUT-buy-IPFV AUG-PROX.8

'I will (probably or eventually) buy these things (habitually).’ [ET]

(49) \[ i\text{sa}k\text{\-}o\text{-}j\text{\-}e\text{\-}g\text{\-}a \quad p\text{a}\text{p}\text{\-}a\text{\~}p\text{\~}a \]
1.INDEF.FUT-build-IPFV REDUPL~PROX.16

'He will (probably or eventually) be building right here.' [ET]

8.6.3 A diachronic perspective

In the introduction to this section it was commented that the indefinite future constitutes an advanced stage of grammaticalization of \textit{isa} ‘come’ as an auxiliary in the simple present. While the phonetic attrition is self-evident, the construction’s meaning and use suggest a more complex chain of developments. As discussed in §10.4.2, the de-ventive auxiliary \textit{isa} has an ingressive reading and in its futurate use contrasts with the de-itive prospective/movement construction (§8.5). Only the latter of the two allows a component of intentionality. Now, in the first grammatical sketches of Nyakyusa (Schumann 1899; Endemann 1914), the indefinite future construction is listed as the main future tense. Correspondingly it is relatively frequent in the text collections from that time (Berger 1933; Busse 1942; 1949), where it is found with future predictions that do not necessarily involve an ingressive component. One can thus assume a semantic generalization from an assertion about reaching a certain condition in the future towards a prediction about a future state-of-affairs. This is precisely what has been
documented for de-ventive futures in Swedish (Christensen 1997) and Rhaeto-Romance (Ebneter 1973). Such a grammaticalization path is also suggested by Traugott (1978).

While at the turn of the twentieth century the indefinite future apparently constituted a core construction in Nyakyusa’s TMA system, the above discussion has shown that this does not hold for the present-day language. Note also that Lusekelo (2007; 2013) in his discussion of tense and aspect in Nyakyusa, does not list the indefinite future at all, but states that the collocation of the future clitic \textit{aa} = plus the simple present (§8.2) is the only future tense in this language. Nurse (1979), as noted above, considers the construction in question a “distant future” in contrast to the “intermediate future” expressed through \textit{aa} = plus simple present.

The history of the indefinite future as attested in the first descriptions of Nyakyusa and its usage in earlier text collections, its strongly modal flavour in the present-day language plus the fact that it allows for a non-temporal epistemic reading, as well as its distribution and combinatory possibilities, all point towards an old future construction that has mainly been displaced into the modal dimension. This most likely went along with the future proclitic \textit{aa} = (§8.2), especially in collocation with the simple present, occupying the former territory of the construction.²

### 8.7 Prospective/Inceptive \textit{ja pa}-INF

This construction consists of the copula verb \textit{ja} ‘be(come)’ plus an infinitive marked for locative noun class 16.

\textbf{(50) } \textit{tʊkʊja pakʊjoba} ‘we are about to speak’

Formally this construction constitutes the inceptive counterpart to the periphrastic progressive (§6.6.1). As for its semantics, it construes a future eventuality as very near or imminent to a point of reference, by default the time of speech. This often goes along with a sense of intention. Unlike the de-itive construction described in §8.5, this construction does not have a possible reading of physical motion. The following examples illustrate the use of this construction in the present tense.

²Note also that some language assistants commented on the use of the indefinite future in typical prediction contexts: “Maybe you would use that in the written language. But in speaking, we don’t say it like that”. The only more widely known written materials in Nyakyusa are translations of the Bible, which are based on the variety described by Schumann (1899) and Endemann (1914).
8 Tense and aspect constructions 3: futurates

(51) ᵃ-n-kiikulù n-ummw-ag-ile, ṭọ-ḵù-j-a
     aug-1-woman 1sg-1-find-PFV 1pl-prs-be(come)-PFV
pa-kw-eg-an-a kifuki
16-15-marry-RECP-PFV near
‘I’ve found a woman, we’ll marry soon.’ [Hare and Spider]

(52) bo ᵃ-ko-j-a pa-ḵù-nw-a ₁⁻n-ḵota ₁⁻gù taasi
     as 2sg.prs-be(come)-PFV 16-15-drink-PFV aug-3-medicine aug-prox.3 first
₁⁻ka-ḵu₃k-ege n=₁-gù-bünjö m-ma-tengele
2sg-itv-go-IPFV.SUBJ com=aug-11-morning 18-6-bush
‘When you plan to drink this portion, first go into the bush in the
morning.’ [Mfyage turns into a lion]

(53) ᵃ-fula Ḩ-kö-j-a pa-ḵù-tim-a
     aug-rain(9) 9-prs-be(come)-PFV 16-15-rain-PFV
‘It is about to rain.’ [ET]

While the prospective/movement construction discussed in §8.5 only has a
prospective reading when used in the simple present, the prospective/inceptive
construction can be used in the past tense:

(54) bo m-fik-ile pa-ka-aja, ᵃ-n-nuguna gw-angö
     as 1sg-arrive-PFV 16-12-homestead aug-1-younger_sibling 1-pos.1sg
a-a-j-aga pa-ḵù-sook-a=po
1-pst-be(come)-IPFV 16-15-leave-PFV=16
‘When I arrived at home my younger brother was about to leave.’ [ET]
9 Mood and modal categories

9.1 Introduction

In this chapter, mood and modal constructions will be described, starting with the imperative (§9.2), then the subjunctive mood (§9.3). The latter shows a broad variety of meanings and uses, as is common in Bantu languages. The treatment of the subjunctive includes a discussion of its negative counterpart and the distal/itive *ka*-.. Following this, two modal constructions will be described, which are rather uncommon for a Bantu language, namely the desiderative (§9.4) and the modal future construction (§9.5). Lastly, there is a section on the conditional marker (§9.6).

An overview of mood and modal constructions and their composition is given in Table 9.1. The terminology in this chapter follows Palmer (2007), unless indicated otherwise.

Table 9.1: Mood and modal constructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Example</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperative</td>
<td>vb-a(ga)</td>
<td><em>joba</em></td>
<td>‘Speak!’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subjunctive</td>
<td>sm-vb-ge</td>
<td><em>tejobe</em></td>
<td>‘we should speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Distal subjunctive</td>
<td>sm-ka-vb-ge</td>
<td><em>tokajobe</em></td>
<td>‘we should go speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. subjunctive</td>
<td>sm-(lt)-nga-vb-a(ga)</td>
<td><em>tongajoba</em></td>
<td>‘we should not speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Desiderative</td>
<td>sm-lt-vb-a(ga)</td>
<td><em>tolvijoba</em></td>
<td>‘we would like to speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modal future</td>
<td>sm₂-kʊ-vb-aga</td>
<td><em>tokʊjobaga</em></td>
<td>‘we shall speak’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional</td>
<td>ngalt verb</td>
<td>ngalt tokʊjoba</td>
<td>‘we would speak’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

9.2 Imperative

Direct orders in the second person singular are expressed by the imperative, which can consist of the bare stem:
9 Mood and modal categories

(1) ɓʊʊk-a! ‘Go!’
kin-a! ‘Play!’
mog-a! ‘Dance!’

The prosody of imperatives requires any vowel in initial position of the verbal word to be short (2). This holds even for vowels followed by a prenasalized plosive (3).

(2) igala! ‘Open!’
ima! ‘Stand up!’
ega! ‘Take!’
amula! ‘Answer!’
okya! ‘Roast!’
ʊlɪsya! ‘Sell!’

(3) ingɪla! [i.ˈŋɪɡɪ.l.a] ‘Enter!’
ɪmba! [ˈɪ.ᵐba] ‘Sing!’
endesya [ɛ.ˈⁿdɛ.sʸa] ‘Drive!’
anda! [ˈa.ⁿda] ‘Start!’
ongelapo! [ɔ.ŋɛ.ˈla.pʰɔ] ‘Continue a bit!’

Verbs in the imperative can carry an object marker. With object prefixes other than the first person singular the final vowel changes to -e. This also holds for the reflexive object prefix. When the object prefix of the first person singular precedes a plosive or approximant and thus the resultant word would be monosyllabic, the prefix surfaces as a syllabic nasal. This is discussed in §3.3.2.1.

(4) a. m-b-a=ko ʊ-n-katɪ
1SG-give-FV=17 AUG-3-bread
‘Give me the bread!’
b. m-p-e=ko ʊ-n-katɪ
1-give-IMP=17 AUG-3-bread
‘Give him the bread!’
c. i-kom-e
REFL-hit-IMP
‘Hit yourself!’

1 No imperative of the shape /ʊNC…/ is attested in the data and no Nyakyusa verb features initial /u/ (§3.2).
2 The resulting forms can thus be considered to be hybrid forms between the imperative and the subjunctive; see Devos & van Olmen (2013: 17-22) for a discussion of such forms across Bantu. Also see p. 271 in §9.3 for a similarly hybrid imperative-like subjunctive.
Likewise, monosyllabic verbs in their bare stem form cannot be used as imperatives. They have to be augmented by either a meaningless prefix i- or carry the imperfective suffix -aga (5). This has also been observed by Schumann (1899: 69). Monosyllabic verbs are, however, acceptable as imperatives when they carry an enclitic (6).

(5)  ilwa! / lwaga! ‘Fight!’ (not *lwa)
     ilya! / lyaga! ‘Eat!’ (not *lya)
     inwa! / nwaga! ‘Drink!’ (not *nwa)

(6)  lwapo! ‘Fight a bit!’
     lyapo! ‘Eat a bit!’
     nwapo! ‘Drink a bit!’

Direct orders addressed to the second person plural are expressed by the subjunctive (§9.3). The only attested cases of formal imperatives directed to the second person plural are keeta ‘look’ and isaga ‘come’, which serve as invariable discourse markers. The imperfective suffix -aga adds a range of meanings. Depending on the context, it can express a demand for an action to be carried out habitually/regularly (7). Further, the imperfective imperative can express a demand to continuously perform an action, which can shade over into an urge to initialize or continue the said action (8). Lastly, the imperfective suffix can also serve to mitigate the imperative appeal, yielding phrases that range from weaker commands to invitations (9). Nurse (2008: 192) notes that this mitigating function of the imperfective imperative is found across Bantu.

(7)  bomb-aga bwila~bwila!
       work-IPFV REDUPL~always
       ‘Always work! [ET]

(8)  job-aga!
       speak-IPFV
       ‘Be / get / continue speaking!’ [ET]

(9)  ingil-aga
       enter-IPFV
       ‘Come in!’ [overheard]

Note that imperatives can be used not only for verbs featuring a volitional agent, but also for non-volitional change-of-state verbs; Seidel (2008: 320) observes the same for Yeyi R41.
9 Mood and modal categories

(10) nyop-a!
    be(come)_soaked-fv
    'Get sweating! (e.g. do the hard work yourself)' [ET]

(11) katal-a!
    be(come)_tired-fv
    'Act tired!' [ET]

(12) Context: The plumber is claiming an excessive price.
    hobok-a!
    be(come)_happy-fv
    'Stop exaggerating!' [overheard]

While in some Bantu languages, such as Yeyi K41 (Seidel 2008) and Zulu S42 (Ziervogel et al. 1981), the subjunctive and not the imperative has to be used in a sequence of commands from the second verb on, sequences of imperatives are allowed in Nyakyusa:

(13) bɪɪk-a Ṽ-lw-igi ñ-o mo lw-ene saam-il-a bʊbʊʊ~bo
    put-fv AUG-11-door 11-one 11-only migrate-appl-fv REDUPL~REF.14
    'Put one door in, so you can move in.' [How to build modern houses]

There is no formal negative counterpart to the imperative. Instead, two different strategies are available for forming negative orders (prohibitives). First, the prohibitive elements komma or somma followed by the infinitive may be used (see §11.3). This is very common and bears the strongest directive force. A second strategy is the use of the negative subjunctive (§9.3.4).

9.3 Subjunctive

The final vowel -e (imperfective -ege) marks a modal category that is commonly labelled subjunctive in the Bantuist tradition (Doke 1935: 203f; Rose et al. 2002: 83f). Endemann (1914: 62f) speaks of the final mood in his description of Nyakyusa. In the case of defective tɪ (§10.3), no change in final vowel takes place. The subjunctive in Nyakyusa gives a wide array of readings and comes close to what Timberlake (2007: 326), from a typological perspective, characterizes as “an all-purpose mood used to express a range of less-than-completely real modality”.

In the following description, first the uses of the subjunctive as such will be outlined, distinguishing between independent and subordinate clauses. This is followed by a description of some complex verbal constructions that include a
9.3 Subjunctive

subjunctive verb and a section on the distal/itive prefix ka-. Lastly, the negative counterpart to the subjunctive paradigm will be discussed.

9.3.1 Uses of the subjunctive

9.3.1.1 Subjunctive uses in main predication

The subjunctive can be used performatively for directives, where it is considered milder than the imperative.

(14) ʊ-m-fis-e kʊʊ-sofu tʊ-m̩ -buut-e  
2SG-1-hid-SUBJ 17-room(9) 1PL-1-slaughter-SUBJ  
‘Hide him [Hare] in the room, we shall slaughter him.’ [Saliki and Hare]

When the subjunctive is used in a directive, the of the second person singular can be omitted.³

(15) igʊl-e ʊ-lw-igi  
open-SUBJ AUG-11-door  
‘Open the door!’ [overheard]

(16) bʊʊk-a k-ʊʊl-e ʊ-bʊ-meme  
go-fv ITV-buy-SUBJ AUG-14-electricity(<SWA)  
‘Go buy [vouchers for] electricity!’ [overheard]⁴

The subjunctive is also used as a counterpart to the imperative for the second person plural (17). Negative commands to the second person plural are formed by the use of either somma/komma plus the infinitive (§11.3), or the negative subjunctive (§9.3.4).

(17) ʊ-malafyale a-a-ba-bʊʊl-ile a-a-t-ile  mu-bʊʊk-e nuumwe  
AUG-chief(1) 1-PST-2-tell-PFV 1-PST-say-PFV 2PL-go-SUBJ COM.2PL  
mu-ka-kol-e ii-boole 1-ly-ʊmi  mu-lɪ-twal-e kʊ-no!”  
2PL-ITV-grasp/hold-SUBJ 5-leopard AUG-5-live 2PL-5-carry-SUBJ 17-PROX  
‘The chief told them “You (pl.) too go, catch a live leopard and bring it here!”’ [Chief Kapyungu]

³This is frequent in natural speech and also attested in the textual data. In elicitation, however, speakers were hesitant to use this form. Given the constraint on monosyllabic imperatives and subjunctives (see p. 269 in §9.2 and p. 56 in §3.3.2.1), it is very probable that dropping the subject prefix is not possible with monosyllabic roots. Optionality of the subject marker also holds for Yeyi (Seidel 2008: 323). Devos & van Olmen (2013: 21f) indicate more such cases in other Bantu languages.

⁴See §9.3.3 for the distal/itive prefix ka-.
The subjunctive is also used in jussives, including hortatives (directions to the first person plural):

(18) ʊ-jʊ ṭ lnga i-kʊ-m-boni-a, aa-seng-ege taasi
    AUG-PROX.1 if/when 1-PRS-1SG-greet-FV 1.1SG-chop-IPFV.SUBJ first
    n=i-n-dwanga pa-ki-kosi po a-m-boni-ege
    COM=AUG-9-axe 16-7-neck then 1-1SG-greet-IPFV.SUBJ

    ‘Whoever greets me shall first hit me with an axe in the neck, then he shall greet me.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

(19) po nsyɪsyɪ a-lmkʊ-ti “gwe ji-p-iile.  2SG 9-be(come)_burnt-pfv come-ipfv
    is-aga

    tu-ly-ege!”
    2PL-eat-IPFV.SUBJ

    ‘Then Skunk said “You, it [meat] is done. Come, let’s eat!”’ [Hare and Skunk]

A pre-initial *a* is sometimes used in directives and hortatives, which apparently provides the request with a summoning or encouraging character (20, 21). This is not to be confused with the future proclitic *aa* (§8.2).

(20)  mwe a-mu-pilkisy-e
    2PL  HORT=2PL-listen-SUBJ

    ‘Hey, listen up!’ [ET]

(21) a=tʊ-tʊʊsy-e
    HORT=1PL-rest-SUB

    ‘Come, let’s rest!’ [ET]

A pre-initial form of comitative *na* with directives and jussives strengthens the coercive force and typically gives a reading of urgency (22–24). Nicolle (2013: 89) uses the label “emphatic subjunctive” for the same construction in Digo E73.

(22) na=tʊ-bʊuk-e
    COM=1PL-go-SUBJ

    ‘Let’s go! (urging and/or annoyed)’ [ET]

(23) po leelo j-aal-is-iile  r-m-bwa. j-aa-t-ile ʊ-mwe
    then now/but 9-PST-come-pfv AUG-9-dog 9-PST-say-pfv AUG-2PL
    na-mu-lek-e ʊ-kʊ-lw-a!”
    COM=2PL-let-SUBJ AUG-15-fight-FV

    ‘Then Dog came. He said “You (pl.), now stop fighting!”’ [Monkey and Tortoise]
9.3 Subjunctive

(24) a-lɪ koo=kʊʊ kajamba? keet-a, n-ga-m-bon-a
1-COP REF.17=where tortoise(1) look-FV 1SG-NEG-1-see-FV
ʊ-kw-is-a kʊ-kʊ-n-geet-a. na=mʊ-bʊok-e,
mu-ka-n-koolel-e, mu-ka-n-don-d-e! iis-e a-n-geet-e
2PL-ITV-1-call-SUBJ 2PL-ITV-1-search-SUBJ 1.come-SUBJ 1-1SG-watch-SUBJ
‘Where is Tortoise? Look, I haven’t seen it coming to see me. Go (pl.)
right now, call it, find it! It must come and see me.’ [Lion and Tortoise]

The subjunctive is also used for expressing obligation, which ranges from a
weaker notion of necessity to recommendations.

(25) j-oope ʊ-n-kiikʊlʊ a-j-ege n=ɪ-n-dwanga i-j-aa
1-also AUG-1-1-woman 1-be(come)-IPFV.SUBJ COM=AUG-1-axe AUG-9-ASSOC
ku-meney-el-a n=ʊ-kʊ-tumul-il-a i-mi-piki
15-chop-APPL-FV COM=AUG-15-cut-APPL-FV AUG-4-tree
‘And a woman should have an axe for splitting with and cutting trees
with.’ [Types of tools in the home]

(26) a-ka-a bʊ-bɪlɪ a-ma-pamba a-ga-a kʊ-jeng-el-a
AUG-12-ASSOC 14-two AUG-6-brick AUG-6-ASSOC 15-build-APPL-FV
gw-ɪjʊʊl-e ʊ-kʊ-fyatol-a jʊ~jʊʊ-gwe
2SG-work_hard-SUBJ AUG-15-make_bricks-FV REDUPL~1-2SG
n=ʊ-kʊ-kosy-a
COM=AUG-15-set_on_fire-FV
‘Secondly, you should try yourself to make bricks to build with and bake
them.’ [How to build modern houses]

Conceptually close to expressing obligation, the subjunctive is found in delib-
erative and permissive interrogation:

(27) tʊ-tɪ=bʊle na=a-ba-anɪɪtʊ!
1PL-say.SUBJ=how COM=AUG-2-our_child
‘What should we do with our children!’ [Thieving monkeys]

(28) lɪlɪno kʊʊ-many-a, fi-ki u-ti-kwul-a bo
now/today PRS.1SG-know-FV 8-what 2SG-NEG-PRS-answer-FV as
n-gʊ-kʊ-laalʊʊsy-a? bule n-gʊ-kom-e n=ɪ-kɪ-buli?
1SG-PRS-2SG-ask-FV Q 1SG-2SG-hit-SUBJ COM=AUG-7-fist
‘Now you’ll get to know me, why don’t you answer when I’m asking
you? Should I hit you with the fist?’ [Saliki and Hare];
The subjunctive is also used for volitives (29, 30) and, closely related, to announce what one is about to do (31).

(29) kyala a-kʊ-tʊʊl-e
God 1-2SG-help-SUBJ
'May God help you.' [overheard]

(30) ʊ-n-nino iibiibwe fi-mo kʊ-nɔ mw-a-jaat-aga, AUG-1-your_companion 1.forget.PFV 8-one 17-PROX 2PL-PST-walk-IPFV a-t-ile n-ummw-ag-ege papaa~pa 1-say-PFV 2SG-1-find-IPFV.SUBJ REDUPL~PROX.16
'Your friend has forgotten something while you were talking a walk, he said "I want to meet him right here."' [Hare and Spider]

(31) po mwa=n-gambɪl i-a-a-tɪ "hee. po m-book-e then matronymy=9-monkey 1-SUBSEC-say INTERJ then 1SG-go-SUBJ kw-a kajamba ku-kʊ-mel-a n-heela sy-ango". po 17-ASSOC tortoise(1) 17-15-claim-FV AUG-money(10) 10-POS.1SG then a-lmkw-end-a, a-lmkw-end-a, a-lmkw-end-a 1-NARR-walk/travel-FV 1-NARR-walk/travel-FV 1-NARR-walk/travel-FV 'So Mr. Monkey said "I'll go to Tortoise to claim my money". He walked and walked and walked' [Monkey and Tortoise]

Following mpaka 'no matter what', the subjunctive expresses that the eventuality will or must be fulfilled under all conditions. Thus, in (32) it is used in a promise, while in (33), an excerpt from a procedural text, it marks the denoted instruction as a necessity, whereas a bare subjunctive could be understood as just one step amongst various others.

(32) n-gʊ-bʊʊl-a ʊkʊtɪ mpaka n-iis-e kr-laabo 1SG-PRS-tell-FV COMP no_matter_what 1SG-come-SUBJ 7-tomorrow 'I promise that I will come tomorrow.' [ET]

Finally, the subjunctive is also sometimes used to elaborate on states-of-affairs construed with the past imperfective in its habitual/generic reading (§6.5.7), as well as with futurates (§8). This is extremely rare in the present data, the only clear case being given in (34). The additional example in (35) is taken from HIV prevention materials created by SIL International (orthography adapted). A few more instances are found in older text collections (Berger 1933; Busse 1942; 1949), but even there this usage seems far from obligatory. Botne (2008: 130), for neighbouring Ndali, lists a number of examples of subjunctive uses under the label ‘coincident future’. Two of his examples are to all appearances also continuations of past generics.


‘It (the monster) carried the guitar wherever it went. It would begin to play that guitar. People would then dance.’ [Monster with guitar]


‘Because your are orphans, there are some men who might try to persuade you.’

ba-ba-p-ege i-fi-ndū n=ū-tu-ndū u-tu-ngi ukʊtɪ 2-2PL-give-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-8-food COM=AUG-13-thing AUG-13-other COMP

R. Carlson (1992) observes this kind of dual function for categories often labelled ‘subjunctive’ in a number of West and East African languages. However, in the languages discussed by Carlson, these uses are commonly more generalized and fulfil the functions covered by the Nyakyusa narrative tense (§7.3) and subsecutive (§7.4).
9 Mood and modal categories

mu-logw-enge na=bo
2PL-copulate-IPFV.SUBJ COM=REF.2
'They will give you food and presents so that you have sex with them.'
[Kande’s Story]6

Lastly, imperfective -ege is highly sensitive to context and yields a range of readings including general or habitual (36, 37) and continuous (38). It also has a mitigating function, thus marking a recommendation in (39).

(36) gwe n-kiikulu u-ŋ-jab-il-ege u-ŋ-dūmego
2SG 1-woman 2SG-1-divide-APPL-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-1-your_husband
i-ki-jabo ki-nywamu fiijo
AUG-7-share 7-big INTENS
'You, woman must always [while pregnant] give your husband a good share [of the food].' [Pregnant women]

(37) n-fubu j-aal-iitiike looli jr-lnkū-n-suām-a jr-lnkū-ti,
AUG-hippo(9) 9-PST-agree.PFV but 9-NARR-1-beg-FV 9-NARR-say
"gw-is-enge=ko ku-my-angu ku-kū-m-band-a
2SG-come-IPFV.SUBJ=17 17-4-poss.1SG 17-15-1SG-heal_wound-FV
i-fi-londa
AUG-8-wound
'Hippo agreed, but asked him [Hare], “You should come (regularly) to my home to put hot compresses on my sores.”' [Hare and Hippo]

(38) a-ka-a kw-and-a g-ool-ege a-ma-lata
AUG-12-ASSOC 15-begin-FV 2SG-buy-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-6-corrugated_iron
manandi~ma-nandi, mpaka ga-fik-il-e i-m-balilo
REDUPL~6-little until 6-arrive-APPL-SUBJ AUG-9-number
i-ji ku-ji-lond-a
AUG-PROX.9 2SG.PRS-9-want-FV
'To start with, you should be buying corrugated iron, little by little, until you have enough.' [How to build modern houses]

(39) n-gū-kū-bōzil-a mu-ndū u-gwe, gw-eg-ege fy-osa
1SG-PRS-2SG-tell-FV 1-person AUG-2SG 2SG-take-IPFV.SUBJ 8-all
i-fy-ako i-fi u-li na=fyo pamopee
AUG-8-poss.2SG AUG-PROX.8 2SG-COP COM=REF.8 together

6http://www.nyakyusalanguage.com/nyy/mlsp-dl/334/12876/42227?r=0 (05 February, 2016). The Swahili version of this texts, on which the translation to Nyakyusa is based, uses an infinitive-based construction instead of the subjunctive mood.
'I’m telling you, you should take all your belongings together with your wife and children and all your animals.’

‘You should go far and never return here, you shouldn’t tell not even your neighbours.’ [Selfishness kills]

9.3.1.2 Subjunctive uses in subordinate clauses

The subjunctive features in the complements of modality and manipulation verbs, where it alternates with the infinitive. If the subject of the main verb is co-referential with the subject of the complement verb, the infinitive is the more common form. The subjunctive is also possible however (40); also see (1a) on p. 211, (9) on p. 253 and (65) on p. 284. Subjunctive complements are sometimes introduced by the complementizer ʊkʊtɪ, but this is optional in most cases. If the subjects of the two verbs differ, the subjunctive is most commonly used (41); this includes partly disjunctive reference; see (89) on p. 290. Alternatively, the complement verb figures as an oblique infinitival clause and its notional subject as the object of the main verb (42).

(40) i-kʊ-lond-a eeg-e ii-peasi lr-mo 1-PRS-want-FV 1.take-SUBJ 5.pear(<SWA) 5-one

‘He wants to take one pear.’ [Elisha pear story]

(41) gwe ɲ-ganga n-go-sʊʊm-a ʊ-ŋ-dʊʊl-e ʊ-m-b-e=po 2SG 1-healer 1SG-PRS-beg-FV 2SG-1SG-help-SUBJ 2SG-1SG-give-SUBJ=16 ʊ-ŋ-n-kota ʊ-gw-a ʊ-gano AUG-3-medicine AUG-3-ASSOC 11-love

‘You, witch doctor, I beg you to help me, give me a love portion.’ [Mfyage turns into a lion]
9 Mood and modal categories

(42) ʊ-malafyale a-ba-lagiile b-oosa ʊ-kw-is-a kʊ-my-ake  
AUG-chief(1) AUG-2-order.PFV 2-all AUG-15-come-FV 17-4-POSS.SG  
‘The chief ordered everybody to come to his place.’ [ET]

Related to the preceding examples, the subjunctive is also used in indirect orders:

(43) ɪ-n-galamu ji-lnkʊs-fi-bʊʊl-a i-fi-nyamaana fy-osa ŋkʊtɪ f-iis-e  
AUG-9-lion 9-NARR-8-tell-FV AUG-8-animal 8-all COMP 8-come-SUBJ  
kʊs-lʊs-komaano  
17-11-meeting  
‘Lion told all the animals to come to the meeting.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

The subjunctive further alternates with the infinitive after predicative expressions of disapproval, approval or preference when reference is made to eventualities that are either not actualized (44, 45) or are potential (46). These clauses are sometimes introduced by the complementizer ŋkʊtɪ. For an example featuring the infinitive, see (12) on p. 326.

(44) kanunu ʊ-pungusy-e=po ɨ-fy-ima fy-ako bole?  
well 2SG-reduce-SUBJ=PART AUG-8-thigh 8-POSS.2SG Q  
‘Isn’t it good that you should lose weight [lit. reduce a bit] from your thighs?’ [Hare and Hippo]

(45) kyajɪpo ṭʊ-boʊk-ege  
preferable 1PL-go-IPFV.SUBJ  
‘We’d better get going.’ [ET]

(46) l-oope ḋʊ-ka-a ḋʊ-sumo ḋʊ-nunu ŋkʊtɪ ḋʊ-n-kiikʊlu  
11-also 11-NEG.be(come)-FV 11-custom 11-good COMP AUG-1-woman  
a-boʊmb-ege 1-m-bombo ɴ-gafu bo ḋʊ-ŋ-dʊme a-li=ko  
1-work-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-10-work 10-difficult as AUG-1-husband 1-COP=17  
m-ʊʊmi  
1-live  
‘Also it is not good manners for a woman to do hard work while the husband is alive.’ [Division of labour]

Similarly, it is used in a variety of subordinate clauses with reference to non-actualized eventualities:
Lastly, the subjunctive is also used in purpose clauses (49) and result clauses (50), which are introduced by the complementizer *ukutu*.

(49) popaa~po kalulu a-linkū-bop-a fiijo *ukutu a-lu-kind-e* REDUPL~then hare(1) 1-NARR-run-FV INTENS COMP 1-11-pass-SUBJ *ukutu* a-lu-kind-e  
AUG-11-chameleon  
‘Hare ran fast to beat Chameleon.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(50) ba-ka-a-fi-lek-aga panja *ukutu fi-nyop-enge* n=ii-fula  
2-NEG-PST-8-let-IPFV outside COMP 8-get_wet-IPFV.SUBJ COM=AUG-rain(9)  
‘They would not leave them [animals] outside so that they [animals] would get wet in the rain.’ [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]

### 9.3.2 Complex constructions involving the subjunctive

A number of formally biclausal constructions contain subjunctive verbs as the second element. What is common to all of them is that the first element is a form of the versatile verb *tɪ* ‘say’ (§10.3).

A construction featuring an inflected form of *tt* together with a co-referential subjunctive gives projective and conative readings. This is often understood as a frustrated intent:

7This construction is fairly common in south-eastern Bantu (Güldemann 1996: 153) and has grammaticalized to future tense marking in a number of languages of Bantu zones M and N (Botne 1998).
9 Mood and modal categories

(51) bo i-kʊ-tɪ a-kol-ege ʊ-lw-igi a-kʊ-kab-e
as 1-PRS-say 1-grasp/hold-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-11-door 1-11-get-SUBJ
kw-a-t-ɪle “kóo”.
 a-a-kuʊt-ɪle a-a-t-ɪle
17-PST-say-PFV of_sickle_swinging 1-PST-cry-PFV 1-PST-say-PFV
“ntaata! m-fw-ɪle hiihii”
oh_father 1SG-die-PFV of_crying

“When he tried to grab the door and get hold of it, there was the sound “kóo!” [of a sickle]. He cried “Oh father! I am dead, hiihii!”” [Wage of the thieves]

This, however, turns out to be an implicature rather than part of the meaning of the construction. This is illustrated in (52, 53). In (52), the referential demonstrative syo serves as the copulative copula of the cleft sentence and refers to the information Hare has just given the woman and which has caused her to change her mind. In (53) the intended action is carried out in the following sentence.

(52) kalʊlʊ a-a-hobwike fiijo paapo ʊ-n-kiikʊlu
hare(1) 1-PST-be(come)_happy.PFV INTENS because AUG-1-WOMAN
a-sambwike, Kalʊlʊ a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ “syo ɪ-si ʊ-d-ɪle
1-rebel.PFV, hare(1) 1-NARR-say REF.10 AUG-PROX.10 1SG-say-PFV
n-gʊ-bʊʊl-e ʊkʊtɪ ʊ-many-e”
1SG-2SG-tell-SUBJ COMP 2SG-know-SUBJ

‘Hare was very happy because the woman had changed her mind, he said “That’s what I wanted to tell you so that you know it.”’ [Hare and Spider]

(53) po leelo a-lɪnkʊ-is-a ʊ-gw-a bu-haano […] po j-oope
then but 1-NARR-come-FV AUG-1-ASSOC 14-five then 1-also
a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ imb-ege ʊ-lw-imbo. j-oope a-lɪnkʊ-ɪmb-a
1-NARR-say 1.sing-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-11-song 1-also 1-NARR-sing-FV
a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ
1-NARR-say

‘Then the fifth (child) came. It also wanted to sing the song. It also sang:’
[Children and Snake]

The collocation of fikʊtɪ, which is the simple present of tɪ with a noun class 8 subject, together with a subjunctive verb as its complement denotes various kinds of dynamic and deontic necessity. Only one token of this collocation is attested in the data (54). Speakers accepted this construction in elicitation, but considered it somewhat archaic. It is frequent in older text collections. (55, 56) illustrate this (orthography adapted).
Lastly, the subjunctive of *ti* itself, together with a subjunctive complement, expresses obligation. Interestingly, in this case the subjunctive of *ti* can be marked for past tense (58).

(57) **ba-ti** b-iis-e **m-ba-p-e=po** n-heela
2-say 2-come-SUBJ 1SG-2-give-SUBJ=16 AUG-money(10)
‘They must come so that I give them the money.’ [ET]

(58) **kū-nongwa** j-aa **ku-tr** n-ny-iiho sy-a **ba-Nyakyusa**
17-issue(9) 9-ASSOC 15-say AUG-10-custom 10-ASSOC 2-Ny.
**si-ku-lond-a** ukōti a-a-ti **a-m-bonol-e** taasi po
10-PRS-want-FV COMP 1-PST-say.SUBJ 1-1-pay_brideprice-SUBJ yet then

---

8The lack of a simple present prefix is evidence for this form not belonging to the indicative paradigms.
9 Mood and modal categories

'Because the traditions of the Nyakyusa people require that he should have paid her off first, then they shall look at each other and greet each other without fearing.' [Should she save a life...]

9.3.3 Distal/itive ka-

The subjunctive can be combined with a prefix ka-, which is commonly labelled distal or itive. This morpheme ka- is glossed as itv throughout this study, with dist being reserved for the distal demonstrative. Other common labels in the Bantuistic literature include andative or ka movendi (Nurse 2008: 242). Note that the distal/itive does not constitute a mood of its own, but rather a deictic category that in Nyakyusa is limited to the subjunctive mood. As the name suggests, distal/itive ka- locates the state-of-affairs away from the deictic centre (see also Botne 1999). This often goes together with a sense of physical motion (59). Accordingly, it is commonly found after bʊʊka ‘go (to)’ (60, 61).

(59) (ʊ-)ka-sy-e i-fi-lombe!
     (2sg-)ITV-grind-SUBJ AUG-8-maize
     ‘Go grind maize!’ [ET]

(60) po leelo ʊ-bʊʊk-e kw-a mwa=n-gambilı then now/but 2SG-go-SUBJ 17-ASSOC matronym=9-monkey
     ʊ-ka-m-bʊʊl-e ukott “taata i-ku-soom-a a-m-ungu, 2SG-ITV-1-tell-SUBJ COMP my_father 1-PRS-beg-FV AUG-6-pumpkin
     n=ɪ-m-bilipili na=a-ma-simbr n=ii-seke.”
     COM=AUG-10-pepper COM=AUG-6-cocoyam COM=5-sidedish
     ‘Go to Mr. Monkey and tell him “Father begs for pumpkins, peppers, cocoyam and a sidedish.”’

---

9Lusekelo (2013: 106–109) lists this as “narrative ka-” on the sole basis that in other Bantu languages a segmentally identical prefix is used for several kinds of past time reference, only to then state (p. 108) that it “represents future tense as well in Kinyakyusa”. All examples listed by Lusekelo include subjunctive final -e(ge) and, although they sometimes appear in past contexts, from his own translation as well as from the distribution of the morpheme it is clear that all these cases belong to the subjunctive paradigm.
9.3 Subjunctive

ʊ-ka-tɪ  n-heela  n-gʊ-twal-aga
2SG-ITV-say.SUBJ AUG-money(10) 1SG-MOD.FUT-carry-MOD.FUT
ʊ-ń-dʊngʊ  ʊ-gʊ  ʊ-gʊ-kw-is-a
AUG-3-week AUG-PROX.3 3-PRS-come-FV

'Say that the money I will bring next week.' [Monkey and Tortoise]

(61)  mu-bʊʊk-e  mwe ba-n̩dʊ  b-angʊ  nuumwe  mu-ka-kol-e
2PL-go-SUBJ 2PL 2-person 2-poss.ISG COM.2PL 2PL-ITV-grasp/hold-SUBJ
i-n-galamu  mu-ka-twal-e  ʊ-ny-ʊʊmi!
AUG-9-lion 2PL-ITV-carry-SUBJ AUG-9-live

'You, my people, you too go catch a lion and bring it alive!' [Chief Kapyungu]

While distal/itive ka- often goes together with a sense of physical motion of the subject, this is not always the case. In (62), people plan to take a guitar string, which is made from the dead body of a child, to a witch doctor, who will then bring the child back to life. It is thus not the subject of the distal/itive-marked subjunctive (the witch doctor) that moves, but his actions happen at a place other than the deictic centre. See also (52) on p. 266 for an example of a motion event that is displaced elsewhere.

(62)  baatɪ po  i-li-ndʊ  i-li  tu-li-gog-e  ẜkʊtɪ
INTERJ then  AUG-5-monster AUG-PROX.5 1PL-5-kill-SUBJ COMP
tw-eɡ-e  i-ki-sipa  ki-la  mw-i-pango,  tʊ-twal-e
1PL-take-SUBJ AUG-7-string 7-DIST 18-5-guitar  1PL-carry-SUBJ
kʊ-ń-ganga. a-ka-ᵽ-ᵿбуj-ᵿsy-e  ẜ-mw-ana
17-1-healer  1-ITV-1-return-CAUS-SUBJ AUG-1-child

'Look, that monster, we should kill it so that we take that string in the guitar and bring it to the witch doctor. [So that] he’ll make the child return.’ [Monster with guitar]

The following examples illustrate some more uses of ka- in environments other than directives and requests.

(63) Volitive:
po  i-n-sota  bo  ji-fum-ile  n-kʊ-jaat-a  ji-lnku-tı
then  AUG-python(9) as  9-come_from-PFV 18-15-walk-FV 9-NARR-say

“n-ga-keit-e  ii-fumbtı ly-angʊ”
1SG-ITV-watch-SUBJ 5-egg  5-poss.ISG

'Python, when it had come from taking a walk, said “I'll go look after my egg.”' [Python and woman]
9 Mood and modal categories

(64) Hortative:

Hortative: is-aga  

tu-bʊk-e  

tu-ka-m-bʊʊl-e  

ʊ-n-kʊmba  

gw-ɪtʊ  

come-IPFV  

1pl-go-SUBJ  

1pl-ITV-1-tell-SUBJ  

AUG-1-older  

1-POS.1PL  

gw-a  

fi-nyamaana  

fy-osu  

ʊkʊtɪ  

a-kʊolele-e  

1-ASSOC  

8-animal  

8-all  

AUG-elephant(9)  

COMP  

1-call-SUBJ  

ʊ-lʊ-komaano  

AUG-11-meeting

‘Come, let’s go and tell our eldest among all animals, Elephant, that he should call a meeting.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(65) Subordinate clause, modality verb:

Subordinate clause, modality verb: m-bagiile  

ʊ-kʊ-tʊl-a  

ʊ-gwe  

ʊ-kʊ-bop-a  

ʊ-lʊ-bɪlo,  

1sg-be_able.PFV  

AUG-15-2SG-beat-FV  

AUG-2SG  

AUG-15-run-FV  

AUG-11-race  

paapo  

kw-end-a  

panandrĩ-panandrĩ.  

m-bagiile  

ʊkʊtɪ  

because  

2SG.PRS-walk/travel-FV  

REDUPL~a_little  

1SG-be_able.PFV  

COMP  

n-ga-fik-e  

kʊ-bo-mlʊnyʊso  

n=ʊ-ko-gomok-a  

bo ʊ-kaahi  

1SG-ITV-arrive-SUBJ  

17-14-finish  

COM=AUG-15-return-FV  

as  

2SG-PERS  

ʊ-lɪ  

pala~pa-la  

n-gʊ-lek-ile  

2SG-COP  

REDUPL~16-DIST  

1SG-2SG-let-PFV

‘I can beat you in running, because you walk slowly. I can [go] reach the end and return while you are still there where I left you.’ [Hare and Chameleon]

(66) Subordinate clause of purpose:

Subordinate clause of purpose: a-a-bʊngeenie  

a-ma-tunda  

ʊkʊtɪ  

lʊmo  

a-kʊul-ɪsy-e  

1-PST-gather.PFV  

AUG-6-fruit  

COMP  

maybe  

1-ITV-buy-CAUS-SUBJ

‘He gathered the fruits to maybe go and sell them.’ [Nicholaus Pear Story]

The distal/itive subjunctive can be combined with desiderative lɪ- , yielding ka- 

lɪ- vb-e- (ge). This is discussed in §9.4. Note that distal/itive ka- is only found in affirmative forms. As with the bare subjunctive, it is negated by the negative counterpart to the subjunctive.

9.3.4 Negative Subjunctive

The negative counterpart to the subjunctive consists of n̄ḡa- in the post-initial slot and the default final vowel -a or imperfective -aga. Contrary to the directive use of the affirmative subjunctive, the use of a subject marker is obligatory in this construction.
9.3 Subjunctive

(67)  *tʊngajoba* ‘we should not speak’

The negative subjunctive prefix is also attested with a variant form *ngr*-. This is much less frequent in the data and seems to be typical of the more northern variants of Nyakyusa. With the first person singular, the combination of subject prefix and negative prefix yields *ndɪngajoba* (68). Schumann (1899: 34f) and Endemann (1914: 73f) have *n-anga*-. The speakers consulted considered this typical of the variety of the lake-shore plains.

(68)  *ndɪngajoba* ‘I should not speak’

The uses of the negative subjunctive essentially parallel those of its affirmative counterpart. Some of these are illustrated in the following examples.

(69)  Prohibitive:
*ʊ-nga-gel-a ʊ-kʊ-ly-a ɪ-fi-ndʊ ɪ-fi!
2SG-NEG.SUBJ-try-FV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-8-food AUG-PROX.8
‘Don’t you dare eat that food!’ [ET]

(70)  Prohibitive plural:
*n-ɡʊ-ba-asim-a, looli aa=mu-nga-sob-esy-a*
1SG-PRS-2PL-lend-FV but FUT=2PL-NEG.SUBJ-get_lost-CAUS-FV
ɪ-sindaano j-angʊ
AUG-needle(9)<(SWA) 9-POSS.1SG
‘I’m lending it to you, but don’t lose my needle.’ [Chickens and crow]

(71)  Indirect prohibitive:
*a-m-bʊʊl-ile ʊkʊti n-dɪnga-bomb-a*
1-1SG-tell-PFV COMP 1SG-NEG.SUBJ-work-FV
‘He told me not to work.’ [ET]

(72)  Negative Hortative:
*to-nga-j-ag-a n=ɪ-fi-nyonyo bo ɪ-fubu*
1PL-NEG.SUBJ-be(comes)-IPFV COM=AUG-8-desire as AUG-hippo(9)
1-jɪ j-aa-fw-ile kʊʊ-nongwa 1-j-aa fi-londa bo
AUG-PROX.9 9-PST-die-IPFV 17-issue(9) AUG-9-ASSOC 8-wound as
ji-kʊ-lond-a ʊ-bʊ-nunu
9-PRS-search-FV AUG-14-beauty
‘We should not have desire like Hippo, who died because of his sores, when he was looking for beauty.’ [Hare and Hippo]
9 Mood and modal categories

(73) Negative Jussive:
\[ \text{n̩-dʊme gw-angʊ, tʊ-lond-e fi-mo i-fy-a} \]
1-husband 1-POSS.1sg 1PL-search-SUBJ 8-one AUG-8-ASSOC
\[ \text{kʊ-n-teg-el-a kʊ-tɪ ii-kol-e tʊ-n-gog-e.} \]
15-1-trap-APPL-FV hare(1) COMP 1.REFL-grasp/hold-SUBJ 1PL-1-kill-SUBJ
\[ \text{a-ng-and-isy-a } \text{ʊ}-\text{kʊ-ly-a } i-fi-lombe fy-ɪtʊ} \]
1-NEG.SBJ-begin-CAUS-FV AUG-15-eat-FV AUG-8-maize 8-POSS.1PL
\[ \text{paapo i-kʊ-mal-a} \]
because 1-PRS-finish-FV

‘My husband, let’s look for something to trap Hare, so that he gets caught
and we kill him. He mustn’t eat our maize again, because he’s finishing
it.’ [Saliki and Hare]

(74) Negative purpose clause:
\[ \text{ba-lɪnkw-inogon-a } \text{ʊ-kʊ-tɪ} \] “tʊ-bʊʊk-e tʊ-k-iip-e}
2-NARR-think-FV AUG-15-say 1PL-go-SUBJ 1PL-1TV-pluck-SUBJ
\[ i-ly-ʊndʊ } r-ly-a kʊ-gelek-el-a kʊ-mwanya” ukʊti
AUG-5-thatching_grass AUG-5-ASSOC 15-thatch-APPL 17-up COMP
\[ \text{ba-ngɪ-toony-el-igw-aga} \]
2-NEG.SBJ-drip-APPL-PASS-1PFV

‘They thought “We should go pluck grass for thatching the roof with”, so
that they would not get wet.’ [Throw away the child]

Like its affirmative counterpart, the negative subjunctive is also used together
with modality and manipulation verbs, where it alternates with the infinitive.
Verbs with an inherently negative meaning, such as kaaniysa ‘forbid’ and sigɪla
‘prevent’, only take the negative subjunctive:

(75) a. a-ba-ganga ba-n-kaniisye ukʊtɪ a-nga-kin-a ʊ-m-pɪla
AUG-2-healer 2-1-forbid.PFV COMP 1-NEG.SBJ-play-FV AUG-3-ball

‘The doctors have forbidden him/her to play football.’ [ET]
b. * a-ba-ganga ba-n-kaniisye ukʊtɪ a-kin-e ʊ-m-pɪla
AUG-2-healer 2-1-forbid.PFV COMP 1-play-SUBJ AUG-3-ball
9.3 Subjunctive

As is the case in the affirmative subjunctive, the imperfective suffix -\textit{aga} has a general or habitual reading; see (72, 74) above. It also has a continuous reading (76), as well as a mitigating one with directives (77).\(^\text{10}\)

(76) \text{\textbf{n-um-bʊʊl-ile ūkʊtɪ a-nga-nw-aga \textit{fiijo} }}
\text{\textit{1sg-1-tell-pfv comp 1-NEG.SUBJ-drink-ipfv intens}}
\text{‘I have told him that he should not be drinking too much.’ [ET]}

(77) \text{\textbf{ʊ-nga-paasy-aga}}
\text{\textit{2sg-NEG.SUBJ-worry-ipfv}}
\text{‘Don’t worry!’ [overheard]}

Lastly, a prefix \textit{lɪ-}, homophonous or identical to the desiderative (§9.4) is sometimes found preceding negative \textit{nga-} (78, 79). The fact that it is only attested in the written material and was not spontaneously offered suggests that the employment of this prefix constitutes a case of stylistic variation.

(78) \text{\textbf{įnga a-agiilwe fi-mo a-lr-nga-asim-aga bwila,}}
\text{\textit{if/when 1-lack.pfv 8-one 1-?-NEG.SUBJ-borrow-ipfv always}}
\text{\textit{iijuul-ege ʊ-kʊ-fi-lond-a}}
\text{\textit{1-work_hard-ipfv subj aug-15-8-search-fv}}
\text{‘If he lacks something, he should not always borrow, he should try hard to get them.’ [Types of tools in the home]}

(79) \text{\textbf{ijolo ɲ-dw-iho lw-a ba-Nyakyusaha ba-a-ңr}}
\text{\textit{old_times 18-11-custom 11-ASSOC 2-Ny. 2-pst-cop}}
\text{\textit{na=a-ka-jɪl ū-kʊ-n-til-a}}
\text{\textit{com=aug-12-custom 12-ASSOC 1-woman aug-15-1-fear-fv}}
\text{\textit{ʊ-gwise gw-a ɲ-dzume, ʊ-jʊ ṭʊ-kʊ-tɪ}}
\text{\textit{aug-his_father(1) 1-ASSOC 1-husband, aug-prox.1 1pl-prs-say}}
\text{\textit{n-kamwana.}}
\text{\textit{1-in_law}}
\text{‘Long ago in the tradition of the Nyakyusa people they had a custom of the woman fearing the father of her husband, whom we call Nkamwana.’}

\(^{10}\text{Schumann (1899: 34), concerning the negative subjunctive, observes that -\textit{aga} “is very common with this form” (translated from the original German, BP). According to Nurse (1979), with verbs of movement in the imperative as well as with its negative counterpart -\textit{aga} is obligatory; however, this could not be confirmed. Mwangoka & Voorhoeve (1960c) states that -\textit{aga} is obligatory in the negative subjunctive, but this is contradicted by the data, see i.a (73) above.}
9 Mood and modal categories

mpaka pa-la linga a-m-bonwile ṭokuti a-li-ngu-a-ŋi-tiil-aŋa until 16-dist if/when 1-1-pay_off.PFV COMP 1-?NEG.SUBJ-1-fear-IPFV

'Until the moment that he has paid her off so that she need not fear him any more.' [Should she save a life...]

9.4 Desiderative

The desiderative construction consists of a prefix *li*- and the final vowel -*a*.

(80) *tolijoba* ‘we’d like to speak’

The desiderative is hardly attested at all in the text corpus. Much of the following discussion is therefore based on elicitation. As the label *desiderative* and example (80) above suggest, this construction expresses a desire or preference for a state-of-affairs. Discussions of modality in language have come to include a concept of *bouletic* (also *boulemaic*) modality, which concerns “what is possible or necessary, given a person’s desires” (von Fintel 2006: 2), or, as Nuyts (2005: 12) puts it, “indicates the degree of the speaker’s (or someone else’s) liking or disliking of the state of affairs”. This type of modality to all appearances lies at the semantic core of the desiderative construction.11 In this the desiderative – like the subjunctive, with which some overlaps on the paradigmatic level are found (see below) – is confined to states-of-affairs that are not actualized.

In declaratives sentences with a first or second person subject, the desiderative expresses the speaker’s desire or preference. Thus the first person singular desiderative in (81) denotes the speaker’s preference for a future act of his/her own, while in (82) the speaker desires that the act be performed by the hearer, the second person singular subject. For examples of the first and second person plural respectively, see (83, 84) below.

(81) n-dr-syal-a pa-ka-aja 1SG-DESDTV-remain-FV 16-12-homestead

‘I’d rather stay at home (e.g. than join you in your activity).’ [ET]

11Interestingly, for Nyika M23, spoken northwest of Nyakyusa, and Nyikas’s western neighbour Namwanga M22 Busse (1940: 70; 1960: 45) gives a future prefix *li*-. Malila M24, according to Kutsch Lojenga (2007: 85), has a future prefix *li(t)*-. Given the well-known path of grammaticalization from desire to future (Bybee et al. 1994), these prefixes might have a common source.
9.4 Desiderative

(82) ũ-lr-tem-a=po ii-bifu r-li
2SG-DESDT-V-2PL-cut-FV=PART 5-banana AUG-PROX.5
‘I would like you to [i.e. please] cut off this banana.’ [ET]

The preceding example (82) represents the most common use of the desiderative, namely in polite requests. In fact, it is only in this use that the desiderative was spontaneously offered during elicitation sessions. Polite requests are also the only use attested in older text collections, as well as in a recent draft of a Bible translation. The following two examples will illustrate this (orthography adapted):^{12}

(83) Context: Children see guineafowls scarifying each other.

mwe ma-kanga ũ-mwe, mu-lr-to-tem-a=po nuuswe
2PL 6-guineafowl AUG-2PL 2PL-DESDT-V-cut-FV=PART COM.1PL
‘You guineafowls, please cut us a bit, too.’ (Berger 1933: 116)

(84) Context: A group of children are looking for a place to spend the night. They call at a stranger’s house.

ũ-n-kangale a-a-t-ile: “eena, mu-gon-ile! mwe ba-ani?”
AUG-1-old 1-PST-say-PFV yes 2PL-rest-PFV 2PL 2-who
a-ba-anike ba-a-t-ile: “jo ũ-swe, tʊ-sob-ile
AUG-2-young_person 2-PST-say-PFV REF.1 AUG-1PL 1PL-be_lost.PFV
1-n-jila j-ɪɪtʊ, to-lr-gon-a=mo”
AUG-9-path 9-POS.1PL 1PL-DESDT-V-rest-FV=18
‘The old woman said: “Hello! Who are you?” The children said: “It’s us, we’ve lost our way and would like to sleep.”’ (Berger 1933: 137)

During discussions of examples such as (82 – 84), the language assistants remarked on various occasions that a request formulated in the desiderative specifically leaves the choice to the hearer, who may accept or decline. Similarly, in hortatives the desiderative is considered more of a suggestion (85a) than the subjunctive, which has a stronger character of a prompt or appeal (85b).

(85) a. tu-lr-ly-a=mo
1PL-DESDT-V-eat-FV=some
‘I’d like us to eat something.’ [ET]

^{12} mugonile ‘lit. you (pl.) have rested’, as in (84), sg. ogonile is the most common greeting formula amongst the Nyakyusa people.
9 Mood and modal categories

b. ʊ-ly-e=mo
1PL-eat-SUBJ=some
‘Let’s eat something!’ [ET]

With third person subjects, the interpretation depends on context and co-text. With a non-agentive subject the issuer of the modality is the speaker (86). With an agentive subject both the speaker and the subject are available as the source of the desire or preference (87).

(86) ʊ-mw-enda ʊ-gʊ ɡʊ-lr-j-a mw-elu
AUG-3-cloth AUG-PROX.3 3-DESDTV-be(come)-FV 3-white
‘I’d prefer it if this cloth were white.’ [ET]

(87) ʊ-ng’ombe si-lr-jong-a
AUG-cow(10) 10-DESDTV-run_away-FV
1. ‘The cows would like to escape (uttered e.g. as a warning).’
2. ‘I wish that the cows would run away (e.g. malicious thinking).’ [ET]

In questions with a first or second person subject, the modal assessment shifts to the hearer (see Lehmann 2012 on the role of the modal assessor). With a first person subject, this is typically understood as a request for approval, as in (88). Likewise in (89) – the sole token of the desiderative in the text corpus – Hare asks Hippo whether the latter likes or dislikes the plan of visiting girls in town. Also note the paraphrasing in the last clause. With a second person as the subject, the desiderative in questions is often understood as a request (90).

(88) Context: parent to child.
ka-kam-e ʊ-ng’ombe! n-dr-kin-a=po taasi ʊ-m-pila?
 ITV-milk-SUBJ AUG-cow(10) 1SG-DESDTV-play=FV=PART yet AUG-3-ball
‘Go milk the cows!’ – ‘May I first play football for a bit?’ [ET]

(89) gw-tu n-ka-aja ka-la ba-a-li=ko a-ba-lmdwana a-ba-nunu
1-POSS.1PL 18-12-village 12-DIST 2-PST-COP=17 AUG-2-girl AUG-2-good
fiijo. aa=tu-lr-jaat-a=ko?
INTENS FUT=1PL-DESDTV-walk-FV=17
‘Friend, in that town there were very beautiful girls. Should we go and visit them?’

m-ba-bʊl-ile ūkuti a=n-gw-is-a n=ʊ-m-manyaani gw-angʊ.
1SG-2-tell-PFV COMP FUT=1SG-PRS-COME-FV COM=AUG-1-friend 1-POSS.SG
bole gw-igan-ile  ukutu tu-booek-e  tw-esa?
Q 2SG-like-PFV COMP 1PL-go-SUBJ 1PL-all
‘I have told them that I will come with my friend. Hey, would you like it, if we both go?’ [Hare and Hippo]

(90) ʊ-lɪ-m-b-a=ko  r-fi-ndʊ?
2SG-DESDTV-1SG-give-FV=17 AUG-8-food
‘Will you give us food?’ [ET]

In questions with a third person subject, as with declaratives, the source of the modality may be either the hearer or the subject:

(91) a-ba-ndʊ ba-la ba-l-ingil-a n-nyumba?
AUG-2-person 2-DIST 2-DESDTV-enter-FV 18-house
1. ‘Do you wish that those people go inside?’
2. ‘Will those people go inside?’[ET]

The desiderative can take the imperfective suffix -aga. This can be used to add a continuous reading, which can shade into an emphatic one (92). It is also used to express a desire or preference for a regular/habitual occurrence. (93).

(92) tu-lr-bʊʊk-aga
1PL-DESDTV-go-IPFV
‘I’d like us to get going.’ [ET]

(93) ʊ-lɪ-m-b-aga  r-fi-ngʊ  kʊkʊtɪ ii-siku
2SG-DESDTV-1SG-give-IPFV AUG-8-food every 5-day
‘I’d like you to give me food every day.’ [ET]

The desiderative can also be augmented by the distal/itive prefix ka- (§9.3.3), in which case the quality of the final vowel changes to -e, as is the case in the subjunctive.13

(94) ʊ-lɪ-k-iigʊl-े
2SG-DESDTV-ITV-open-FV
‘Please go open the door.’ [ET]

Unlike the subjunctive, the affirmative desiderative is excluded from subordinate clauses:

13One might take this as evidence for a circumfix ka-⋯-e, as Nicolle (2002) assumes for Digo E72.
9 Mood and modal categories

(95) * n-aal-ŋ-dagiile ʊkʊtr a-lr-jeng-a n-nyumba
1SG-PST-1-order.PFV COMP 1-DSDTV-build-FV AUG-house(9)
(intended: ‘I told him/her to please build a house.’)

(96) * n-gʊ-lond-a ʊkʊtr ʊ-l-iigʊl-a ʊ-lw-igi
1SG-PRS-want.FV COMP 2SG-DSDTV-open-FV AUG-11-door
(intended: ‘I wish you to please open the door.’)

(97) * n-aal-m-peele 1-n-dalama ʊkʊtr a-ly-ʊl-a 1-fi-ndʊ
1SG-PST-1-give.PFV AUG-10-money COMP 1-DSDTV-buy-FV AUG-8-food
(intended: ‘I gave him money so that he could buy food.’)

(98) * kyajɪpo / paakipo / kanunu tʊ-l-ɪɪ村落
better preferable well 1PL-DESDV-go-FV
(intended: ‘It is better/preferable/good that we go.’)

Lastly, the desiderative is negated with the negative counterpart to the subjunctive, which is discussed in (§9.3.4).

9.5 Modal future

The last modal paradigm to be discussed constitutes an interesting case of constructionalization. As the simple present (§6.5.1), in the affirmative it is formed with a subject prefix from the second series (§3.3.2) and a prefix kʊ-, while the negative consists of a subject prefix from the first series and the negative prefix ti- preceding kʊ-. Unlike the simple present, however, the final slot is filled by the imperfective suffix -aga and its allomorphs; see §6.4.1.

In contrast with what would be expected from the composition of this construction, it cannot have a present continuous or habitual/generic reading. Instead it expresses a future-oriented type of modality. The same situation is found in neighbouring Kinga G65 and Vwanji G66 (Eaton, to appear). The following example illustrates this:

(99) tʊ-kʊ-ly-aga ʊ-m-ʊŋʊga
1PL-PRS-eat-IPFV AUG-1-rice
‘We shall eat rice. (e.g. announcing the next meal or a change in diet)’
not: ‘We are eating rice.’
not: ‘We eat rice.’ [ET]
9.5 Modal future

This construction, which will be labelled modal future throughout this study, depicts a future state-of-affairs as a settled fact; that is, it expresses various kinds of modal necessity.

While this semantics may at first seem odd given the composition of the modal future, this apparent mismatch of form and function may be explained by taking a comparative and diachronic perspective. In various languages of the wider area, e.g. the Tanzanian variety of neighbouring Ndali (Swilla 1998), Kisi G67 (Gray n.d.) and Malila M24 (Helen Eaton, p.c.) the imperfective suffix -aga narrows down the possible readings of the simple present to an explicitly habitual one. As Ziegeler (2006: 21) states, habitual or generic aspect – note that not all authors distinguish between these two, and while some consider habituality a special case of genericity, others use the terms interchangeably – is a “prime candidate for [...] categories residing on the aspect-modality interface”; see also Givón (1994). In formal semantics, generic sentences are commonly understood as law-like generalizations about the most normal cases (Krifka et al. 1995), a qualification necessary to account for the possibility of exceptions. Stating such a regularity implies a prediction that, all things being normal, the eventuality in question will continue to occur in the future. A similar observation has been made by Brinton (1988: 140f). Assuming that at an earlier stage the situation in Nyakyusa paralleled the one found in Tanzanian Ndali, Kisi and Malila, the present-day semantics of the modal future can be understood as the semanticization of this future-oriented implicature. For a more detailed elaboration of this reconstruction see Persohn (2016).

A verbal construction with a number of striking functional similarities is found in Yucatec Maya he...-e’. Lehmann (2012) calls this a “commissive modality” construction, while Bohnemeyer (2002) speaks of “assurative”. As both these labels feature notions which rather belong to the realm of pragmatics, the more neutral, albeit vague label modal future is preferred.

The following exposition of its uses will illustrate the meaning of the modal future. To begin with, the modal future is employed in generic contexts to depict consequences and sequences of eventualities. In (100), an excerpt from an expository text is given. The modal future construction is found to express determined consequences of specific behaviour in (100a, 100f, 100g). In (100d) it is used to depict the next step in a series of acts.

(100)  Context: Discussing men who do not own tools.
   a. kʊʊ-nongwa ɪ-jo  lɪnga ʊ-n-nyambala a-bagiile
       17-issue  aug-ref.9 if/when aug-1-man 1-be_able.pfv
Because of this, if a man is unable to get a woman to marry, people (will) think that this person is lazy in doing work.

People like those go to borrow tools to do work with, when their fellows are resting.

When they have given him tools, he cannot work with them for a long time.

Or when he has worked for a little while, you will find they have come to take them back.

You cannot refuse, because they are not yours, you return them.
9.5 Modal future

\textbf{bi-ku-kw-im-aga} \quad \text{bwila}

2-MOD.FUT-2SG-deprive-MOD.FUT always

‘If you delay in returning, they will withhold them always.’

g. \text{po} \quad \text{ko-kobilw-aga} \quad \text{n=i-n-jala}

then 2SG.MOD.FUT-suffer-MOD.FUT COM=AUG-9-hunger

\text{n=ʊ-ku-j-a} \quad \text{n-kunwe bwila}

\text{COM=AUG-15-be(come)-FV} \; 1\text{-poor} \; \text{always}

‘And so you will be troubled by hunger and always be poor.’ [Types of tools in the home]

As was observed earlier, the modal future does not allow for a timeless reading. Likewise, it is infelicitous in contexts expressing scheduled eventualities (101, 102). (101) could however be said of a new train that does not yet run but is announced to leave in the afternoon. Likewise, (102) is felicitous as a resolution about a new work schedule.

(101) Context: According to schedule.
\#ii-treni \quad \text{li-kʊ-sook-anga=po} \quad \text{pa-muu-si}

5-train(<SWA) 5-MOD.FUT-leave-MOD.FUT=16 16-3-daytime

(intended: ‘The train leaves in the afternoon.’)

(102) Context: According to contract.
\#pa-ki-tatu \quad \text{tʊ-ti-kʊ-bomb-aga} \quad \text{i-m-bombo}

16-7-three 1PL-NEG-MOD.FUT-work-MOD.FUT AUG-9-work

(intended: ‘We do not work this Wednesday/on Wednesdays.’)

Closely related to the preceding examples, the modal future is very common in commissive speech acts. These are utterances which “commit the speaker to a certain cause of events” (Austin 1962: 156). The following examples illustrate prototypical cases: (103) features a promise, (104) an assurance and (105) an announcement. In all of these the speaker vouches that the future state-of-affairs will occur.

(103) Context: A girl has eloped with a man. Her father has tracked them down.
\text{taata} \; \text{ʊ-ne} \; \text{nalooli} \; \text{i-fy-ʊm-a} \; \text{n-gaali} \; \text{n-ga-kab-a}

father AUG-1SG really AUG-8-bride_price 1SG-PERS 1SG-NEG-get-FV

\text{iɪ-sala} \; \text{i-ji.} \; \text{looli} \; \text{n-gw-i-pʊul-aga.}

AUG-hour(9) AUG-PROX.9 but 1SG-MOD.FUT-REFL-thresh-MOD.FUT

295
9 Mood and modal categories

n-gʊ-homb-a i-fy-ʊma fi-la bo ʊlu n-iiitike
ISG-PRS-pay-FV AUG-8-bride_price 8-DIST as now 1SG-agree.PFV
m-ба-ndʊ
18-2-person

'Father [honorific], I still haven’t obtained the brideprice. But I’ll go after it. I’m paying that brideprice, just as I’ve now agreed to in front of people.’ [Man and his in-law]

(104) Context: Hare and Spider want to climb up a tree.

looli kalʊlʊ a-ka-a-meenye ʊ-ku-kwel-a m-mwanya,
but hare(1) 1-NEG-PST-know.PFV AUG-15-climb 18-up
a-linkʊ-ku-bʊol-a ʊ-ku-bʊbi a-linkʊ-ti “ʊ-ne n-ga-many-a
1-NARR-11-tell-FV AUG-11-spider 1-NARR-say AUG-1SG 1SG-NEG-know-FV
ʊ-ku-kuwel-a m-mwanya”
AUG-15-climb-FV 18-up

‘But Hare could not climb up there, he told Spider “I can’t climb up there.”

AUG-11-spider 11-NARR-speak-FV COMP 2SG-NEG.SUBJ-worry-IPFV
ʊ-ne n-di na=bo ʊ-bʊ-ʊsɪ ʊ-Bo
AUG-1SG 1SG-COP COM=REF.14 AUG-14-thread AUG-PROX.14
bʊ-ku-n-dwal-a ʊ-ne, mo
14-PRS-1SG-carry-FV AUG-1SG REF.18
kw-end-anga-mo nungwe”
2SG.MOD.FUT-walk/travel-MOD.FUT=18 COM.2SG

Spider said “Don’t worry. I have a thread that carries me, you too will go on it.” [Hare and Spider]

(105) Context: Elephant, in his function as the eldest of animals, has called a meeting.

nɨ-sofu ji-linkʊ-ti “lɪlmo
AUG-elephant(9) 9-NARR-say now/today
tʊ-ko-ku-be-keet-aga kalʊlʊ n=ʊ-lw-ifi
1PL.MOD.FUT-2-watch-MOD.FUT hare(1) COM=AUG-11-chameleon
bɪ-ku-j-a pa-ku-tol-an-a ʊ-lʊ-bɪlo”
2-PRS-be(come)-FV 16-15-win-RECP-FV AUG-11-race

‘Elephant said “Today we shall see how Hare and Chameleon are going to compete in a race.”’ [Hare and Chameleon]
The modal future is also found with a certain directive force. This use is especially common when describing the target procedure of a plan involving the hearer, as in the following example:

(106) Context: Tortoise explains to his child how to make Monkey believe he is absent.

Then AUG-PROX.16 1SG-stay.PFV then FUT=1SG-PRS-REFL-alter.CAUS-FV

a-ma-lʊndi gi-kʊ-keet-a kʊ-mwanya. po ñ-gwe

AUG-6-leg 6-PRS-watch-FV 17-high then AUG-2SG

kʊ-lʊnd-a ii-bwe, kʊ-kol-a. kʊ-brɪk-a

2SG.PRS-search-FV 5-stone 2SG.PRS-grasp/hold-FV 2SG.PRS-put-FV

r-fi-lombe pa-mwanya pa-my-angu.

AUG-8-maize 16-high 16-4-poss.1SG

‘Here I stay, I’ll turn myself over. The legs will look up. You’ll search for a stone and grasp it. You’ll put maize on top of me.’

Then 11-MOD.FUT-resemble-MOD.FUT 11-grindstone then

kʊ-sy-agə

2SG.MOD.FUT-grind-MOD.FUT

‘It’ll resemble a grindstone. Then you shall grind.’ [Monkey and Tortoise]

Interestingly, all tokens of the modal future within interrogatives in the text corpus constitute rhetorical questions. Thus, in (107), the question is raised as to what it is that a woman will necessarily do when she sees her father-in-law in danger of dying and whether this will involve letting him drown. The answers – to help and not let him drown – are implied in the co-text of this behavioural text, which criticizes the tradition of in-law avoidance. In (108) the narrator employs a dramatic ruse by letting the trapped protagonist ask himself if his death in a pit constitutes his inevitable fate, only to let him answer to the contrary with the actions that follow.

(107) Context: Discussing the tradition of in-law avoidance.

lewolə ɪmga ñ-gwise gw-a n-nyambala n-gaala

now/but if/when AUG-his_father(1) 1-ASSOC 1-man 1-drink

bw-alwa kʊ-lo-sako ñ-lo-nunu lɪmga ñ-n-kasi gw-a

14-alcohol 17-11-luck AUG-11-good if/when AUG-1-wife 1-ASSOC

mw-anaake i-kʊ-km̩d-a pa-la ñ-gwise gw-a n-domę

1-his_child 1-PRS-pass-FV 16-DIST AUG-his_father(1) 1-ASSOC 1-husband
Context: Hare has fallen into a pit. He is afraid a man is waiting to kill him.

Hare started to ask himself “Am I to die now in this pit? I can’t. If that’s a person up there I’ll let him kill me.” [he goes on to jump out of the pit] [Saliki and Hare]

In elicitation, the modal future was also accepted in interrogatives when asking the hearer to make a promise, as in (109), the interrogative counterpart to (103) above. In compliance with its semantics of a settled future, it was considered infelicitous when asking for a prediction (110).
9.6 Conditional ngali

A conditional particle ngali serves to introduce the apodosis (consequent clause) of counterfactual conditionals.\textsuperscript{14} The protasis (antecedent) is normally introduced by linga ‘if, when’ and features a past tense verb (111, 112).\textsuperscript{15}

(111) linga n-aa-meenye ngali n-ga-lm-a r-ky-mja
\textbf{if/when 1SG-PST-know.PFV COND 1SG-NEG-farm-FV AUG-7-year r-ki, paapo si-n-gofiifye fiijo i-n-gambilh AUG-PROX.7 because 10-1SG-cause_trouble.PFV INTENS AUG-10-monkey i-si AUG-PROX.10}
‘If I had known, I would not have farmed this year, because these monkeys have very much hurt me.’ [Thieving monkeys]

(112) linga fy-a-li=po r-fi-ndu paa-meesa ngali tʊ-l-iile
\textbf{if/when 8-PST-COP=16 AUG-8-food 16-table(<SWA) COND 1PL-eat-PFV}
‘If there had been food on the table, we would have eaten it.’ [ET]

In this use, conditional ngali can be combined with the future proclitic \textit{aa=} (§8.2). It is as yet unclear how far this changes the meaning of the clause. The following two textual examples, taken from a draft of a Bible translation and HIV prevention materials by SIL International, suggest that the addition of \textit{aa=} emphasizes the dissociation between the unfulfilled condition on the one hand and the divergent reality on the other.

\textsuperscript{14}Some information on conditional clauses is also given in Lusekelo (2016).
\textsuperscript{15}See §6.5.7.3 for another means of introducing counterfactual apodoses.
9 Mood and modal categories

(113) a-ba-ndu a-bo ba-a-fum-ile kʊ-my-tu, looli
AUG-2-person AUG-REF.2 2-PST-come_from-PFV 17-4-POSS.1PL but
ba-ka-a-ɪ b-iimtu, paapo lʊng a-a-ɪ b-ɪiɪti
2-NEG-PST-COP 2-our_companion because if 2-PST-COP 2-believer
b-iimtu a=ngali ṭu-ɪ ṭu=bo,
2-our_companion FUT=COND 1PL-COP COM=REF.2
‘They went out from us, but they were not of us [lit: ...because if they
had been of us they would be with us],’
fyobeene ba-a-tu-lek-ɪle, lʊng a-a-ɪ b-ɪiɪti b-iimtu
therefore 2-PST-1PL-let-PFV if 2-PST-COP 2-believer 2-our_companion
ngali b-a-syele na=nuuswe. looli bo ba-a-sook-ɪle=po
COND 1-PST-remain.PFV COM=COM.1PL but as 2-PST-leave-PFV=16
ba-a-nangisiye ʊkʊtɪ b-oosa ba-ka-a-ɪ b-iimtu=ʊ
2-PST-show.PFV COMP 2-all 2-NEG-PST-COP 2-our_companion
‘but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not
all of us’ [lit: ‘therefore they left us, if they had been believers like us,
they would have remained with us ...’] (1 John 2: 19)

(114) Context: An orphan is speaking.
ngʊ-ba-syʊkw-ə ʃʊba na taata, looli
1SG-PRS-2-miss_sadly-FV my_mother(1) COM my_father(1) but
ngʊ-suʊbil-a ʊkʊtɪ lʊng a-a-j-angɑ=po ʊlu, a=ngali
1SG-PRS-expect-FV COMP if 2-PST-be(come)-IPFV=16 now FUT=COND
bi-kw-i-tuukɪfy-a ʊ-swe
2-PRS-REFL-praise.APL-FV AUG-1PL
‘I miss Mama and Papa, but I think if they were here they would be
proud of us now.’ [Kande’s story]16

Lastly, conditional ngali is also found outside of conditional clauses, again
giving a hypothetical reading:

(115) ngali ɪʊ-kʊ-ly-ə (looli ɪʊ-kaɑli ɪʊ-kʊ-ba-guul-ɪl-a
COND 1PL-PRS-eat-FV but 1PL-PERS 1PL-PRS-2-WAIT-APL
a-ba-heesya)
AUG-2-foreigner
‘We would be eating (but we are still waiting for the guests).’ [ET]

(116) ngali tʊ-l-iile (looli tʊ-kaalɪ tʊ-kʊ-ba-guul-ɪl-a
COND 1PL-eat-PFV but 1PL-PERS 1PL-PRS-2-wait-APPL-FV
a-ba-heesya)
AUG-2-foreigner
‘We would have eaten (but we are still waiting for the guests).’ [ET]
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

10.1 Introduction

In this chapter, a number of verbs and verbal constructions will be discussed, beginning with a description of Nyakyusa’s two copula verbs (§10.2.1). The description will include the syntactic and semantic conditions that govern copula use, copula-based existential constructions and the expression of predicative possession. This is followed by a description of the versatile defective verb ti ‘say’ (§10.3). Lastly, two verbs of motion that have grammaticalized into auxiliaries of (figurative) movement will be examined (§10.4).

10.2 The copulae

10.2.1 Copula verbs

Nyakyusa has two copula verbs: defective lɪ ‘be’ and ja ‘be(come)’. The former must be considered defective because it does not take the default final vowel and only occurs in three paradigms: a zero-marked present, the affirmative past (formed with the prefix a-) and the negative past (formed with the prefixes ka-a-).

(1) a. tw-li bakafu ‘We are healthy.’
    b. tw-a-li bakafu ‘We were healthy.’
    c. tw-ka-a-li bakafu ‘We were not healthy.’

The two copulae are in near complementary distribution: in all contexts other than the three mentioned above, ja is used.¹ This includes the infinitive and the

¹Interestingly, the distribution of the two copulae in principle corresponds to the distribution of the reflexes of Proto-Bantu *bá ‘dwell, be, become’ and *dì ‘be’ in other languages of the Corridor, among them Ndali (Botne 2008: 104). ja most likely stems from a verb of motion *gi ‘go’; note the contextually triggered loss of the consonantal segmental for both the copula and the motion verb (§10.4.1).
Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

Negative counterpart to the present (non-past) copula, which is formed with the negative prefix *ka* and the final vowel *-a*. In this context the consonantal segment often drops out, yielding *kaar* with a long final vowel. Note that stress remains on *kaar* and is not shifted to the new penultimate syllable.

(2) *tokaja bakafu ~ tokaa bakafu* ‘We are not healthy.’

Further, *ja* is used in the present and past for generic statements:

(3) *i-n-gambili i-si, boo=bo-no si-ku-j-a*
AUG-10-monkey AUG-PROX.10 REF.14=14-DEM 10-PRS-be(come)-FV
‘These monkeys, this is how they are!’ [Thieving monkeys]

(4) *ba-a-kitik-aga i-m-banda pi-nunu i-n-golofu*
2-PST-stick_in_ground-IPFV AUG-9-POST AUG-good(9) AUG-9-straight
pa-kati paa-nyumba, i-j-aa kw-im-a=po o-n-taliko.
16-middle 16-house(9), AUG-9-ASSOC 15-stand/stop-FV=16 AUG-3-beam
lînga pi-nyumba nywamu j-aa-j-aga n=i-m-banda
if/when AUG-house(9) big(9) 9-PST-be(come)-IPFV COM=AUG-10-post
i-bîlti pamo i-tatû
10-two or 10-three
‘They would erect a good straight post in the middle of the house, on which lay the ridge pole. If the house was big, it would have two or three posts.’ [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]

Note that the use of *ja* is obligatory for future time reference; that is, the unmarked present of *lî* cannot normally be used as a futurate:

(5) *kî-laabo a-lî ku-Tukuju*
7-tomorrow 1-COP 17-T.
(intended: ‘Tomorrow he will be at Tukuyu.’)

There is one exception, however: copula *lî* is licensed with reference to the future if a temporal anchor is introduced by a stressed form of the augmentless class 14 referential demonstrative *bo* (6); see §10.2.4 for the expression of predicative possession through the use of the copula plus the comitative *na*. Likewise, a zero copula (see §10.2.2) is attested in this environment with reference to a future/hypothetical state-of-affairs (7). See p. 159 in §6.5.3.1 for a comparable case with the present perfective.
10.2 The copulae

(6) l nga fi-kind-ile 1-fy-mja a-ma-longo ma-bihr, n-nyumba sy-osa 
if/when 8-pass-PFV AUG-8-year AUG-6-year 6-two AUG-house(10) 10-all 
n-ka-aja a-ka bo si-lr n=ʊ-bʊ-meme 
18-12-homestead AUG-PROX.12 as 10-COP COM=AUG-14-electricity(<SWA) 
‘In twenty years, all houses in this village will have electricity.’ [ET]

(7) l nga mu-sob-iisye, bo lw-inʊ 
if/when 2PL-be_lost-CAUS.PFV as 11-poss.2pl 
‘If you lose it, grief will be yours.’ [Chickens and Crow]

10.2.2 Copula use

As described in the previous section, the choice between the two copula verbs 
li and ja depends mainly on temporal reference and polarity. In the affirmati- 
tive present (non-past), certain environments further license a zero copula or 
copulative use of the augmentless substitutives (§2.3.3); see Stassen (2005) for a 
discussion of the term zero copula.

With third person (noun class) subjects, nominal predication without any overt 
linking element is the common case (8a, 8b). The predicate never carries an aug- 
ment. An augmentless substitutive may be added, which seems to be related 
to focus (8c). Note that copulative use of the substitutive also features in cleft 
sentences; see e.g. (43; p. 49) and (46; p. 313).

(8) a. ʊ-m-piki n-nywamu 
AUG-3-tree 3-big 
‘The tree is big.’ [ET]

b. i-mi-piki mi-nywamu 
AUG-4-tree 4-big 
‘The trees are big.’ [ET]

c. i-mi-piki i-gi gy o mi-nywamu 
AUG-4-tree AUG-PROX.4 REF.4 4-big 
‘These trees, they are big.’ [ET]

Associatives and possessives are also normally used without an overt copula:

(9) gw-a ba-palamaani 
3-ASSOC 2-neighbour 
‘It (the tree) is the neighbours’.’ [ET]
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(10) \( gw\)-ang\(\ddot{o} \)

3-poss.1sg

'It (the tree) is mine.' [ET]

With certain types of predicates, however, the use of a copula verb is obligatory even with noun class subjects in the affirmative present. In some of these, an augmentless substitutive may replace the copula. First, numerals require either the copula or the augmentless substitutive:

(11) a. a-ba-ana ba-bil\(\ddot{r}\)
AUG-2-child 2-two

‘two children’ not: ‘The children are two.’

b. a-ba-ana ba-\(\ddot{r}\) ba-bil\(\ddot{r}\)
AUG-2-child 2-COP 2-two

‘The children are two.’

c. a-ba-ana bo ba-bil\(\ddot{r}\)
AUG-2-child REF.2 2-two

‘The children are two.’

Note that this does not hold for the quantifiers nand\(\ddot{i} \) ‘little, few’ and ing\(i \) ‘much, many’, which are treated as nominals:

(12) \( \ddot{u}\)-lw-\(\ddot{i}\)si \( \ddot{u}\)-\(\ddot{l}\) lo-sisya. a-m-\(\ddot{u}\)si ma-tiit\(\ddot{u}\) kang\(\ddot{i} \)
AUG-11-river AUG-PROX.1 11-frightening AUG-6-water 6-black again
i-n-gwina ny-ing\(i \)
AUG-10-crocodile 10-many

‘This river is frightening. The water is dark and the crocodiles are many.’
[ET]

(13) \( \ddot{u}\)-n-tondolo mw-\(\ddot{i}\)ngi, leelo a-ba-tondol-\(i\) ba-nand\(\ddot{r} \)
AUG-3-harvest 3-many now/but AUG-2-harvest-AGNR 2-little

‘The harvest truly is great, but the labourers are few.’ (Luke 10: 2)

When adverbials (14, 15) or ideophones (16, 17) are used predicatively, use of a copula verb is compulsory.

(14) a. \( \ddot{u}\)-mw-ana a-\(\ddot{r}\) nnoono
AUG-1-child 1-COP so_much

‘The child is too much.’

b. * \( \ddot{u}\)mwana jo nnoono

c. * \( \ddot{u}\)mwana nnoono
10.2 The copulae

(15) a. r-m-bwa jî-lî kanunu
     Aug-9-dog 9-cop well
     ‘The dog is fine.’

     b. * imbwa jo kanunu

     c. * imbwa kanunu

(16) a. n-nyumba mu-lî kée
     18-house(9) 18-cop vast
     ‘The house is empty.’

     b. * nnyumba mo kée

     c. * nnyumba kée

(17) a. r-my-enda gî-lî swée
     Aug-4-cloth 4-cop intense_white
     ‘The clothes are white.’

     b. * imyenda gyo swée

     c. * imyenda swée

 Locative predicates also require a copula verb (18). This includes locative question words (19). (20) illustrates that the locative semantics are responsible for this rather than belonging to one of the locative noun classes.

(18) a. ū-mw-ana a-lî mu-m-piki
     Aug-1-child 1-cop 18-3-tree
     ‘The child is in a/the tree.’

     b. * umwana jo mumpiki

     c. * umwana mumpiki

(19) a. ū-mw-ana a-lî kʊʊgʊ / pooki / mooki?
     Aug-1-child 1-cop where(17) where(16) where(18)
     ‘Where / Wherein is the child?’

     b. * umwana jo kʊʊgʊ / pooki / mooki?

     c. * umwana kʊʊgʊ / pooki / mooki?

(20) a. ū-mw-ana a-lî kɪfuki n=ʊ-m-piki
     Aug-1-child 1-cop near com=Aug-3-tree
     ‘The child is near the tree.’

2 This sentence would be acceptable with the meaning ‘This dog’s name is Kanunu.’
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

b. * ŋmwana jo kɪfuki nʊmpiki
   c. * ŋmwana kɪfuki nʊmpiki

With first and second person subjects, the use of either the copula or a substitutive is obligatory for nominal predicates in the affirmative present. (21–23) illustrate this for the second person singular. With other types of predicates, the same regularities as for noun class subjects hold.

(21) (ʊ-gwe) ʊ-ˈlɪ n-nandɪ
AUG-2SG 2SG-COP 1-small
‘You are small.’

(22) (ʊ-gwe) gwe n-nandɪ
AUG-2SG 2SG 1-small
‘You are small.’

(23) * ŋ-gwe n-nandɪ
AUG-2SG 1-small

Lastly, the copula also forms a compulsory part of existential constructions and expressions of predicative possession, which are the topics of the following sections.

10.2.3 Existential construction

The presence or existence of an entity is expressed by a copula plus a locative enclitic. With the copula ˈlɪ, the vowel segment is raised to /i/. Noun class 16 po expresses proximity to the deictic centre or more definite locations, class 17 ko distance from the deictic centre or general existence and class 18 mo inside locations.

(24) ga-a-li=po a-ma-syabala, sy-a-li=po t-n-jʊgʊs.
6-PST-COP=16 AUG-6-groundnut 10-PST-COP=16 AUG-10-jugo_cop
ba-a-li=po baa-mwembe, ga-a-li=po a-m-ungu. fy-osa
2-PST-COP=16 2-mango 6-PST-COP=16 AUG-6-pumpkin 8-all
fy-a-li=po pa-ka-aja pa-n-gambɪlɪ
8-PST-COP=16 16-12-home 16-9-monkey
‘There were groundnuts, there were jugo beans. There were mangoes, there were pumpkins. There was all sorts of food at Monkey’s’ [Monkey and Tortoise]
10.2 The copulae

(25) ji-kʊ-tɪ bo m-fw-ile ṭ-ne linga ga-kɪnd-ile a-ma-sikʊ 9-prs-say as 1sg-die-pfv aug-1sg if/when 6-pass-pfv aug-6-day ma-nandɪ.
6-little
‘It says I’m dead when few days have passed.’

po lilɪno n-gɑ-bʊk-aga kʊkʊtɪ na=a-ma-jolo then now/today 1sg-mod.fut-go-mod.fut every com=aug-6-evening ku=no i-m-bʊkʊtʊ ji-lambaleele kʊ-kʊ-ji-bʊʊl-a ukʊtɪ ṭ-ne 17-prox aug-9-ear 9-lie_down-pfv 17-15-9-tell-fv comp aug-1sg n-gaalɪ n-dɪ=ko, n-di n=ʊ-bʊ-ʊmi” 1sg-pers 1sg-cop=17 1sg-cop com=aug-14-live
‘So now I shall go every evening when Ear has laid down, to tell it “I’m still around, I’m alive.”’ [Mosquito and Ear]

When the copula is negated, non-existence or absence is expressed:

(26) i-kʊ-suluk-a paa-si mu-m-piki n=ʊ-kʊ-keet-a ukʊtɪ 1-prs-descend-fv 16-below 18-3-tree com=aug-15-watch-fv cmpl ki-kapʊ ki-mo ki-ka-j-a=po 7-basket 7-one 7-neg-be(come)-fv=16
‘He climbs down the tree and sees that one basket is missing.’ [Elisha Pear Story]

(27) ka-a-li=ko a-ka-aja ka-mo a-ka a-m-ɪɪsi 12-pst-cop=17 aug-12-village 12-one aug-prox.12 aug-6-water ga-ka-a-li=mo 6-neg-pst-cop=18
‘There was a village in which there was no water.’ [Water and toads]

When locative marking on the copula co-occurs with an overt locative noun phrase, both often reference the same locative noun class (28), but mixing of two locative classes is also found (29).

(28) a-ma-keeke ga-a-li=mo m-ingi mw-ene mw-i-tengele aug-6-type_of_grass 6-pst-cop=18 6-many 18-only 18-5-bush r-ly-a n-ky-amba Rungwe aug-5-assoc 18-7-mountain R.
‘There was a lot of a certain type of grass only in the bush on mount Rungwe.’ [Nyakyusa houses of long ago]
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(29) n-k-iisʊ kr-mo, a-a-li=ko Ṽ-malafyale ju-mo. i-n-gamu j-aake
18-7-land 7-one 1-PST-COP=17 AUG-chief(1) 1-one AUG-9-name 9-POSS.SG
a-a-li jo Kapyungu
1-PST-COP REF.1 K.

In some land there was a chief. His name was Kapyungu.' [Chief
Kapyungu]

Note that in examples (24–29) the grammatical subject follows the existential
copula. This is a common presentational construction. In fact, (27, 29) are typical
of the orientation sections of Nyakyusa narratives.

10.2.4 Expression of predicative possession

Ownership is expressed by using the copula together with an enclitic form of the
comitative \( na \) on the possessee.

(30) Ṽ-malafyale Ṽ-ju a-a-li n=1-fi-panga fi-tatʊ
AUG-chief(1) AUG-PROX.1 1-PST-COP COM=AUG-8-village 8-three

This chief had three villages.' [Chief Kapyungu]

(31) lɪnga Ṽ-ka-j-a n=ʊ-bʊ-jo bw-a
if/when 2SG-NEG-be(come)-FV COM=AUG-14-place 14-ASSOC
ku-gon-a=mo ku-gon-a muu-nyumba r-sy-a ku-pang-a
15-sleep-FV=18 2SG.PRS-sleep-FV 18-house(9) AUG-10-ASSOC 15-rent-FV

If you do not have a place to sleep in, you sleep in a rented house.' [How
to build modern houses]

Typically, the noun expressing the possessee carries the augment, though use
without the augment was also encountered:

(32) n-ga-a na=m-bombo, n-ga-a
1SG-NEG.be(come)-FV COM=9-work 1SG-NEG.be(come)-FV
na=heela
COM=money(10)

I don’t have a job, I don’t have money.' [overheard]

The possessee can be referred to by a referential demonstrative without the
augment. This is the case with anaphoric reference (33). The referential demon-
strative can also be used cataphorically together with the overt noun phase it in-
dexes (34).
10.3 tɪ ‘say; think; do like’

The verb tɪ ‘say’ must be considered defective for a number of reasons. First, its stem does not carry the final vowel -a. Consequently, it does not change its shape in the subjunctive. In other respects, its vocalic segment, however, behaves much like the final vowel of regular verbs: in the imperfective tɪ takes the shape tɪgɪ, resembling the -VCV shape of the regular imperfective suffix (see §6.4.1). Second, the vocalic segment is dropped when perfective -ile is suffixed, yielding tile (not *tiile). Last, tɪ does not accept any derivational suffixes.

For reasons of space and convenience, tɪ is glossed as ‘say’ throughout this study. However, as the following discussion will show, this versatile verb shows uses and functions that go far beyond that of a simple verb of speech. Güldemann (2000) convincingly argues that the use of tɪ as a verb of speech across Bantu has arisen out of a more abstract cataphoric function.

Its use as a verb of speech is illustrated in (35). To render speech or sound with verbs other than tɪ itself, a form of tɪ, either the infinitive (36) or an inflected verb in a chaining construction (37), is also required.
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(35) po ly-a-t-ile “n-gʊ-lond-a ɪ-sindaano j-āngō” then 5-PST-say-PFV 1SG-PRS-want-PVF AUG-needle(<SWA)(9) 9-POSS.1SG
'It [Crow] said “I want my needle.”' [Chickens and Crow]

(36) a-lnkʊ-ba-bʊʊl-a a-ba-ndʊ o-kʊ-ti
1-NARR-2-tell-PVF AUG-2-person AUG-15-say
'He told the people:' [Chief Kapyungu]

(37) kalʊlʊ hare(1) a-lnkw-amul-a kʊ-m-manyaani gw-ake a-lnko-ti
hare(1) 1-NARR-answer-PVF 17-1-friend 1-POSS.SG 1-NARR-say
'Hare answered to his friend:' [Hare and Chameleon]

The only attested examples in the corpus of illocutionary verbs of speech without a form of tt are sections of narratives that move to drama; see p. 193 in §6.7.1. Apart from speech in the strict sense, tt is also used for rendering inner speech or thought:

(38) ngɪmba mu-n-dumbula i-kʊ-ti “n-gʊ-tosiisye”
behold 18-9-heart 1-PRS-say 1SG-2SG-pay_back.PFV
‘But in his heart he [Skunk] is thinking “I’ve paid you back.”’ [Hare and Skunk]

(39) i-m-bwa ji-lnkʊ-j-a n-galɪ fiijo, j-aa-tɪɡɪ pamo
AUG-9-dog 9-NARR-be(comе)-PFV 9-strict INTENS 9-PST-say-IPFV perhaps
1-li-paatama li-kʊ-j-a pa-kʊ-pok-a ɪ-n-nyama
AUG-5-cheetah 5-PRS-be(comе)-PFV 16-15-plunder-PFV AUG-meat(9)
j-aake
9-POSS.SG
‘The dog became very angry, it was thinking that maybe the cheetah would seize his meat.’ [Dogs laughed at each other]

The verb tt also serves to introduce ideophones. All cases in the data feature onomatopoeia. It is unclear if this is a restriction on the use of tt or an artefact of the data at hand.

(40) ŋ-gw-a ɪ-ʈ-bɪlɪ a-a-łʊ-kol-ile ŋ-lw-igi m-ma-ka
AUG-2-ASSOC 7-two 1-PST-11-grasp/hold-PFV AUG-11-door 18-6-strength
ma-tupu. looli j-oope kw-a-lil-ile kw-a-t-ile “káa”
6-sudden but 1-also 17-PST-cry-PFV 17-PST-say-PFV of_sickle_swinging
‘The second one grabbed the door with all his strength. But also with him, there was the sound “káa!” [of a sickle swinging]’ [Wage of the thieves]
The subjunctive (§9.3) of tɪ ‘say; think; do like’ is formed by prefixing the subject prefix, without any change in the final vowel (41). When the interrogative bole ‘how’ follows tɪ, they optionally merge into one word, with the vocalic segment of the verb assimilating (42). The imperfective suffix in this case is attached to the right of the compound stem and accordingly takes the shape -ege (43).

(41)  gw-itɪk-e  u-tɪ  “ee, n-di=po”  
2SG-agree-SUBJ 2SG-say.SUBJ yes 1SG-COP=16  
‘You shall answer “Yes, I’m here.”’ [Hare and Tugutu]

(42)  tʊtɪ  bole?  ~  tʊtʊbole?  
‘What should we say/do?’

(43)  tʊtʊɡɪ  bole?  ~  tʊtʊbolege?  
‘What should we be saying/doing?’

As can be gathered from (42, 43), apart from introducing (inner) speech and sound, tɪ can be understood to have a broader meaning of acting in a certain manner. Thus its subjunctive is also used as a prompt to imitate a certain action (44) (also cf. Felberg 1996: 97). Also note the related uses in (45, 46).

(44)  u-tɪ  bu-no  
2SG-say.SUBJ 14-DEM  
‘Do like this!’ [ET]

(45)  po  jʊ-la  u-gw-a  pa-lʊ-ʊlu  a-lɪnkʊ-tɪ  fi-ki,  
then 1-DIST  AUG-1-ASSOC 16-11-north 1-NARR-say 8-what  
a-lɪnkʊ-kaan-a  
1-NARR-refuse-FV  
‘The one from the north did what? He refused.’ [Lake Kyungululu]

(46)  mwa=n-dugutu  a-ka-a-bop-ile=po.  a-a-ba-paal-ile  
matronym=9-type_of_bird 1-NEG-PST-run-PFV=PART 1-PST-2-invite-PFV  
a-ba-nine.  bo  a-ba  a-a-ba-buk-ile  u-kʊ-tɪ  
AUG-2-companion REF.2 AUG-PROX.2 1-PST-2-put-PFV AUG-15-say  
maelɪ  ji-mo,  maelɪ  ji-mo,  maelɪ  ji-mo  
mile(9)(<EN) 9-one mile(9) 9-one mile(9) 9-one  
‘Mr. Tugutu did not run at all. He had gathered companions. Those are the ones he placed, like one mile, one mile, one mile.’ [Hare and Tugutu]

The infinitive ukʊtɪ is further grammaticalized as a complementizer (47). It also serves to introduce clauses of purpose and result; see §9.3.1.2.
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(47) ʊ-meenye ʊkʊtɪ Asia a-ka-kʊ-gan-a?
2SG-know.PFV COMP A. 1-NEG-2SG-love-FV

'Do you know that Asia doesn’t love you?’ [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

Similarly, the infinitive of ti as the dependent element of the associative construction serves to introduce a clause as a nominal complement.3 This is frequently used in the collocation kʊmʊnɔŋɔwa (i)jaː kʊtɪ ‘for the reason that, because’.

(48) kʊʊ-nɔŋɔwa j-aa kʊ-τɪ Juma a-a-meenye ʊkʊtɪ Sambʊka
17-issue(9) 9-ASSOC 15-say J. 1-PST-know.PFV COMP S.
m-manyaani gw-a Asia, po a-lnkw-ɪtɪk-a ʊ-κʊ-bʊʊk-a
1-friend 1-ASSOC A. then 1-NARR-agree-FV AUG-15-go-FV
kʊ-κʊ-many-a=ko kʊ-my-aake
17-15-know-FV=17 17-4-poss.sg

'Because Juma knew that Sambuka was a friend of Asia, he agreed to go and get to know her [Sambuka’s] home.’ [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

(49) Mfyage a-a-bʊʊk-ile kʊ-ŋ-gangɪ ʊ-gw-a ųr-tiɪtʊ, kʊ-κʊ-lɔnd-a
M. 1-PST-go-PFV 17-1-healer AUG-1-ASSOC 7-black 17-15-search-FV
ʊ-n-kɔta ʊ-gw-a kʊ-τɪ ba-ŋ-gan-ege fiijo
AUG-3-medicine AUG-3-ASSOC 15-say 2-1-love-IPFV.SUBJ INTENS
a-ba-nyambala
AUG-2-man

'Mfyage went to a witch doctor to find a medicine that would make men love her very much.' [Mfyage turns into a lion]

The verb ti also serves as an auxiliary, taking a subjunctive complement in a number of conventionalized constructions; see §9.3.2. It also forms part of the invariable evidential of report baattɪ.4 This particle serves to indicate that the source of information is hearsay. It can be used to distance oneself from what is reported, ascribing responsibility to the original source (50) and is also commonly used to echo what has just been said (51, 52).

---

3Following the associative particle, the augment on nouns is banned.
4This can doubtless be analyzed as ba-a-ti. Given that this form is homophonous with the subsecutive with a noun class 2 subject (i.e. 3rd person plural used as impersonal), this might be an indication that the subsecutive configuration has developed diachronically out of a former perfective or anterior, thus ‘They (have) said’. Cf. also Ndali bāti, which apparently fulfils the same function (Botne 2008: 107).
10.3 * ‘say; think; do like’

(50) Saliki a-lnkʊ-tɪ “ʊ-m-buut-ile kalo ʊ-jʊ n-d-ile
S. 1-NARR-say 2SG-slaughter-PFV hare(1) AUG-PROX.1 1SG-say-PFV
ʊ-buut-ege?” ʊ-n-kasi gw-a Saliki a-lnkʊ-tɪ “keet-a
2SG-slaughter-IPFV.SUBJ AUG-1-wife 1-ASSOC S. 1-NARR-say look-PFV
ʊ-t-ile baatt n-heesya gw-ɪtʊ!? n-ʊm-buut-ile
2SG-say-PFV hearsay 1-guest 1-POSS.1PL 1SG-1-slaughter-APPL.PFV
ɪ-n-gʊkʊ. a-li=mo n-nyumba, a-li pa-kʊ-ly-a=mo”
AUG-9-chicken 1-COP=18 18-house(9) 1-COP 16-15-eat-PFV=some

‘Saliki said “Have you slaughtered Hare, whom I told you to slaughter?”
Saliki’s wife said “Look, you said he is our guest!? I slaughtered a chicken
for him. He’s in the house, he’s eating.”’ [Saliki and Hare]

(51) Context: The researcher has asked for a soda at a small shop. The friend of
the shop owner is surprised by his language skills and repeats his words:
baatt “n-gʊ-sʊʊm-a ɪ-kʊok”
hearsay 1SG-PRS-beg-PFV AUG-C.(9)

‘[Quoting:] “I’d like a Coke.”’ [overheard]

(52) Context: Tortoise’s child has just told Monkey that Tortoise senior is sad.
“fi-ki?” “a-fw-ile ɗaadɑ gw-ake” “n-koolel-e!” a-lnkʊ-sook-a
8-what 1-die-PFV sister(<SWA) 1-POSS.SG 1-call-IMP 1-NARR-leave-PFV
kajamba, i-kʊ-lɪl-a “hhhhhhn, hihihih, a-fw-ile, a-fw-ile”
tortoise(1) 1-PRS-cry-PFV of_crying of_crying 1-die-PFV 1-die-PFV

‘[Monkey:] “Why?” [Tortoise’s child:] “His sister died” [Monkey:] “Call
him!” Tortoise came out, he is crying “’hiihihihii, hihihiihii, she died, she
died’.

po mwa=n-gambɪ “he? baatt a-fw-ile ɗaadɑ, ee? po
then matronym=9-monkey INTERJ hearsay 1-die-PFV sister yes then
ndaga”
thanks

‘Monkey: “So your sister died, yes? My sympathy.”’ [Monkey and
Tortoise]

Note that even in the wider discourse context of the preceding examples there
is no referent of noun class 2 which the *ba-* portion could cross-reference. Also
note that *tt* cannot normally be followed by another instance of itself:

(53) * keeta ʊ-t-ile ʊ-kʊ-tɪ n-heesya gw-ɪtʊ
look 2SG-say-PFV AUG-15-say 1-guest 1-POSS.1PL
A homophonous form *baatɪ* is also used as a call for attention (54).\(^5\)

(54) *baatɪ* ‘Listen!’

Another use of *ti* is that of naming or calling people or entities. Note the object marker in (57), which is otherwise not licensed with this verb.

(55) *ijolo* ɳ-dw-ɪho lw-a ba-Nyakyusa ba-a-lt old_times 18-11-custom 11-ASSOC 2-Ny. 2-pst-cop na=a-ka-jnlo k-a n-kiikolɔ v-ko-n-tiil-a COM=AUG-12-custom 12-ASSOC 1-woman AUG-15-1-fear-FV u-gwise gw-a ɳ-dume, ŋ-ju *tu*-*ko*-*ti* n-kamwana AUG-his_father(1) 1-ASSOC 1-husband AUG-PROX.1 1PL-PRS-say 1-in_law

‘Long ago in the tradition of the Nyakyusa people they had a custom of the woman fearing the father of her husband, whom we call Nkamwana.’

[Should she save a life…]

(56) ky-a-li=pɔ n=ɪ-ki-piki, *tu*-*ko*-*ti* 1-m-bale 7-pst-cop=16 COM=AUG-7-stump 1PL-PRS-say AUG-7-type_of_wood

‘There was also a wood. We call it Mbale.’ [Clothing long ago]

(57) *bi-*ko-*n-*ti* (jo) Mama Tuma 2-PRS-1-say REF.1 M. T.

‘They call her Mama Tuma’ [ET]

Lastly, *ti* features in the conjunction *kookʊtɪ* ‘that is to say, that means’ (58), in the universal quantifier *kʊkʊtɪ* ‘every’ (59) and in *ngatɪ* ‘as, like’ (60).

(58) bo ba-fik-ile pa-la ba-lnkʊ-sy-ag-a 1-n-gambɪl as 2-arrive-PFV 16-dist 2-NARR-10-find-FV AUG-10-monkey si-tengeene m-mi-gʊnda gy-abo, si-kʊ-ly-a 1-fi-lombe 10-live_in_peace.PFV 18-4-field 4-POSS.PL 10-PRS-eat-FV AUG-8-maize kambi si-kw-ɪmb-a si-kʊ-ti “ho! ho! ho!” *kʊkʊtɪ* “ee again 10-PRS-SING-FV 10-PRS-say INTERJ that_is_to_say yes fi-nunu! ee fi-nunu! ee fi-nunu!” 8-good yes 8-good yes 8-good

‘When they arrived there, they found the monkeys looking at home in

---

\(^5\)Note that this parallels Swahili *ati*–*eti*, which is similarly used as an evidential of report and as an interjection (Madan 1903: 17; Maw 2013: 19). It is unclear if this use of Nyakyusa *baatɪ* is a result of a parallel development or if its usage has been influenced by Swahili.
10.4 Movement grams

their fields, eating maize, singing and saying “Ho! Ho! Ho!” That is to say “Yes, it’s good! Yes, it’s good! Yes, it’s good!” (Thieving Monkeys)

(59) ʊ-gwe ʊ-lɪ na=a-ma-šʊndɪ lwele, ṭukutu k-i-šʊndɪ k-oog-a
AUG-2SG 2SG-COP COM=AUG-6-leg eight every 7-leg 2SG.PRS-bath-FV
a-m-ɪsi ɪ-n-dobo ḟi-mo
AUG-6-water AUG-9-bucket 9-one
‘You have eight legs, every leg you bathe in one bucket of water.’ [Hare and Spider]

(60) ḋo ʊ-la ḋi-kw-and-a ḋi-ko-šu-bin-a fiijo
then 1-DIST 1-PRS-begin-FV AUG-15-fall_sick-FV INTENS
n=ʊ-ko-ʊbok-a ʊ-ɱ-ɓiɭ ngatı lw-ifi
COM=AUG-15-peel_off-FV AUG-3-body like 11-chameleon
‘Then that person begins to get very ill and his body peels like a chameleon.’ [Killer woman]

10.4 Movement grams

In this section, two auxiliary verbs will be discussed that provide a sense of (figurative) movement:6 (j)a ‘go’ and isa ‘come’. Both verbs are not only related in meaning, but also pattern together in syntactic terms. As their complement, they both take an augmentless infinitive. Further, the simple present of both verbs has undergone further grammaticalization to a futurate, a use in which the infinitive complement can take the imperfective suffix -aga.

10.4.1 (j)a ‘go’

The movement verb (j)a, which is glossed as ‘go’ throughout this study is attested only as a movement gram, not as a main verb. Following the infinitive or prefix ƙʊ-, only the vocalic segment is realized, yielding kwa. This loss of the consonantal segment is shared with the copula of the same shape (§10.2.1), albeit in a different environment. Use of (j)a construes the state-of-affairs encoded in the lexical verb against a preceding motion event (cf. Wilkins 1991: 251). One possible reading is that of two sequential sub-eventualities, hence ‘go (and) verb’:

---

6 The term movement gram has been adopted from Nicolle (2002).
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(61) po lingga a-ba-bʊʊl-ile a-ba-paapi ba-ake pamo then if/when 1-2-tell-pfv AUG-2-parent 2-poss.sg or ʊ-gwise gw-a n-domyana jʊ-la, a-a-j-agagw-a n-kiikulo ukut 15-1-beg-appl-fv 17-his_father(1) 1-assoc 1-woman comp “ʊ-mw-anaako, n-gʊ-lond-a ukut eeg-igw-ege AUG-1-your_child 1sg-prs-want-fv comp 1.marry-pass-ipfv.subj n=ʊ-mw-anangʊ” com=aug-1-my_child  
‘When he had told his parents or his father, he [father] would go to the woman’s father and ask “Your child, I want her to be married to my child.”’ [Life and marriage long ago]

(62) Context: The researcher is on his way home in the afternoon.  
o-j-ile ko-bomb-a? 2sg-go-pfv 15-work-fv  
‘Did you go and work?’ [overheard]

In other cases, (j)a does not introduce a change of location. This becomes clearest when it follows a form of the lexical verb bʊʊka ‘go’, as in (63, 64). Instead of introducing a second motion event, (j)a recapitulates the goal-oriented motion expressed by preceding bʊʊka. In (63), this is the explicitly mentioned field, in (64) the house, which is understood from the context.

(63) bo ka-kind-ile=po a-ka-balɪlo ka-nandi Pakyindi a-linko-book-a as 12-pass-pfv=cmpr AUG-12-time 12-little P 1-narr-go-fv ko-ŋ-gʊnda. a-linkw-a ko-:mmw-ag-a ʊ-o-kasi n=ʊ-o-nyambala 17-3-field 1-narr-go.fv 15-1-find-fv AUG-1-wife comp=aug-1-man ʊ-jʊ-ngɪ mu-ŋ-gʊnda mu-la AUG-1-other 18-3-field 18-dist  
‘When a short time had passed, Pakyindi went to the field. He (went and) found his wife with another man in that field.’ [Sokoni and Pakyindi]

(64) Context: Python is hiding in a banana tree outside a house.  
p o j-aa-tr “niine n-ʊ-book-a bo a-ka-j-a=po then 9-subsec-say comp.1sg 1sg-prs-go-fv as 1-neg-be(come)-fv=16 maama jʊ-la ʊ-n-kiikulo.” po bo ji-book-ile n-sota mother(<SWA) 1-dist AUG-1-woman then as 9-go-pfv AUG-python(9)
10.4 Movement grams

j-oope j-aa-j-ile kw-মब-এ
9-also 9-PST-go-PFV 15-sing-FV

‘Then it [Python] said “Me too, I’m going when that woman isn’t there.”
When the python had gone [to the house], it sang.’ [Python and woman]

The preceding example illustrates another important point about (j)a: this construal of a lexical state-of-affairs against the ground of a motion event is often employed in narratives to trace the participants and their actions as they move through space. (65–67) are further examples of this.

(65) Context: Hare and Skunk are staying together.
po n=nsy=ɪ j-oope a-a-book-ile, a-a-j-ile kʊ-lond-a a-ma-ani.
then skunk(1) 1-also 1-PST-go-PFV 1-PST-go-PFV 15-search-FV AUG-6-leaf
a-al-iis-ile na=a-ma-ani ga-la bo a-gon-ile ʊ-tʊ-lo
1-PST-come-PFV COM=AUG-6-leaf 6-DIST as 1-rest-PFV AUG-13-sleep
kalʊlo
hare(1)

‘Skunk also went, he (went and) searched for leaves. He came with those leaves, while Hare was asleep.’ [Hare and Skunk]

(66) Context: Hare is trapped in a pit.
a-a-fum-ile na=a-maka n-k-iina mu-la. a-a-nyeel-ile
1-PST-come_from-PFV COM=AUG-6-force 18-7-pit 18-DIST 1-PST-jump-PFV
a-a-j-ile kʊ-ti “tuu!” p-ii-sɪɪlya
1-PST-go-PFV 15-say of_thunk 16-5-other_side
‘He [Hare] came out of that pit with force. He jumped and made “tuu!” on the other side.’ [Saliki and Hare]

(67) Context: A woman has just passed a branch-off.
po a-lɪnkʊ-golok-a, a-lɪnkʊ-golok-a. a-lɪnkw-a
then 1-NARR-go_straight-FV 1-NARR-go_straight-FV. 1-NARR-go.FV
kʊ-fik-a kʊ-jeng-iigwe kʊ-nunu fiijo. po a-lɪnkw-a
15-arrive-FV 17-build-PASS.PFV 17-well INTENS then 1-NARR-go.FV
kʊ-ba-ag-a ba-lɪndɪlɪ ba-a ka-aja ka-la. ba-lɪnkʊ-ŋ-daalʊʊsy-a
15-2-find-FV 2-guard 2-ASSOC 12-village 12-DIST 2-NARR-1-ask-FV
ba-lɪnkʊ-tɪ “kʊ-lond-a fi-ki?”
2-NARR-say 2SG.PRS-want-FV 8-what
‘She went straight, she went straight. She (went and) arrived at a place well built. She (went and) met the guards of that village. They asked “What do you want?”’ [Throw away the child]
The simple present of \((j)a\) is further grammaticalized as a marker of prospective aspect, which retains a possible spatial or motion reading. This is discussed in §8.5. Note that the movement gram \((j)a\) cannot express motion with purpose. For this, \textit{bwska} ‘go’ plus an infinitive marked for locative class 16 or 18 has to be used; see §11.4.1 for a discussion. Lastly, unlike its counterpart \textit{isa} (§10.4.2), the simple present of \((j)a\) does not have a habitual or generic reading:

\[(68) \quad *\text{kụkọtị} \text{ky-mja} \text{n-gw-a} \quad \text{kọ-gy-ag-a} \quad \text{1-mi-kambir} \quad \text{kọ-mi-gunda}
\text{every} \quad \text{1sg-prs-go.fv} \quad \text{15-4-find-fv} \quad \text{Aug-6-monkey} \quad \text{17-4-field}
\text{gy-izọ}
\text{4-poss.1pl}
\text{(intended: 'Every year I go and find damn monkeys in our fields.' )}\]

\subsection*{10.4.2 \textit{isa} ‘come’}

The verb \textit{isa} ‘come’, when used as an auxiliary, has a figurative meaning of reaching, achieving or being led to a particular condition.

\[(69) \quad \text{bo} \quad \text{a-li} \quad \text{n-ụ-lw-anda} \quad \text{iis-aga} \quad \text{ku-pon-a} \quad \text{nalooli}
\text{as} \quad \text{1-cop} \quad \text{com-Aug-11-stomach} \quad \text{1pst.come-ipfv} \quad \text{15-give_birth-fv} \quad \text{really}
\text{ụ-mw-ana} \quad \text{ọ-n-kiikọto}
\text{Aug-1-child} \quad \text{Aug-1-woman}
\text{‘When she was pregnant, she would eventually give birth to a girl.’} \quad \text{[Life}
\text{and marriage long ago]}\]

\[(70) \quad \text{mw-ilamwisye} \quad \text{1-n-dagilo} \quad \text{sy-angụ.} \quad \text{ụ-mw-ana} \quad \text{a-ka-bagil-a}
\text{2pl-disregard.pfv} \quad \text{Aug-10-rule} \quad \text{10-poss.1sg Aug-1-child} \quad \text{1-NEG-be_able-fv}
\text{ụ-kw-end-a} \quad \text{kangi, a-ti-kw-is-a} \quad \text{ku-job-a} \quad \text{sikụ kangi}
\text{Aug-15-walk/travel-fv} \quad \text{again, 1-NEG-PRS-come-fv} \quad \text{15-speak-fv} \quad \text{ever again}
\text{‘You have disregarded my rules. The child can’t walk, it’ll never get to talk.’} \quad \text{[Pregnant women]}\]

\[(71) \quad \text{po} \quad \text{kanunu} \quad \text{ọ-kụ-j-a} \quad \text{m-bombi gw-abo} \quad \text{ku-ka-balilo}
\text{then well} \quad \text{Aug-15-be(come)-fv} \quad \text{1-worker} \quad \text{1-poss.pl} \quad \text{17-12-time}
\text{a-ka-a} \quad \text{ku-łond-a} \quad \text{ọ-ko-kab-a} \quad \text{1-n-dalam} \quad \text{1-sy-a}
\text{Aug-12-assoc} \quad \text{15-want-fv} \quad \text{Aug-15-get-fv} \quad \text{Aug-10-money} \quad \text{Aug-10-assoc}
\text{k-ụn-ụl-a} \quad \text{i-fi-bombelo, i-fy-a} \quad \text{kw-is-a} \quad \text{ku-bomb-el-a}
\text{15-buy-appl-fv} \quad \text{Aug-8-tool} \quad \text{Aug-8-assoc} \quad \text{15-come-fv} \quad \text{15-work-appl-fv}\]
10.4 Movement grams

kṣita kʊ-lʊmbʊʊs-igw-a
without 15-humiliate-PASS-FV

‘And so it is good to be their worker for a time in which you want to get money to buy tools with, for later working with without being disparaged [lit. ...tools of coming to work with ...].’ [Types of tools in the home]

(72) a-ka-pango a-ka kɪ-kʊ-tʊ-many-isy-a ʊkʊtɪ
AUG-12-story AUG-PROX.12 12-PRS-1PL-know-CAUS-FV COMP
kʊ-tʊ-ng-iib-aga, tʊ-ng-iis-a kʊ-fw-a bo
1PL-NEG.SUBJ-steal-IPFV 1PL-NEG.SUBJ-come-FV 15-die-FV as
kʊʊ~lo sy-a-fw-ile i-n-gambili si-la
REDUPL~REF.11 10-PST-die-IPFV AUG-10-monkey 10-DIST

‘This story teaches us that we should not steal, otherwise we will die [lit. we should not come to die] just like those monkeys died.’ [Thieving monkeys]

In the affirmative subjunctive, a variant construction is attested in which the lexical verb is not expressed as an augment-less infinitive, but also figures in the subjunctive paradigm:

(73) kʊʊl-iisye 2sg-buy-CAUS.FV AUG-10-money AUG-REF.10 10-come-SUBJ
si-kʊ-tool-ege u-kʊ-ba-homb-a a-ba-fundi

‘And you should be raising pigs at home so that when you have sold them, the money can be helping you to pay the workmen [lit. ...so that the money comes to help you ...].’ [How to build modern houses]

Note that the movement gram *isa*, like its counterpart *(j)*a (see §8.5) cannot express motion with purpose. For this, an infinitive marked for locative class 16 or 18 has to be used; see §11.4.1 for a discussion.

As (70) above indicates, the simple present of *isa* has a futurate reading. Another example of this is given in (74). This is also the only use of *isa* discussed by Schumann (1899) and Endemann (1914). As (75) illustrates, the simple present of *isa*, however, also allows for a habitual/generic reading.
10 Defective verbs, copulae and movement grams

(74) ɪlɪno to-kw-is-a kʊs-kɪn-a ʊ-m-pɪla
    now/today 1PL-PRS-come-FV 15-play-FV AUG-3-ball
    ‘Today we’ll come to play football [ET]’

(75) kʊkʊtɪ ky-inja n-gw-is-a kʊs-gy-ag-a i-mi-gambil m-mi-gunda
    every 7-year 1SG-PRS-come-FV 15-4-find-FV AUG-4-monkey 18-4-farm
    gy-ɪtʊ
    4-POSS.1PL
    ‘Every year I come to find damn monkeys in our fields.’ [ET]

In the futurate use of *isa*, the infinitive complement can take the imperfective suffix -*aga*, which yields a continuous/progressive reading and can add an epistemic flavour (76). Imperfective -*aga* is also used with a habitual/generic reading (77). Lastly, this futurate use of *isa* in the simple present has undergone further grammaticalization, yielding the indefinite future construction (§8.6).

(76) i-kw-is-a kʊs-jeng-ag-a kʊs-la
    1-PRS-come-FV 15-build-IPFV 17-DIST
    1. ‘He will come to be building there (continuously).’
    2. ‘He will come to build there (presumably).’ [ET]

(77) bi-kw-is-a kʊs-kɪn-ag-a ʊ-m-pɪla kʊkʊtɪ ii-sɪkʊ
    2-PRS-come-FV 15-play-IPFV AUG-3-ball every 5-day
    ‘They will come to play football every day.’ [ET]
11 Verbal nouns (infinitives)

11.1 Introduction

In this chapter, verbal nouns (infinitives) will be discussed. After a description of their morphological structure and syntactic characteristics (§11.2), the negation of verbal nouns and negative construction containing them will be described (§11.3). This is followed by an discussion of some of their functions (§11.4.1, 11.4.2).

11.2 Structure and characteristics of verbal nouns

Verbal nouns (infinitives) share characteristics of both nouns and verbs. Formally, they are class 15 nouns and can hence be marked for one of the three locative classes or carry the augment (§2.3.2). Like any other noun phrase, infinitives can fulfil the syntactic functions of subjects (1), objects (2), the head of possessives (2), and of the dependent noun of the associative (3).

(1) kɪsita kʊ-bɒmb-a bo ʊ-lo, kʊ-ka-a-li=ko
without 15(INF)-do-FV as AUG-REF.11 15(INF)-NEG-PST-COP=17
ʊ-kʊ-keet-an-a kʊ-maa-so n=ʊ-kʊ-ponani-a
AUG-15(INF)-see-RECP-FV 17-6-eye COM=AUG-15(INF)-greet.RECP-FV
‘Without doing so, there was no looking each other in the eyes or greeting each other.’ [Should she save a life...]

(2) n-kʊ-meenye ʊ-kʊ-piɪj-a kw-aɪke
1SG-15(INF)-know.PFV AUG-15(INF)-cook-FV 15(INF)-POSS.SG
‘I know her cooking.’ [ET]

(3) ba-a-tendekesy-aga ngatì ki-kombe ky-a kʊ-nw-el-a
2-PST-prepare-IPFV like 7-cup 7-ASSOC 15(INF)-drink-APPL-FV
a-m-tisi
AUG-6-water
‘They prepared them [calabashes] just like a cup for drinking water.’
[Lake Kyungululu]
With respect to their verbal characteristics, verbal nouns can be modified by adverbials (4). They can take the complements licensed by the verb stem and accordingly may carry an object marker; see (5, 22) below. Further, infinitives can take post-final clitics; see (24) below.

(4) ʊ-kʊ-jeng-a  panandr̃~panandr̃  jɪ-ka-j-a  m-bombo
     AUG-15-build-FV REDUPL~a_little  9-NEG-be(come)-FV  9-work
     n-gafu
     9-difficult

'Building little by little is not difficult work.' [How to build modern houses]

The stem of verbal nouns consists of the base and the default final vowel -a. With the movement grams (j)a and isa (§10.4), the infinitive may take the imperfective final suffix -aga. The only other token of an infinitive carrying the imperfective suffix is the following example, where -aga seems to indicate the generic aspect of the comitative infinitive vis-à-vis its perfective superordinate verb.

(5) a-ba-ndʊ  ba-a-jeng-ile  n=ʊ-kʊ-tʊʊgasy-agə  n-ka-aja
     AUG-2-person 2-PST-build-PFV COM=AUG-15-settle-IPFV 18-12-homestead
     a-ko  looli  ba-a-taami-gw-agə ʊ-kʊ-ga-ag-a  a-m-nsi
     AUG-REF.12  but  2-PST-trouble-PASS-IPFV AUG-15-6-find-FV AUG-6-water
     a-g-a  kʊ-nw-a  n-ʊ-kʊ-nw-esy-a  i-mi-tiimo
     AUG-6-ASSOC 15-drink-FV COM=AUG-15-drink-CAUS-FV AUG-4-herd
     gy-abo
     4-POSS.PL

'People (had) built in that village but they had trouble finding water for drinking and watering their cattle.' [Water and toads]

11.3 Verbal nouns and negation

Verbal nouns in Nyakyusa cannot be negated morphologically. To express the negation of an infinitive, periphrastic constructions are used. The most common one is (i)kısıta, (i)ćișița ‘without’ followed by an augmentless infinitive (6). The former also figures in the negative counterpart to the narrative tense (§7.3).
11.3 Verbal nouns and negation

(6) lɪnga a-li na=fyo a-bagiile u-kʊ-bomb-a i-m-bombo
if/when 1-COP COM=REF.8 1-be_able.PFV AUG-15-work-FV AUG-9-work
jo~j-oosa i-jɪ i-kʊ-lond-a u-kʊ-bomb-a kɪsita
REDUPL~9-all AUG-PROX.9 1-PRS-want-FV AUG-15-work-FV without
ko-taami-gw-a
15-trouble-PASS-FV

‘If he has them [tools], he can do any kind of work which he wants to do,
without being bothered.’ [Types of tools in the home]

A construction for constituent negation consists of the substitutive as a pro-
clitic to the general negator mma, followed by the infinitive carrying the aug-
ment.1

(7) kʊkʊtɪ ii-sikʊ i-kʊ-kʊ-tʊk-a, kangɪ i-kʊ-tɪ “ʊ-ne ne=mma
every 5-day 1-PRS-2SG-insult-FV again 1-PRS-say AUG-1SG 1SG=no
ʊ-kw-eg-igw-a na Juma, n-ga-ŋ-gan-a”
AUG-15-marry-PASS-FV COM J. 1SG-NEG-1-love-FV

‘Every day she speaks badly about you and she says “Me, I’m not getting
married to Juma, I don’t love him.”’ [Juma, Asia and Sambuka]

This construction, with the class 15 substitutive ko, thus komma, also serves to
form negative commands (8). A free variant somma is also found (9, 10).2 These
prohibitives can be adressed to a single person (8, 9) as well as to the second
person plural (10).

(8) komma ʊ-kʊ-nyonyw-a i-fi a-p-eeliigwe
PROH AUG-15(INF)-desire-FV AUG-PROX.8 1-give-PASS.PFV
ʊ-n-nino
AUG-1-your_companion

‘Do not desire what your neighbour has been given.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

(9) somma ʊ-kʊ-paasy-a! lee po keet-a,
PROH AUG-15-worry-FV now/but then watch-FV
ʊ-ka-a-job-aga bo ʊ-kaalɪ ʊ-kʊʊ-ny-eeg-a?
2SG-NEG-PST-speak-IPFV as 2SG-PERS AUG-15-1SG-take-FV?

‘Don’t worry! Now look, why didn’t you speak before picking me up?’
[Crocodile and Monkey]

1Cf. also Schumann (1899: 69) and Endemann (1914: 84f).
2The source of the initial fricative is unclear.
11 Verbal nouns (infinitives)

(10) lɪnga m-b-iigal-iile somma u-kʊ-sook-a pa-nja
if/when 1SG-2PL-close-APPL.PFV PROH AUG-15-leave-FV 16-outside
‘When I’ve locked you (pl.) in, don’t go outside.’ [Python and woman]

11.4 Functions of verbal nouns

11.4.1 Arguments of auxiliaries, modal and motion verbs

Verbal nouns serve as complements of phasal verbs, also called aspectualizers, such as anda ‘begin, start’, mala ‘finish, stop’, leka ‘seize’ or endelela ‘continue’. These take either the infinitive with the augment or the infinitive marked for locative class 16 as their complement. The latter is illustrated in (11). For numerous examples of the first see Chapter 5. It is unclear how far the two differ in meaning and use. Speaker preferences seem to play a role: the younger language assistants used the class 16 form more frequently than the older assistants.

(11) i-kʊ-kwel-a kangɪ mu-m-piki n=ʊ-kw-endelel-a pa-kw-ap-a
1PRS-climb-FV again 18-3-tree COM=AUG-15-continue-FV 16-15-pick-FV
a-ma-peasi
AUG-6-pear(<SWA)
‘He climbs up the tree again and continues to pick pears.’ [Elisha pear story]

Infinitives, either with the augment or marked for locative class 16, also figure as arguments of modality and manipulation verbs, where they alternate with the subjunctive (§9.3.1.2). The alternation between infinitives and the subjunctive mood is also found following predicative expressions of (dis-)approval or preference, including the invariants kyajɪpo ‘(it is) better’ and paakipo ‘(it is) preferable’.

(12) ŋ-dʊ-baatɪko lw-a twe ba-Nyakyusa u-n-nyambala
18-11-procedure 11-ASSOC 1PL 2-Ny. AUG-1-man
ʊ-kʊ-pɪɪj-a, pamo ʊ-kʊ-suk-a i-my-end, pamo
AUG-15-cook-FV or AUG-15-wash-FV AUG-4-clothe or
ʊ-kʊ-neg-a a-m-ɪɪsi bo ba-li=po a-ba-kiikʊlʊ mw-iko
AUG-15-draw_liquid-FV AUG-6-water as 2-COP=16 AUG-2-woman 3-taboo
‘In the custom of us, the Nyakyusa people, it is taboo for men to cook or
wash clothes or draw water when women are around.’ [Division of
labour]
11.4 Functions of verbal nouns

Infinitives further function as oblique arguments of modal readings of verbs such as tola ‘defeat’ and its passive toligwa ‘fail’, kinda ‘surpass’ or taamigwa ‘be troubled’ (13). See also (5) on p. 324 above and (90b, 90c) on p. 175.

(13) tʊ-tol-iigwe u-kʊ-lr-kol-a ii-bole
1PL-defeat-PASS.PFV AUG-15-5-grasp/hold-FV 5-leopard
‘We’ve failed to catch the leopard.’ [Chief Kapyungu]

Infinitives additionally marked for locative classes 16 or 18 also constitute the lexical verb of periphrastic TMA constructions, namely the periphrastic progressive (§6.6.1), the prospective/inceptive (§8.7) and the narrative tense (§7.3). An infinitive with the augment or marked for one of the three locative classes 16–18 may further serve as the complement of the persistive aspect auxiliary (§6.6.2) and augmentless infinitives may serve as the semantic main verb of the movement grams (§10.4).

Lastly, verbs of motion and related verbs such as ima ‘stand, stop’ or tuma ‘send’ often take an infinitive complement additionally marked for one of the three locative classes. Class 16 here indicates that the motion is in relation to a specific place where the eventuality of the verbal noun takes place (14). With class 17, this typically denotes motion with a purpose (15). In a related fashion, a class 17 infinitive can specifically serve as a purpose clause in this context (16). However, a pure motion reading ‘to / from’ the eventuality is also possible (17). Infinitives marked for class 18 also predominantly give a purposive reading (18), although a locational one is also attested (19).

(14) i-m-bwa sy-im-aga pa-kʊ-ly-a i-fi-fupa
AUG-10-dog 10-PST.stand/stop-IPFV 16-15-eat-FV AUG-8-bone
‘The dogs would stop and eat the bones.’ [Saliki and Hare]

(15) a-ka-bahlo ka-mo a-ba-hńi j ba-na ba-a-bʊʊk-ile ko-kʊ-hńj-a
AUG-12-time 12-one AUG-2-thief 2-four 2-PST-go-PFV 17-15-steal-FV
n-ng’ombe pa-kr-lo
AUG-cow(10) 16-7-night
‘One time, four thieves went to steal cows at night.’ [Wage of the thieves]

(16) Kalʊlo a-lnkw-bʊʊk-a ko-kʊ-bobi ko-kʊ-laaltʊs-sy-a linga
Hare 1-NARR-go-FV 17-11-spider 17-15-ask-FV if/when
lʊ-mmw-ag-ile ʊ-n-kiikʊlʊ
11-1-find-PFV AUG-1-woman
‘Hare went to Spider to ask if it had found a woman.’ [Hare and Spider]
11 Verbal nouns (infinitives)

(17) bo kʊ-fum-ile ko-kʊ-hah-a ... as 11-come_from-PFV 17-15-seduce-FV
‘When it [Spider] returned from seducing ...’ [Hare and Spider]

(18) a-ba-ndʊ ba-a-bʊʊk-ile n-kʊ-ŋ-keet-a
AUG-2-person 2-PST-go-PFV 18-15-watch-FV
‘People went to see her.’ [Mfyage turns into a lion]

(19) Saliki a-lnkw-is-a Ṽ-kʊ-fum-a n-kʊ-jaat-a
S. 1-NARR-come-FV AUG-15-come_from-FV 18-15-walk-FV
‘Saliki came from taking a walk.’ [Saliki and Hare]

11.4.2 Uses as converbs and related functions

Infinitives can be used in a fashion similar to converbs of simultaneity. The term converb is here understood in Haspelmath’s (1995: 3) definition as “a non-finite verb form whose main function is to mark adverbial subordination. Another way of putting it is that converbs are verbal adverbs”. Examples (20–22) illustrate this. The use of infinitives in a converb-like manner is especially common with verbs of motion, where each verb provides different components of a single motion event (22).

(20) ba-lnku-fimbʊlsy-a fiijo Ṽ-kʊ-ŋ-daalʊʊsy-a mpaka a-a-job-ile
2-NARR-persuade-FV INTENS AUG-15-1-ask-FV until 1-PST-speak-PFV
a-a-t-ile
1-PST-say-PFV
‘They interrogated her much until she spoke.’ [Killer woman]

(21) Ṽ-kʊ-keet-a kʊ-mwanya ki-kʊ-bon-a Ṽ-mu-ndʊ
AUG-15-watch-FV 17-high 12-PRS-see-FV AUG-1-person
‘Looking up he sees a person.’ [Nicholaus Pear Story]

(22) bo i-kw-and-a itolo Ṽ-kʊ-kam-a, Ṽ-ŋ-dʊme a-lnku-sook-a
as 1-PRS-begin-FV just AUG-15-milk-FV AUG-1-husband 1-NARR-leave-FV
Ṽ-kʊ-fum-a kʊʊ-sofu n=Ṽ-kʊ-n-kol-a
AUG-15-come_from-FV 17-room(9) COM=AUG-15-1-grasp/hold-FV
Ṽ-n-kiikʊlʊ ju-la
AUG-1-WOMAN 1-DIST
‘When she was starting to milk, the husband came out of [lit. left coming from] the bedroom and caught that woman.’ [Killer woman]
11.4 Functions of verbal nouns

An infinitive together with a proclitic form of the comitative *na* can be used following another verb to create a tight link between the states-of-affairs of the two, which often occur in sequence. Most commonly the first verb is fully inflected. The relationship between these verbs can be one of cause and consequence (23), preparation and culmination (24), or eventualities based on each other in a more general sense (25). It is also attested with verbs expressing similar or conceptually related meanings (26) and with the last verb in iconic repetitions (27). (28) illustrates coordination with a preceding infinitive complement.

(23) po ji-linku-ji-lum-a ni-nine n=ʊ-kʊ-ji-gog-a
then 9-NARR-9-bite-FV AUG-companion.9 COM=AUG-15-9-kill-FV

'It [dog] bit the other one and killed it.' [Dogs laughed about each other]

(24) i-ku-pmb-a i-ki-kapu ky-osa n-ky-eni mu-n-ninga
1-PRS-lift-FV AUG-7-basket 7-all 18-7-forehead 18-9-bicycle
n=ʊ-kʊ-sook-a=po
COM=AUG-15-leave-FV=16

'He loads a whole basket onto the front of his bicycle and rides away.'
[Elisha Pear Story]

(25) u-n-kasi gw-a ku-bobi a-a-b-ambiliile
AUG-1-wife I-ASSOC 11-spider 1-PST-2-receive.PFV
n=ʊ-kʊ-ba-punj-il-a i-fi-ndo i-f-ingi fiijo
COM=AUG-15-2-cook-APPL-FV AUG-8-food AUG-8-many INTENS
‘Spider’s wife received them and cooked a lot of food for them.’ [Hare and Spider]

(26) ngoosi a-lnku-kul-a n=ʊ-kʊ-kiikolop-a
N. 1-NARR-grow-FV COM=AUG-15-become_woman-FV

‘Ngoosi grew up and became a woman.’ [Man and his in-law]

(27) boo=bu-no ba-lnkw-end-a, ba-lnkw-end-a,
REF.14=REDUPL~14-DEM 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV 2-NARR-walk/travel-FV
ba-lnkw-end-a n=ʊ-kw-end-a
2-NARR-walk/travel-FV COM=AUG-15-walk/travel-FV

‘Thus they travelled, travelled, travelled and travelled.’ [Pregnant women]

(28) i-n-gwina j-iis-aga n-ku-j-eeg-a i-n-gambilhi
AUG-9-crocodile 9-PST.come-IPFV 18-15-9-take-FV AUG-9-monkey
Verbal nouns (infinitives)

n=ʊ-kʊ-book-a na=jo pa-ʊ-sʊŋgo pa-kw-angal-a
com=aug-15-go-fv com=ref.9 16-11-island 16-15-be_well-fv

‘Crocodile used to come to pick up monkey and go with him to an island to spend time together.’ [Crocodile and Monkey]

This structure is conventionalized with the verb enda ‘walk/travel’ as the first verb and serves as a marker of sequential events:

(29) ʊ-n-hʊɪɪj-i ʊ-jʊ a-a-longwire n-ky-eni
aug-1-thief aug-prox.1 1-pst-lead.pfv 18-7-forehead
a-lɪmkw-end-a n=ʊ-ku-kol-a ʊ-lw-igi
1-narr-walk/travel-fv com=aug-15-grasp/hold-fv aug-11-door

‘The thief who was going ahead then grabbed the door.’ [Wage of the thieves]

Most commonly, only one verb in a sequence is expressed by the comitative infinitive. In a few cases, however, up to three verbs (30) marked in this manner can be found.

(30) a-a-gomok-a ʊ-mw-anike jʊ-la n=ʊ-ku-fik-a
1-subsec-return-fv aug-1-young_person 1-dist com=aug-15-arrive-fv
pa-ka-aja pa-la n=ʊ-ku-m-bʊʊl-a n=ʊ-ku-n-nangɪsy-a
16-12-homestead 16-dist com=aug-15-1-tell-fv com=aug-15-1-show-fv
i-si ʊ-ŋ-dʊme
aug-prox.10 aug-1-husband

‘That young woman returned and arrived at home and told and showed her husband these things.’ [Man and his in-law]

Other infinitives serve a variety of functions which likely go back to their converb-like use. The infinitive of tɪ ‘say’ amongst other things serves as a complementizer; see §10.3. The reciprocal/associative of konga ‘follow’ is used as an infinitive in a preposition-like manner, together with a comitative phrase expressing reason (31). Similarly the infinitive of fɪka ‘arrive’, fuma ‘come from’, and anda ‘start’, as well as its applicative andɪla, are used in a preposition-like manner. Note that in the case of the first two, the original spatial meaning has been extended to a temporal one. (32, 33) illustrate this use for fuma and andɪla.

(31) nalooli ʊ-ko-kong-an-a n=ʊ-ku-gano ʊ-lʊ a-a-li
really aug-15-follow-recep-fv com=aug-11-love aug-prox.11 1-pst-cop
na=lo ngoosi a-lnkʊ-jong-a n=ʊ-n-nyambala ju-mo
com=ref.11 n. 1-narr-run_away-fv
com=aug-1-man 1-one
‘Because of the love that Ngoosi had, she eloped with a man.’ [Man and his in-law]

(32) ṭ-mu-ndʊ ʊ-ju a-fumwike ṭ-kʊ-fum-a
aug-1-person aug-prox.1 1-be(come)_famous.pfv aug-15-come_from-fv
pa-tali
16-long
‘This person has been famous since long ago.’ [ET]

(33) tw-al-iiswisye ɪ-mi-fuko ṭ-kw-and-il-a
1pl-pst-be(come)_full.caus.pfv aug-4-sack aug-15-begin-appl-fv
n=ʊ-lo-bʊnjo mpaka pa-muu-si
com=aug-11-morning until 16-3-daytime
‘We filled sacks from morning till afternoon.’ [ET]

Lastly, the infinitive of anda ‘begin, start’ is further used as the dependent noun in the associative construction as the ordinal number ‘first’:

(34) a-lnkw-is-a ṭ-mu-ndʊ ʊ-gw-a kw-and-a
1-narr-come-fv aug-1-person aug-1-assoc 15-begin-fv
‘The first person came.’ [Chief Kapyungu]
Appendix A: Overview of core TMA constructions

This appendix gives an overview over the core tense, aspect and modality constructions, together with a short summary of their respective functions. Table A.1 lists the present (non-past) and past tense constructions (Chapter 6), Table A.2 summarizes the commonalities and differences of the two narrative markers (Chapter 7), Table A.3 lists the futurate constructions (Chapter 8), and Table A.4 lists mood and modal constructions (Chapter 9).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Summary of function(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple present</td>
<td>$SM_2\text{-}kv\text{-}vb\text{-}a$</td>
<td>§6.5.1</td>
<td>Non-past progressive, habitual/generic, and futurate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative present</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}ti\text{-}kv\text{-}vb\text{-}a$</td>
<td>§6.5.2</td>
<td>Negative counterpart to simple present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present progressive</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}li\text{-}pa\text{-}kv\text{-}vb\text{-}a$</td>
<td>§6.6.1</td>
<td>Dedicated non-past progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}vb\text{-}ile$</td>
<td>§6.5.3</td>
<td>Non-past, completion of Nucleus (non-inchoatives: completed act; inchoatives: static or change-of-state)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persistive</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}kaalit + Verb$</td>
<td>§6.6.2</td>
<td>Continuation of a state-of-affairs (‘still’); With infinitives: ‘not yet’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. present perfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}ka\text{-}vb\text{-}a$</td>
<td>§6.5.4</td>
<td>Negative counterpart to present perfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past perfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}al\text{-}vb\text{-}ile$</td>
<td>§6.5.5</td>
<td>Past, completion of Nucleus phase (see above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. past perfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}ka\text{-}al\text{-}vb\text{-}ile$</td>
<td>§6.5.6</td>
<td>Negative counterpart to past perfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past imperfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}a\text{-}vb\text{-}aga$</td>
<td>§6.5.7</td>
<td>Past progressive, habitual, generic; some modal functions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. past imperfective</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}ka\text{-}a\text{-}vb\text{-}aga$</td>
<td>§6.5.8</td>
<td>Negative counterpart to past imperfective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past progressive</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}al\text{-}pa\text{-}kv\text{-}vb\text{-}a$</td>
<td>§6.6.1</td>
<td>Dedicated past progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past persistive</td>
<td>$SM\text{-}a\text{-}kaalit + Verb$</td>
<td>§6.6.2</td>
<td>Continuation of a past state-of-affairs (‘still’); With infinitives: ‘(had/was) not yet’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table A.2: Narrative markers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Summary of function(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Narrative tense</td>
<td>SM-\texttt{linko-vb-a}</td>
<td>§7.3</td>
<td>The “all-purpose” narrative marker: more frequent than the subsecutive and found in all narratives in the corpus; not subject to sociolinguistic restrictions; unspecified for aspect; does not encode sequential ordering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subsecutive</td>
<td>SM-\texttt{a-vb-a}</td>
<td>§7.4</td>
<td>Less frequent of the two, not found in all oral narratives; subject to sociolinguistic restrictions: nearly entirely excluded from written texts; specifically perfective semantics; marks advancement of the story; often serves textual function of creating cohesion</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Commonalities:
- past time reference (§7.3.2, 7.4.3)
- used exclusively with episodic eventualities within the plot proper of narrative discourse (§7.2.3)
- cannot open a text on their own – dependent on an otherwise established specific situation (§7.2.2)
- narrative discourse is structured around the notion of thematic continuity (§6.5.3.6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Label</th>
<th>Shape</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Summary of function(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future proclitic</td>
<td>$aa=$Verb</td>
<td>§8.2</td>
<td>Shifts to a future reference frame (‘D-Domain’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proclitic $(i)sa$</td>
<td>$(i)sa=$Verb</td>
<td>§8.3</td>
<td>Function yet unclear; found majoratively at end of paragraphs; limited to lake-shore-plains variety</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proclitic $naa$</td>
<td>$naa=$Verb</td>
<td>§8.4</td>
<td>Portmanteau of com $na$ and $aa=(?)$; function vis-á-vis $aa=$ yet unclear; limited to southern topolects</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prospective/movement</td>
<td>$SM_2-kw-a\ ko-vb-a(ga)$</td>
<td>§8.5</td>
<td>Future act with present relevance, typically preceded by motion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite future</td>
<td>$SM-isakʊ-vb-a(ga)$</td>
<td>§8.6</td>
<td>Improbable or contingent future state-of-affairs; non-future epistemic reading (presumption) available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neg. indefinite future</td>
<td>$SM-t-isakʊ-vb-a(ga)$</td>
<td>§8.6</td>
<td>Negative counterpart to indefinite future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prospective/inceptive</td>
<td>$SM_2-kʊ-j-a\ pa-kʊ-vb-a$</td>
<td>§8.7</td>
<td>Very near or imminent future state-of-affairs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label</td>
<td>Shape</td>
<td>Section</td>
<td>Summary of function(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Imperative          | vb-\(a\)(ag)  
                   | vb-\(e\)(ge) with OM\(\ne\)1sg | §9.2    | Direct orders to second person singular                     |
| Subjunctive         | SM-vb-\(e\)(ge)   | §9.3    | Multi-purpose mood, used i.a. in directives to 2\(pl\), jussives (incl. hortatives), volitives, expressions of obligation and not yet realized eventualities; forms part of several complex constructions with \(ti\) ‘say’ |
| Distal/itive subjunctive | SM-\(ka\)-vb-\(e\)(ge) | §9.3.3  | Subjunctive at place other than deictic centre                |
| Negative subjunctive | SM-(\(li\)-nga-vb-\(a\)\)(a) | §9.3.4  | Negative counterpart to subjunctive                           |
| Desiderative        | SM-\(l\r\)-vb-\(a\)(a) | §9.4    | Bouletic (‘boulemaic’) modality                               |
| Modal future        | SM\(_2\)-\(ko\)-vb-\(aga\) | §9.5    | Future state-of-affairs as a settled fact                     |
| Negative Modal future | SM-\(ti\)-\(ko\)-vb-\(aga\) | §9.5    | Negative counterpart to modal future                         |
| Conditional         | ngali + Verb         | §9.6    | Introduces conditionals (hypotheticals)                      |
Appendix B: Texts

This appendix presents a sample of three texts, all performed orally: two folk narratives and one expository text. For each text, the gender and approximate age of the interlocutor as well as the place and date of recording are provided.

B.1 Narrative: Crocodile and Monkey

This narrative text was told by a male speaker in his 50s in the city of Mbeya in September 2015.

(1) ɪ-n-gwina n=ɪ-n-gambilɪ ba-a-lɪ bu-manyaani fiijo
AUG-9-crocodile com=AUG-9-monkey 2-PST-COP 14-friendship INTENS
a-ka-bahlo a-k-a ijolo
AUG-12-time AUG-12-ASSOC old_times
‘Monkey and Crocodile were good friends long ago.’

(2) ba-a-jaat-an-il-aga n=ʊ-kw-angal-a pamopeene
2-PST-walk-RECP-APPL-IPFV COM=AUG-15-be_well-FV together
‘They visited and accompanied each other.’

(3) ɪ-n-gwina j-iis-aga n=ʊ-kʊ-j-eega ɪ-n-gambilɪ
AUG-9-crocodile 18-15-9-take-FV AUG-9-monkey
n=ʊ-kʊ-bʊʊk-a na=jo pa-lʊ-sʊngo pa-kw-angal-a
COM=AUG-15-go-FV COM=REF.9 16-11-island 16-15-be_well-FV
‘Crocodile used to come to pick up Monkey and go with him to an island to spend time together.’

(4) ii-sıkʊ l-mo u-n-na gw-a n-gwina a-a-lɪ m̩-bine
5-day 5-one AUG-1-1-his_mother 1-ASSOC 9-crocodile 1-PST-COP 1-ill
‘One day Crocodile’s mother was sick.’

(5) po ɪ-n-gwina j-aa-bʊʊk-ile n-kʊ-ji-bʊʊl-a ɪ-n-gambilɪ ukʊtɪ
then AUG-9-crocodile 18-15-9-tell-FV AUG-9-monkey COMP
“jʊʊba gw-angʊ ń-bine. tu-bʊʊk-e ʊ-ka-n-keet-e”
my_mother(1) 1-poss.1sg 1-ill 1-pl-go-subj 2sg-rtv-1-watch-subj

’So Crocodile went to Monkey to tell him “My mother is sick. Let’s go, you should see her.”

(6) i-n-gambilɪ j-aal-īitiike
AUG-9-monkey 9-pst-agree.pfv
‘Monkey agreed.’

(7) ba-lnku-boo-k-a
2-narr-go-fv
‘They went.’

(8) bo j-iitog-ile pa-mwanya pa-n-gwina ʊ-kʊ-boo-k-a
as 9-mount-pfv 16-high 16-9-crocodile AUG-15-go-fv
kʊ-ko-n-keet-a ʊ-n-na gw-a n-gwina bo ba-li
17-15-1-watch-fv AUG-1-his_mmother 1-assoc 9-crocodile as 2-cop
pa-katɪ pa-m-isi bi-kw-end-a i-n-gwina
16-middle 16-6-water 2-prs-walk/travel-fv AUG-9-crocodile
jɪ-lnkʊ-and-a ʊ-kʊ-lɪl-a a-ma-soosi
9-narr-begin-fv AUG-15-cry-fv AUG-6-tear
‘When monkey had mounted Crocodile, going to see Crocodile’s mother, when they were travelling in the middle of the water, Crocodile started to cry.’

(9) po i-n-gambilɪ ji-lnku-tri “fi-ki m-manyaani gw-angʊ
then AUG-9-monkey 9-narr-say 8-what 1-friend 1-poss.1sg
kʊ-lɪl-a?”
2sg.prs-cry-fv
‘Monkey said “Why, my friend, are you crying?”’

(10) i-n-gwina ji-lnku-tri “n-sulumeenie fiijo paapo ʊko
AUG-9-monkey 9-narr-say 1sg-afflict.pfv intens because now
n-iis-ile n-ko-kw-eg-a ʊ-ti-kʊ-gomok-a kangɪ
1sg-come-pfv 18-15-2sg-take-fv 2sg-NEG-prs-return-fv again
‘Crocodile said “I’m very sad, because this time that I’ve come to pick you up you won’t return.”’

(11) po i-n-gambilɪ ji-lnku-tri “fi-ki n-di-kʊ-gomok-a kangɪ?”
then AUG-9-monkey 9-narr-say 8-what 1sg-NEG-prs-return-fv again
‘Monkey said “Why won’t I return?”’
"Crocodile said: "We went to a witch doctor. The witch doctor said that a monkey's heart is required. That is the medicine for my mother. Then she'll heal."

Monkey said "Don't worry! Now look, why didn't you speak before picking me up?"

"Crocodile said "I was worrying that you would refuse."

Monkey said "Now you did badly because monkeys don't have their hearts inside the body. Us monkeys we leave them in the trees. There where you met me, in the tree, didn't you see the things that were dangling in there?"
**B Texts**

(16) i-n-gwina ji-lnkʊ-ti “ee, m-fi-bwene”
AUG-9-monkey 9-NARR-say yes, 1SG-8-see.PFV
'Crocodile said “Yes, I saw them.”'

(17) ji-lnkʊ-ti “syo n-dumbula sy-mʊ i-si si-li=po
9-NARR-say REF.10 10-heart 10-POS.2PL AUG-PROX.10 10-COP=16
mu-la? po ʊkɪ tu-gomok-e, tʊ-ka-tʊŋʊl-e ji-mo”
18-DIST then now 1PL-return-SUBJ 1PL-ITV-pick-SUBJ 9-one
'It said “Are those your hearts in there? Then let’s return, let’s pick one.”'

(18) po i-n-gwina ji-lnkʊ-gomok-a mpaka kʊ-m-balt kʊ-[l]-i
then AUG-9-crocodile 9-NARR-return-PFV until 17-9-side 17-11-river
'Crocodile returned to the shore of the river.'

(19) i-n-gambɪlɪ ji-lnkʊ-bʊʊl-a a-ba-nine
AUG-9-monkey 9-NARR-2-tell-PFV AUG-2-companion
'Monkey told the other monkeys.'

(20) ji-lnkʊ-fyʊk-a mu-m-piki gw-a baa-mwembe
9-NARR-climb 18-3-tree 3-ASSOC 2-mango(<SWA)
'He climbed up a mango tree.'

(21) a-lnkʊ-ji-kooləl-a i-n-gwina ʊkʊtɪ ji-j-e kɪfuki
1-NARR-9-call-PFV AUG-9-crocodile COMP 9-be(come)-SUBJ near
paa-si
16-below
'He called crocodile so that it would be close below.'

(22) a-lnkʊ-si-bʊʊl-a i-n-gambɪlɪ ni-nine
1-NARR-10-tell-PFV AUG-10-monkey AUG-companion.10
'The told the other monkeys.'

(23) si-lnkw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-ji-tuuny-a na=a-baa-mwembe
10-NARR-begin-PFV AUG-15-9-throw-PFV COM=AUG-2-mango
i-n-gwina
AUG-9-crocodile
'They started throwing mangoes at Crocodile.'

(24) fyobeene i-n-gwina ʊ-𝑚-bʊlɪ gw-ake ʊ-kʊ-j-a
therefore AUG-9-crocodile AUG-3-body 3-POSS.SG 3-NEG-be(come)-PFV
B.2 Narrative: Hare and Skunk

This narrative was told by a male speaker in his 60s in the village of Lwangwa in December 2014.

(1) po tu-ku-ti kalulọ na nsyisyi ba-a-li ba-manyaani fiijo then 1PL-PRS-say hare(1) COM skunk(1) 2-PST-COP 2-friend INTENS 'We say, Hare and Skunk were good friends.'

(2) b-end-aga b-oosa koko ti ko-no bi-ko-buk-ak-a 2-PST.walk/travel-IPFV 2-all every 17-PROX 2-PRS-go-fv 'They went together wherever they went.'

(3) po leelo ii-siku nr-mo kalulọ na nsyisyi ba-a-buk-ile then now/but 5-day 5-one hare(1) COM skunk(1) 2-PST-go-PFV n-ko-fwm-a 18-15-hunt-fv 'So one day Hare and Skunk went to hunt.'

(4) po bo bi-ko-fwm-a ba-a-kol-ile ii-kanga then as 2-PRS-hunt-fv 2-PST-grasp/hold-PFV 5-guineafowl 'When they were hunting they caught a guinea fowl.'
(5) **po ba-a-hobwike fiijo**

then 2-PST-be(come)_happy.PFV INTENS

‘They were very happy.’

(6) **po ba-lnkʊ-bʊʊk-a ku-ka-aja**

then 2-NARR-go-FV 17-12-homestead

‘They went home.’

(7) **bo ba-fik-ile ku-ka-aja ba-a-peeny-ile**

as 2-arrive-PFV 17-12-homestead 2-PST-remove_feathers-PFV

ii-kanga li-la
5-guineafowl 5-DIST

‘When they arrived home, they removed the feathers from that guinea fowl.’

(8) **ba-a-peeny-ile,**

2-PST-remove_feathers-PFV

(9) **ba-a-peeny-ile**

2-PST-remove_feathers-PFV

‘They removed feathers and removed feathers.’

(10) **po ba-aly-and-ile u-kooky-a m-m-ooto**

then 2-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-roast-FV 18-3-fire

‘They began to roast it over fire.’

(11) **po bo bi-k-ooky-a po nsyisyiy a-lnkʊ-m-boo-ol-a kalolo**

then as 2-PRS-roast-FV then skunk(1) 1-NARR-1-tell-FV hare(1)

a-lnkʊ-ti “ni-nyama ji-p-iile, is-aga
1-NARR-say AUG-meat(9) 9-be(come)_burnt-PFV come-IPFV

tʊ-ly-ege!”

1PL-eat-IPFV.SUBJ

‘As they were roasting, Skunk told Hare “The meat is done, come let’s eat!”’

(12) **po kalolo a-lnkʊ-ti “taasi. ji-kaalɪ u-kʊ-py-a”**

then hare(1) 1-NARR-say yet 9-PERS AUG-15-be(come)_burnt-FV

‘Hare said “Later. It’s not yet done.”’

(13) **po nsyisyiy a-lnkʊ-ti “gwe ji-p-iile. is-aga**

then skunk(1) 1-NARR-say 2SG 9-be(come)_burnt-PFV come-IPFV
"Then Skunk said “You, it’s done. Come, let’s eat!”’

(14) kalʊlʊ a-linkʊ-ti “jɪ-kaalɪʊ-kʊ-py-a”
hare(1) 1-NARR-say 9-PERS AUG-15-be(come)_burnt-FV
‘Hare said “It’s not yet done.”’

(15) ba-linkw-angal-a,
2-NARR-be_well-FV

(16) ba-linkw-angal-a
2-NARR-be_well-FV
‘They sat together and sat together.’

(17) kangɪ nsyisyɪ a-linkʊ-ti “jɪ-p-iile n-nyama,
again skunk(1) 1-NARR-say 9-be(come)_burnt-PFV AUG-meat(9)
is-agɑ tʊ-ly-ege!”
come-PFV 1PL-eat-PFV.SUBJ
‘Then Skunk again said “The meat is done, come let’s eat!”

(18) Kalʊlʊ a-linkʊ-ti “jɪ-kaalɪʊ-kʊ-py-a”
hare(1) 1-NARR-say 9-PERS AUG-15-be(come)_burnt-FV
‘Hare said “It’s not yet done.”’

(19) po nsyisyɪ a-a-kateele
then skunk(1) 1-PST-be(come)_tired.PFV
‘Then Skunk became tired.’

(20) a-aly-and-ileʊ-kʊ-sipʊk-a
1-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-doze-FV
‘He began to doze.’

(21) po bo i-ku-sipʊk-a, bo a-gon-ileʊ-tʊ-lo po kalʊlʊ
then as 1-PRS-doze-FV as 1-rest-PFV AUG-12-sleep then hare(1)
a-aly-eg-ile n-nyama j-oosa
1-PST-take-PFV AUG-meat(9) 9-all
‘As he was dozing, as he was asleep, Hare took all the meat.’

(22) a-a-l-iile pyʊ́,
1-PST-eat-PFV of_consuming_completely
'He ate it up, he ate it up.'

'When Skunk woke up, he found that Hare had eaten all of the meat.'

'So he asked Hare “The meat, where has it gone?”'

'Hare said “Hee, I was also asleep. Look, it all burnt to ashes. It burnt, hee.”'

'Skunk was very angry.'

'He said “OK!”'

'Another day they went to sleep.'

'Skunk also went.'
(31) a-a-j-ile kʊ-lond-a a-ma-ani
1-PST-go-PFV 15-search-FV AUG-6-leaf
'He went and searched for leaves.'

(32) a-al-iis-ile na=a-ma-ani ga-la bo a-gon-ile ṻ-tʊ-lo
1-PST-come-PFV COM=AUG-6-leaf 6-DIST as 1-rest-PFV AUG-13-sleep
kala
hare(1)
'He came with those leaves, while Hare was asleep.'

(33) a-alɪ-n-kupɪkiile pa-mwanya
1-PST-1-cover.PFV 16-above
'He covered him [with the leaves].'

(34) po bo a-n-kupɪkiile a-a-lond-ile ɪ-n-gili, bo kala a-gon-ile
then as 1-1-cover.PFV 1-PST-search-PFV AUG-9-stick as hare(1) 1-rest-PFV
ʊ-tʊ-lo
AUG-12-sleep
'When he had covered him, he searched for a stick, while Hare was asleep.'

(35) po nsyɪsyɪ a-a-kom-ile,
then skunk(1) 1-PST-hit-PFV

(36) a-a-kom-ile,
1-PST-hit-PFV

(37) a-a-kom-ile,
1-PST-hit-PFV

(38) a-a-kom-ile
1-PST-hit-PFV
'Then Skunk hit and hit and hit and hit him.'

(39) a-a-kom-ile
1-PST-hit-PFV
'He hit him.'

(40) a-a-bop-ile pa-nja
1-PST-run-PFV 16-outside
'He ran outside.'
(41) a-a-sook-ile pa-nja
1-PST-leave-PFV 16-other
‘He went outside.’

(42) po kalʊlʊ a-lmkʊ-lembʊk-a
then hare(1) 1-NARR-awake-FV
‘Then Hare woke up.’

(43) i-kʊ-kuut-a “hɪhɪɪ. ba-n-gom-ile, ba-n-gom-ile, ba-n-gom-ile”
1-PRS-cry-FV of_crying 2-1SG-hit-PFV 2-1SG-hit-PFV 2-1SG-hit-PFV
‘Then Hare woke up. He cries “Hihii. They’ve beaten me, they’ve beaten me, they’ve beaten me.”’

(44) po nsyɪsyɪ “jw-ani a-kʊ-kom-ile?”
then skunk(1) 1-who 1-2SG-hit-PFV
‘Skunk: “Who’s beaten you?”’

(45) “ndɪɪsi, ndɪɪsi, ndɪɪsi. I don’t know I don’t know I don’t know I don’t know
ndɪɪsi. ba-n-gom-ile,”
I don’t know. 2-1SG-hit-PFV
‘[Hare:] “I don’t know, I don’t know, I don’t know. I don’t know, I don’t know. They’ve beaten me.”’

(46) po “jw-ani a-kʊ-kom-ile, gwe?”
then 1-who 1-2SG-hit-PFV 2SG
‘[Skunk]: “Who’s beaten you?”’

(47) “gwe ndɪɪsi. ndɪɪsi, ndɪɪsi.”
2SG I don’t know I don’t know I don’t know
‘[Hare:] “I don’t know. I don’t know, I don’t know.”’

(48) ngɪmba mu-n-dumbula i-kʊ-ti “n-gʊ-tosiisye.”
behold 18-9-heart 1-PRS-say 1SG-2SG-pay_back-PFV
‘But in his heart he [Skunk] is thinking “I’ve paid you back.”’

(49) po leelo po ii-sikʊ lɪ-mo ba-a-bʊʊk-ile b-oosa kʊ-kʊ-mog-a
then now/but then 5-day 5-one 2-PST-go-PFV 2-all 17-15-dance-FV
1-n-goma
AUG-9-type_of_drum
‘Then one day they went together to dance to the Ngoma drums.’
B.2 Narrative: Hare and Skunk

(50) po bo ba-fik-ile pa-la kalolux a-aly-eg-ile t-n-goma
then as 2-arrive-PFV 16-DIST hare(1) 1-PST-take-PFV AUG-9-t.o.drum

‘When they arrived there, Hare took a drum.’

(51) a-aly-and-ile Ṽ-ko-kom-a “n-aa-l-iile j-oosa ni-nyama
1-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-hit-FV 1SG-PST-eat-PFV 9-all AUG-meat(9)
m-m-ooto. n-dmkux-ti jr-bwes-ile. n-dmkux-ti
18-3-fire 1SG-NARR-say 9-be_burnt_down-PFV 1SG-NARR-say
jɪ-bwes-ile”
9-be_burnt_down-PFV”

‘He began to beat it “I ate all the meat on the fire. I said it had burnt. I said it had burnt.”’

(52) po nisyi a-Imu-pilikisy-a
then skunk(1) 1-NARR-listen-FV

‘Skunk listened.’

(53) po bo a-brk-ile paa-si t-n-goma j-oope nisyi
then as 1-put-PFV 16-below AUG-9-t.o.drum 1-also skunk(1)
eeg-a t-n-goma
1.SUBSEC.take-FV AUG-9-t.o.drum

‘When he [Hare] had put the drum on the ground, Skunk also took the drum.’

(54) a-aly-and-ile Ṽ-ko-kom-a t-n-goma Ṽ-ko-ti
1-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-hit-FV AUG-9-t.o.drum AUG-15-say
“n-aa-lr-kom-ile, n-aa-lr-kom-ile. n-aa-lkomile~lr-kom-ile
1SG-PST-5-hit-PFV 1SG-PST-5-hit-PFV 1SG-PST-REDUPL~5-hit-PFV
paa-nyuma”
16-back(9)

‘He started to beat the drum saying ”I beat him, I beat him. I beat him on the back.”’

(55) po kalolux a-lmkux-pilikisy-a
then hare(1) 1-NARR-listen-FV

‘Hare listend.’

(56) po bo i-kux-pilikisy-a po a-a-sumwike kalolux
then as 1-PRS-listen-FV then 1-PST-depart.PFV hare(1)

‘As he was listening, Hare stood up.’
(57) a-lmkw-m-bool-a nsıysiyí “ngimba jo u-gwe gw-alt-n-gom-iile?” 
1-NARR-tell-PFV skunk(1) behold REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-1SG-hit-PFV
‘He told Skunk “So it was you who beat me?”’

(58) j-oope nsıysiyí a-lmkw-tí “ngimba jo u-gwe gw-a-l-iile 
1-also skunk(1) 1-NARR-say behold REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-eat-PFV
n-nyama j-oosa?
AUG-meat(9) 9-all
‘Also Skunk said “So you ate all the meat!”’

(59) “ngimba jo u-gwe gw-alt-n-gom-iile.” 
behold REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-1SG-hit-PFV
'[Hare:] “So you beat me?!”’

(60) “n-gú-tí “jo u-gwe gw-a-l-iile n-nyama j-oosa.””
1SG-PRS-say REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-eat-PFV AUG-meat(9) 9-all
‘[Skunk:] “I’m saying “You ate all the meat.””’

(61) “n-gú-tí “ngimba jo u-gwe gw-alt-n-gom-iile?”
1SG-PRS-say behold 1.REF AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-1SG-hit-PFV
n-gó-kw-ani-a”
1SG-PRS-2SG-ask-FV
‘[Hare:] “I’m saying “It was you who beat me?” I’m asking you.”’

(62) “ngimba jo u-gwe gw-a-l-iile n-nyama j-oosa”
behold REF.1 AUG-2SG 2SG-PST-eat-PFV AUG-meat(9) 9-all
‘[Skunk:] “So you ate all the meat.”’

(63) po ba-aly-angil-eene mu-đìl
then 2-PST-catch-RECP.PFV 18-3-body
‘They grasped each other’s bodies.’

(64) kol-aan-a, kol-aan-a, kol-aan-a 
grasp/hold-RECP-FV grasp/hold-RECP-FV grasp/hold-RECP-FV
ba-a-kol-eene
2-PST-grasp/hold-RECP.PFV
‘Holding each other, holding each other, holding each other, they held each other.’

1This use of kolaana is the only attested use of a bare verb stem that does not serve as an imperative.
B.2 Narrative: Hare and Skunk

(65) po kaŋkwa a-ali-n-kol-ile nsyisyi
then hare(1) 1-PST-1-grasp/hold-PFV skunk(1)
'Hare grasped Skunk.'

(66) a-ali-m-bind-ile kʊ-ka-nwa
1-PST-1-squeeze-PFV 17-12-mouth
'He squeezed around his [Skunk’s] snout.'

(67) a-aly-and-ile ṣ-kʊ-bind-a kʊ-ka-nwa
1-PST-begin-PFV AUG-15-squeeze-fV 17-12-mouth
'He began to squeeze around his snout.'

(68) po j-oope nsyisyi a-a-kol-ile Ḣ-m-bulɔkɔtu sy-a kaŋkwa
then 1-also skunk(1) 1-PST-grasp/hold-PFV AUG-10-ear 10-ASSOC hare(1)
'Also Skunk grasped Hare’s ears.'

(69) a-aly-and-ile ṣ-kʊ-luus-a, ṣ-kʊ-luus-a
'He started to pull, to pull.'

(70) ba-linku-lw-a,
2-NARR-fight-fV

(71) ba-linku-lw-a,
2-NARR-fight-fV

(72) ba-linku-lw-a
2-NARR-fight-fV
'They fought and fought and fought.'

(73) po leelo j-aal-iis-ile Ḣ-m-bwa
then now/but 9-PST-come-PFV AUG-9-dog
'Then Dog came.'

(74) j-aa-t-ile “ʊ-mwe na=mu-lek-e ṣ-kʊ-lw-a!”
'He said “You (pl.), now stop fighting!”'

(75) po ba-a-lek-eene
then 2-PST-let-RECP.PFV
'They released each other.'
B.3 Expository: The custom of dancing

This expository text was told by a male speaker in his 40s at Manow mission in October 2015.

1. a-ka-sumo ka-a kʊ-mog-a
   AUG-12-custom 12-ASSOC 15-dance-FV
   ‘The custom of dancing.’

2. ba-a-li=po a-ba-ndʊ b-a ijolo a-ba-tasi
   2-PST-COP AUG-2-person 2-ASSOC old_times AUG-2-ancestor
   ‘There were the people of old times, the ancestors.’

3. ba-a-li n=ii-penenga
   2-PST-COP COM=5-type_of_drum
   ‘They had the Penenga drum.’

4. i-n-dingala i-jt j-aa-job-igw-aga ukʊtɪ ii-penenga
   AUG-9-drum AUG-PROX.9 9-PST-speak-PASS-IPFV COMP 5-penenga
   ‘This drum was called Penenga.’

5. po ū-lʊ-sumo lw-ake ba-a-mog-agɑ fiijo
   then AUG-11-custom 11-POS.SG 2-PST-dance-IPFV INTENS
   ‘As to its custom, they danced much.’

6. kʊ-ku-mog-a kw-ake ba-a-fwal-aga kanunu fiijo
   17-15-dance-FV 15-POS.SG 2-PST-dress/wear-IPFV well INTENS
   ‘For the dancing they dressed well.’

7. b-oog-agɑ fiijo
   2-PST.bathe-IPFV INTENS
   ‘They bathed well.’
B.3 Expository: The custom of dancing

(8) ba-mo ba-a-sanjʊl-aga n=ɪɪ-nywili
2-one 2-PST-comb-IPFV COM=AUG-hair
‘Some combed their hair.’

(9) sy-a-fyʊk-aga fiijo
10-PST-climb-IPFV INTENS
‘It stood much.’

(10) ba-a-sanjʊl-aga
2-PST-comb-IPFV
‘They combed it.’

(11) ba-a-t-ɪgɪ ɪ-fi-bwesi
2-PST-say-IPFV AUG-8-type_of_hairstyle
‘They called it Fibwesi [hairstyle].’

(12) ba-mo ba-a-sanjʊl-aga
2-one 2-PST-COMB-IPFV
‘Some combed it.’

(13) ba-a-bɪɪk-aga n=ɪɪ-syɪti
2-PST-put-IPFV COM=AUG-parting
‘They parted it.’

(14) ba-a-kol-aga na=a-ma-koma ng’ombe ga-a
2-PST-grasp/hold-IPFV COM=AUG-6-hit cow
6-ASSOC
ekʊ-mog-el-a
15-dance-APPL-FV
‘They also used whips for dancing.’

(15) bo ba-kaalɪ ʊ-kw-and-a ʊ-kʊ-mog-a ba-a-fwal-aga
ɪ-my-enda ɪ-my-elu, pamo a-ma-golole a-m-eelu
AUG-4-cloth AUG-4-white or AUG-6-sheet AUG-6-white
‘Before starting to dance, they would put on white clothes, or white sheets.’

(16) ga-a-j-aga a-ma-fume fiijo
6-PST-be(come)-IPFV AUG-6-embroidered INTENS
‘They were nicely embroidered.’
(17) ga-a-fwan-aga mu-ndʊ a-ti-kʊ-kol-a=po
6-PST-resemble-IPFV 1-person 1-NEG-PRS-grasp/hold-FV=PART
'They [were so clean that it] appeared as if a person never held them at all.'

(18) looli leelo ngimba a-ba-ndʊ bi-kʊ-kol-a kʊʊ-nongwa
but now/but behold AUG-2-person 2-PRS-grasp/hold-FV 17-issue(9)
j-aa kʊ-tɪ a-ba-ndʊ ba-la ba-a-j-aga b-iifyusi
9-ASSOC 15-say AUG-2-person 2-DIST 2-PST-be(come)-IPFV 2-clean
fiijo
INTENS
'But truly, behold, people hold them because those people were very neat.'

(19) po lʊngə bo bə-li pa-kʊ-mog-a ba-a-mog-aga
then if/when as 2-COP 16-15-dance-PFV 2-PST-dance-IPFV
'When people were dancing, they danced.'

(20) ba-a-labɪl-aga u-bʊ-pande bʊ-mo bw-ene
2-PST-go_in_direction-IPFV AUG-14-side<SWA 14-one 14-self
'They tilted to one side.'

(21) lʊngə bi-kʊ-sanuk-a kʊ-gə sanuk-ɪl-aga u-bʊ-pande
if/when 2-PRS-alter-FV again 2-PST-alter-APPL-IPFV AUG-14-side
'When they turned, they turned to the [other] side.'

(22) lʊmo ba-a-bop-el-aga na n-ky-eni
maybe 2-PST-run-APPL-IPFV COM 18-7-forehead
'Sometimes they would run to the front.'

(23) po a-ba-kiikʊʊ ba-a-j-anga=po ba-la ba-a
then AUG-2-woman 2-PST-be(come)-IPFV=16 2-DIST 2-ASSOC
kʊ-luluuitɪl-a ŋʊkʊti “lulululululu”
15-ululate-FV COMP of_ululating
'As for the women, there were those that ululuated “lulululululu”.'

(24) halafu lʊngə ba-luluutɪle po ba-a-mog-aga fiijo
afterwards(<SWA) if/when 2-ululate.PFV then 2-PST-dance-IPFV INTENS
'When they [women] had ulululated, they [men] danced much.'
B.3 Expository: The custom of dancing

(25) j-oope i-n-dingala ba-a-kʊb-aga fiijo
9-also AUG-9-drum 2-pst-beat-IPFV INTENS
'They also beated the drum hard.'

(26) po lɪnga ba-kʊb-ile bo ʊ-lʊ, lɪnga jɪ-lɪ kw-Itete kʊ-la,
then if/when 2-beat-IPFV as AUG-PROX.11 if/when 9-COP 17-I. 17-DIST
j-iis-aga kʊ-fik-a mpaka kʊ-no
9-pst.come-IPFV 15-arrive-FV until 17-PROX
'When they beated it like this, if it was in Itete over there, it [noise]
would come to reach this place here.'

(27) po tw-a-many-aga ʊkʊtɪ kʊ-la ʊ-bw-ite bo-kol-eene
then 1PL-pst-know-IPFV COMP 17-DIST AUG-14-fight 14-hold-RECP.FPV
ʊ-bw-a kʊ-moga
AUG-14-ASSOC 15-dance-FV
'Then we would know that a dancing competition was being held.'

(28) a-ka-sumo ka-tɪ fi, ka-nog-eliile
AUG-12-custom 12-say what 12-be_satisfying-INTS.PFV
'The custom is what?, it is very enjoyable.'

(29) po a-ba-ndʊ b-iisʊl-aga pa-la pa-kʊ-keet-a
then AUG-2-person 2-pst-be(come)_full-IPFV 16-DIST 16-15-watch-FV
'People crowded there to look.'

(30) kʊʊ-nongwa j-aa kʊ-tr fi-ki, ba-a-mog-aga kanunu fiijo
17-issue(9) 9-ASSOC 15-say 8-what 2-pst-dance-IPFV well INTENS
'For what reason, [because] they danced very well.'

(31) lɪnga ba-lɪ pa-kʊ-sanuk-a kʊʊ-nyuma kʊ-no k-oope
if/when 2-pst 16-15-alter-FV 17-back(9) 17-PROX 17-also
ba-a-kyakyatl-aga fiijo bʊno~bʊ-no
2-pst-move_back_and_forth-IPFV INTENS REDUPL~14-DEM
'When they were turning back there they would move quickly back and
forth like this.'

(32) po lɪnga ba-mog-ile kʊ-ku-mogo lw-abo a-ba-ndʊ
then if/when 2-dance-PFV 17-11-dance 11-poss.pl AUG-2-person
ba-a-hobok-aga fiijo
2-pst-be(come)_happy-IPFV INTENS
'When they danced, people rejoiced much at their dance.'
B Texts

(33) kəʊ-nongawa j-aa kə-ti fi-ndo fi-ki, ju-la u-gw-a
17-issue(9) 9-ASSOC 15-say 8-thing 8-what 1-DIST AUG-1-ASSOC
kə-kəb-a j-oope a-kəb-ile kanunu, a-ba-a kʊ-mog-a
15-beat-FV 1-also 1-beat-PFV well AUG-2-ASSOC 15-dance-FV
ba-mog-ile kanunu
2-dance-PFV well

'For what reason, [because] the drum player had played well, the dancers had danced well.'

(34) po bo ŋdi sisii~si po lo lw-iho lw-itu twee then as 18 REDUPL~PROX.10 then REF.11 11-custom 11-POSS.1PL 1PL
ba-Nyakyusa
2-Ny.

'So this is the custom of us, the Nyakyusa people.'

(35) ii-penenga i-li ba-a-b-oot-aga n=ʊ-kʊ-b-oot-a
5-t.o.drum AUG-PROX.5 2-PST-2-invite-IPFV COM=AUG-15-2-invite-FV
ingly pamo si-li=mo n-jerehe
if/when or 10-COP=18 AUG-festivity(9)(<SWA)

'As for that drum, they invited and invited people when there was a celebration.'

(36) po ba-a-bʊʊk-aga ku-kʊ-mog-a
then 2-PST-go-IPFV 17-15-dance-FV

'So they went to dance.'

(37) po palì sisii~si si-li m-bʊ-pimba, m-bʊ-pimba
then 16 REDUPL~PROX.10 10-COP 18-14-short 18-14-short

'So this is it in short, in short.'

(38) po si-tumukiile papaa~pa
then 10-end_at.PFV REDUPL~PROX.16

'It has finished right here.'
References


References


Budd, Peter. 2014. Partitives in Oceanic languages. In Silvia Luraghi & Thomas Huumo (eds.), Partitive cases and related categories, 523–561. de Gruyter.
References


References


Haspelmath, Martin. 2013. Argument indexing: A conceptual framework for the syntactic status of bound person forms. In Dik Bakker & Martin Haspelmath
References


References


References


References


Persohn, Bastian & Rasmus Bernander. 2016. *A note on the present tenses in some southern Tanzanian Bantu languages*. Unpublished manuscript.


Wilson, Monica. 1958. The peoples of the Nyasa-Tanganyika corridor. Cape Town: University of Cape Town.
References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Aristotle, 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austin, John L., 295</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bain, James Alexander, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar-el, Leora, 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bastin, Yvonne, 13, 145, 222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bearth, Thomas, 47, 48, 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bennet, William G, 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Berger, Paul, 3–5, 12, 54, 55, 94, 110, 145–147, 149–151, 214, 233, 255, 256, 264, 275, 281, 289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bernander, Rasmus, 4, 5, 54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bickel, Balthasar, 18, 21, 22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bickmore, Lee, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Binnick, Robert I., 19, 20, 22, 121, 153, 249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bohnemeyer, Jürgen, 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bostoen, Koen, 5, 17, 35, 85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bresnan, Joan, 95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breu, Walter, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brinton, Laurel J., 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Budd, Peter, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Buffin, Jules Marc, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Busse, Joseph, 3–5, 12, 191, 214, 233, 264, 275, 281, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bybee, Joan L., 14, 160–162, 164, 249, 263, 288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlson, Gregory N., 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carlson, Robert, 179, 214, 229, 275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chafe, Wallace, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christensen, Lisa, 265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clemens, Laura, 38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cleve, 2, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cole, Desmond T., 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comrie, Bernard, 14, 17, 23, 72, 159, 180, 258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contini Morava, Ellen, 142, 213, 219, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook, John, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cover, Rebecca Tamar, 11, 192, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crane, Thera Maria, 1, 17, 20, 158–160, 240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croft, William, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Crowley, Terry, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dahl, Östen, 1, 11, 14, 161, 162, 164, 180, 209, 250, 251, 261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devos, Maud, 63, 68, 72, 268, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diercks, Michael, 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dimmendaal, Gerrit J., 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Doke, Clemens, 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dom, Sebastian, 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dooley, Robert A., 178, 179, 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downing, Laura J., 77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dowty, David R., 116, 120–122, 162, 166</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Name index

Duranti, Alessandro, 4
Eaton, Helen, 5, 8, 12, 59, 60, 223, 234, 292, 293
Ebneter, Theodor, 265
Ehret, Christopher, 6, 8
Essen, Otto von, 3, 4, 32, 38
Evans, Vyvyan, 15
Fauconnier, Gilles, 24
Felberg, Knut, 5, 11, 40, 88, 145, 149, 150, 313
Fenning, Charles D., 2
Filip, Hana, 20
Fintel, Kai von, 288
Fleisch, Axel, 1, 79, 115
Fleischman, Suzanne, 24, 25, 169, 193, 194, 203, 205, 207, 214, 228, 238, 258
Fourshey, Catherine Cymone, 8
Freed, Alice, 21, 121
Fülleborn, Friedrich, 6
Givón, Talmy, 178, 199, 293
Good, Jeffrey Craig, 97
Gray, Hazel, 60, 66, 108, 293
Green, Melanie, 15
Greenway, P.J., 5
Güldemann, Tom, 23, 48, 52, 53, 250, 279, 311
Guthrie, Malcolm, 3, 38
Haspelmath, Martin, 54, 204, 222, 328
Hawkinson, A.K., 4
Heine, Bernd, 6, 14
Hodson, T.C., 3, 5
Hopper, Paul J., 23, 169
Hyman, Larry M., 5, 29, 32, 43, 79, 80, 107, 110, 148
Jakobson, Roman, 213
Jaxontov, Sergej Je., 164
Johanson, Lars, 21, 160
Johnston, Henry Hamilton, 3, 4, 6, 8
Jones, Larry B., 175
Jones, Linda K., 175
Kähler-Meyer, Emmi, 3, 4, 32, 38
Kamp, Hans, 163
Karels, Jacob., 27
Katamba, Francis X., 39, 40, 43, 48
Kemmer, Suzanne, 90
Kenny, Anthony, 20
Kershner, Tiffany L., 1, 6, 13, 15–18, 20, 21, 114, 115, 136, 156, 159, 163, 164, 167, 185, 250
Kind, Jasper de, 222
King, Daniel, 5
Kishindo, Pascal J., 6, 30, 36, 38, 54, 142, 156, 167
Kisseberth, Charles, 38, 108
Kittilä, Seppo, 87
Klein, Wolfgang, 16, 192
Kolbusa, Stefanie, 5
Konter-Katani, Maggy, 2, 4, 5
Kriňa, Manfred, 224, 293
Kröger, Rüdiger, 3, 5
Kutsch Lojenga, Constance, 31, 288
Labov, William, 14, 24, 25, 229, 236
Labroussi, Catherine, 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 30, 35, 36, 38, 54, 80, 87, 89, 142
Lee, Seunghun J., 84
Lehmann, Christian, 290, 293
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Levinsohn, Stephen H.</td>
<td>27, 178, 179, 236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Levinson, Steven C.</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lewis, M. Paul</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindfors, Anna-Lena</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lindsted, Jouko</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longacre, Robert E.</td>
<td>14, 26, 175, 177, 178, 193, 211, 244</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lusekelo, Amani</td>
<td>4, 39, 40, 60, 95, 107, 108, 110, 115, 222, 251, 265, 282, 299</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Madan, Arthur Cornwallis</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maganga, Clement</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maho, Jouni Filip</td>
<td>2, 6, 9, 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marlo, Michael R.</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathangwane, Joyce T.</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maw, Joan</td>
<td>316</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>McCawley, James D.</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeussen, A. E.</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meinhof, Carl</td>
<td>2, 4, 40, 88, 109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Merensky, Alexander</td>
<td>3, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Method, Samuel</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meyer, Theodor</td>
<td>4, 111, 233</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michaelis, Laura A.</td>
<td>129</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miestamo, Matti</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moens, Marc</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Möhlig, Wilhelm J. G.</td>
<td>6, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Morrison, Michelle Elizabeth</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moshi, Lioba</td>
<td>95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mous, Maarten</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mreta, Abel Yamwaka</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulinda, M.F.</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muzale, Henry R.T.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mwakasaka, Christon S.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mwaliilino, Walusako A.</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mwangoka, Ngapona</td>
<td>3–5, 54, 80, 88, 161, 221, 233, 287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Namyalo, Saudah</td>
<td>43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nedjalkov, Vladimir P.</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nicolle, Steve</td>
<td>272, 291, 317</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nurse, Derek, 1, 4, 6–8, 14, 23, 29, 35, 38, 40, 142, 149, 161, 178, 186, 190, 192, 209, 210, 222, 229, 249, 250, 263, 265, 269, 282, 287</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nuyts, Jan</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Odden, David</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ogden, Charley Kay</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olmen, Daniël van</td>
<td>268, 271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palmer, Frank R.</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Park, George</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Payne, Doris L.</td>
<td>169, 171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Persohn, Bastian</td>
<td>4, 5, 20–22, 54, 63, 66, 68, 72, 126, 222, 228, 293</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippson, Gerard</td>
<td>6–8, 29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portner, Paul</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prein, Phillipp</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prince, Ellen F.</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reichenbach, Hans</td>
<td>15, 163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reyle, Uwe</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Richards, Ivor Armstrong</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ritz, Marie-Eve</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Robar, Elisabeth</td>
<td>179, 228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rose, Sandra R.</td>
<td>210, 270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rugemalira, Josephat M.</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sambeek, Jan Cornelius van</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sasse, Hans-Jürgen</td>
<td>18, 19, 21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schadeberg, Thilo C.</td>
<td>30, 77, 79, 89, 92, 97, 101–105, 110, 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Schumann, K.</td>
<td>2, 3, 5, 40, 55, 60, 70, 87, 88, 95, 97, 108–110, 146, 150, 161, 191, 221, 233, 251, 287</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Name index

255, 264, 265, 269, 285, 287, 321, 325
Seidel, Frank, 17, 22, 111, 115, 118, 136, 213, 229, 269–271
Shirtz, Shahir, 169
Simons, Gary F., 2
Smith, Carlota S., 18, 20, 203, 222
Stassen, Leon, 70, 305
Steedman, Mark, 163
Stolz, Adolf, 3, 5
Swilla, Imani N., 8, 9, 142, 293
Talmy, Leonard, 245
Tatevosov, Sergej, 20
Timberlake, Alan, 270
Toews, Carmela, 136
Tomlin, Russel S., 175
Tonhauser, Judith, 192
Traugott, Elizabeth Closs, 265
Vendler, Zeno, 19–22, 122, 140
Verkuyl, Henk J., 20, 122
Voorhoeve, Jan, 3–5, 54, 59, 80, 88, 161, 221, 233, 287

Wal, Jenneke van der, 43
Waletzky, Joshua, 14, 24, 25, 229, 236
Walsh, Martin T., 5, 8, 9, 55
Watters, David E., 179
Weber, Paul, 2, 3
Weinreich, Harald, 23
Welmers, William Everett, 159
Werner, Alice, 5
Wilkins, David P., 317
Wilson, Monica, 2, 5, 6, 8, 9
Wolff, R., 59, 60, 110

Ziegeler, Debra, 293
Ziervogel, Dirk, 270
Language index

Avokaya, 178
Badiaranke, 229
Bemba, 87
Bena, 229
Biblical Hebrew, 179, 229
Central Sudanic languages, 6
Chasu, 115
Chewa, 87
Digo, 272, 291
English, 16, 19, 21, 114, 120, 121, 192
Fipa, 7, 8
Ganda, 43
German, 192
Iwa, 7
Kalanga, 87
Kanyoka, 72
Kaonde, 72
Kham, 179
Kikongo, 17, 222
Kinga, 2, 35, 59, 60, 110
Kisi, 2, 35, 60, 108, 293
Lamba, 23
Lambya, 7
Luchazi, 115
Makhuwa, 108
Malila, 7, 31, 60, 234, 288, 293
Mambwe, 7, 8
Namwanga, 7, 8, 288
Ndali, 2, 4, 6, 6, 7, 8, 20, 30, 38, 66, 75, 87, 91, 108, 110, 115, 115, 126, 136, 137, 142, 147, 147, 156, 159, 234, 275, 293, 314
Ngonde, 2, 6, 8, 9, 30, 36, 38, 54, 142, 156, 167
Nyamwezi, 110
Nyika, 7–9, 60, 288
Old French, 238
Penja, 9
Pimbwe, 8
Proto-Bantu, 4, 13, 30, 55, 81, 83, 97, 249, 303
Rungu, 7
Rungwa, 7
Saamia, 115
Safwa, 2, 7, 8, 59, 60
Siamou, 136
South Cushitic languages, 6
Sukwa, 6, 8, 15–17, 20, 21, 115, 115, 136, 137, 156, 159, 183
Supyire, 229
Swahili, 2, 5, 213, 219, 229, 276, 316
Language index

Tooro, 38^8
Totela, 17, 158^9, 159, 160^10, 240
Tsonga, 84^5
Tumbuka, 72

Umbundu, 72

Wandia, 7, 8
Wanji, 2, 59^6, 60

Yao, 151
Yeyi, 17, 111, 115^1, 118, 136, 229, 269, 270, 271^3
Yucatec Maya, 293

Zulu, 114, 270
**Subject index**

aktionsart, 22, 79
applicative, 52\(^1\), 79, 82, 88, 107\(^{16}\), 92–110, 330

aspect
- anterior, 72, 161–164, 234, 238, 246, 314\(^4\)
  Aristotelian, 19–141, 171, 224, 225
generic, 113, 118, 119, 122, 123, 126, 128, 132, 137, 138, 153, 156, 180, 184, 185, 188, 199, 201, 202, 203\(^2\), 207, 224, 235, 259, 260, 275, 292, 293, 304, 320–322, 324
grammatical, 13, 16\(^{10}\), 17–19, 21, 22, 24, 29, 59, 65, 141, 164, 165, 171, 183, 193, 221, 222, 224–229, 232, 236
habitual, 113, 118, 119, 122, 123, 126, 128, 132, 137, 138, 153, 156, 180, 184, 185, 188, 199, 201, 202, 203\(^2\), 207, 224, 235, 259, 260, 264, 269, 275, 276, 287, 291–293, 320–322
perfective, 66, 72, 113–115, 117–141, 144, 152, 157–180, 183, 188, 188\(^{23}\), 189, 192–197, 199, 201, 203, 204, 204\(^{28}\), 205, 207, 210\(^1\), 214–219, 221, 234, 234\(^{10}\), 236–238, 240, 246, 304, 311, 314\(^{4}\), 324
persistive, 113–115, 117–140, 163, 164\(^{14}\), 186–190, 196, 254, 327
progressive, 115, 117–140, 152, 156, 157, 184–186, 191, 199, 203\(^2\), 207, 222, 222\(^3\), 226, 229, 232, 254, 259, 265, 292, 322, 327
prospective, 191, 258–260, 264–266, 320, 327
associative, see reciprocal
auxiliary, 29, 115–141, 163, 186, 187, 190, 222, 233, 241, 249, 250, 254, 260, 261, 264, 303, 314, 320, 327

base, 51, 77–78, 97, 106–109, 111, 148

behavioural, 12
causative, 82, 85–89, 94, 106, 107, 107\(^{16}\), 108–110, 148–151
clauses types (Labov & Waletzky)
  - co-ordinate clause, 24, 230–232, 236, 243–245
  - free clause, 24, 177, 182, 232
Subject index

narrative clause, 24, 162, 229, 232, 236, 242, 243
restricted clause, 24, 177, 182, 229, 230, 232, 236
comparative, 70–72
completion, 16\textsuperscript{10}, 159–160, 164–167, 237, 240
component of meaning
expressive, 26, 193, 202, 205, 207\textsuperscript{29}
metalinguistic, 26, 233, 247
textual, 26, 171, 193, 202, 205, 207\textsuperscript{29}, 216, 233, 246
conditional, 183, 198, 250, 254, 267, 299–301
consonants, 35–38
copula, 66, 164, 165, 167, 171, 173, 185, 189–194, 196, 203, 207, 208, 221, 243, 244, 249, 254\textsuperscript{1}, 265, 280, 303–311
denominal verbs, 102, 110–111
derivation, 29, 51, 65, 79–112
dialects, 8–10, 53, 54, 88\textsuperscript{8}, 149\textsuperscript{7}, 188, 194, 226\textsuperscript{7}, 251, 255–257, 261, 285
discourse participants, 46, 48, 55–58, 60–62, 189
enclitic, 51, 52, 52\textsuperscript{1}, 56, 61, 66–77, 144, 192, 269, 308, 324
evidential, 234, 314
expository, 12, 194
extensive, 104–106, 106\textsuperscript{15}
future
future (i)sa=, 255–257
future aa=, 250–255, 257, 261, 263, 265, 272, 299
future naa=, 257–258
future tense, see tense, future
indefinite future, 59, 251, 254, 256, 260–265, 322
modal future, 4, 59, 250, 252, 256, 267, 292–299
generic, 142, 199, 208, 223, 224, 234, 253, 275
grammaticalization, 14, 54, 222, 249, 260, 264–265, 288\textsuperscript{11}, 303, 317, 322
ideophones, 30, 111, 151, 306, 312
imbrication, 34, 78, 89, 144–152
impositive, 102–106
indefinite, 68, 72–74
information status, 26–27, 202–203, 207
intensive, 100–101
itive, 59, 109, 267, 271, 282–284, 291
locative, 41, 44, 46, 54, 63, 66–68, 72, 74\textsuperscript{12}, 75, 76, 93, 93\textsuperscript{10}, 95, 185,
Subject index

18621, 187–191, 197, 221, 244, 265, 307–309, 320, 321, 323, 326, 327


mood, 29, 59, 229, 267
desiderative, 59, 141, 250, 254, 267, 284, 287–292
imperative, 56, 61, 78, 7815, 267–271, 2713


narrative markers, 23, 29, 141, 169, 170, 172, 175, 177–179, 209–247


narrative tense, 324

negation, see negative


304, 309, 323–326

neuter, 82, 99–100, 104, 108


noun-to-verb derivation, see denominal verbs

object marker, 29, 51, 54, 55, 57, 60–65, 857, 166, 179, 268, 316, 324

partitive, 68–70

passive

fossilized, 89, 97–99, 106, 146

productive, 521, 85, 86, 89, 94–97, 99, 100, 106, 107

phal verbs, 21, 22, 116–140, 18822, 326

phase, 19, 21, 22, 115

Coda phase, 21, 115–140, 160, 16313, 18621

Nucleus phase, 21, 115–141, 153, 16313, 164–167, 18621, 196

Onset phase, 21, 116–140, 153, 18621

plot, 177, 214, 219

pluractional, 88, 106, 108–109, 150

positional, 83, 102–104, 106

post-final clitic, see enclitic

procedural, 12

proclitic, 53, 155, 249, 250, 252, 254, 256, 257, 263, 272, 299, 325, 329


reduplication, 4, 45, 66, 80, 105, 111–112, 145, 148, 151
Subject index

reflexive, 64–65, 78, 167, 179, 268
resultative, 164
root, 51, 52, 65, 77–78, 89, 94, 98, 148

section
abstract, 25
coda, 25, 155, 165
complicating action, 25, 214, 219, 241
evaluation, 25, 214, 219
orientation, 25, 170, 175, 177, 178, 181, 202, 211, 215, 241
resolution, 25, 214, 219

semantic roles, 92, 95, 114, 118, 121, 122, 125, 126, 128, 130, 134, 269, 290
separative, 82, 101–104, 106, 106\(^1\)5
sociative, see reciprocal
spirantization, 35, 85, 89, 107\(^1\)6, 108–110, 148, 151
stem, 51, 66, 77–78, 94, 267, 313, 324
storyline ranks, 177–178, 211, 219
stress, 38–39, 66, 145, 304
subject marker, 29, 51, 54–59, 61, 152, 156, 190, 201, 226\(^7\), 260, 261, 271, 271\(^3\), 284, 285, 292, 313
subordinate clauses, 165
complement clause, 199–202, 207, 277, 292
conditional protasis, 195–199, 299
purpose clause, 279, 292, 313
relative clause, 26, 48–208
result clause, 279, 313
temporal clause, 45, 159, 185, 195–199, 202, 207, 212, 223, 236
subsecutive, 59, 169, 176, 209–221, 223, 226, 233–247, 275\(^5\)
syntax, 29, 47–49, 99, 115, 118, 200, 202, 210, 222, 303, 317, 323
templatic, 29, 145, 148
tense, 13–17, 24, 29, 59, 65, 141, 165, 183, 205, 221, 222, 229
past, 29, 59, 141, 152, 163, 164, 166–186, 188, 190, 195, 198, 202–208, 210, 210\(^1\), 211–219, 223, 224, 228, 233, 233\(^9\), 235, 241–244, 246, 266, 275, 303, 304
present, 141, 152–166, 183–185, 188, 190, 192–208, 221–223, 228, 234, 234\(^10\), 238, 265, 303–306, 308
tentive, 79, 102–103, 106\(^1\)5
thematic continuity, 170, 175, 178, 179, 216, 219, 233, 247
tone, 29, 38
verbal extensions, see derivation
verbal noun, see infinitive
vowels
hiatus solution, 32–34, 36, 57, 63\(^8\), 84, 167
high vowel raising, 82–85
inventory, 29–32
Subject index

length, 30–32, 37, 38, 52\textsuperscript{1}, 57, 60, 61, 85, 86, 89, 94, 108, 146, 146\textsuperscript{5}, 150, 150\textsuperscript{8}, 151, 155, 167, 260, 261, 268, 304, 311

vowel height harmony, 29, 80–82
Did you like this book?

This book was brought to you for free

Please help us in providing free access to linguistic research worldwide. Visit http://www.langsci-press.org/donate to provide financial support or register as a community proofreader or typesetter at http://www.langsci-press.org/register.
The verb in Nyakyusa: A focus on tense, aspect and modality

Nyakyusa is an underdescribed Bantu language spoken by around 800,000 speakers in the Mbeya Region of Tanzania. This book provides a detailed description of the verb in this language. The topics covered include the complex morphophonological and morphological processes as well as verb-to-verb derivation, copula verbs and grammaticalized verbs of motion. The main body of the book consists of a detailed description of tense, aspect and modality constructions, which includes not only an in-depth discussion of their sentence level semantics, but also of their patterns of employment in discourse.